

A FIRST LATIN BOOK

W. T. ST. CLAIR

Boston University
College of Liberal Arts
Library

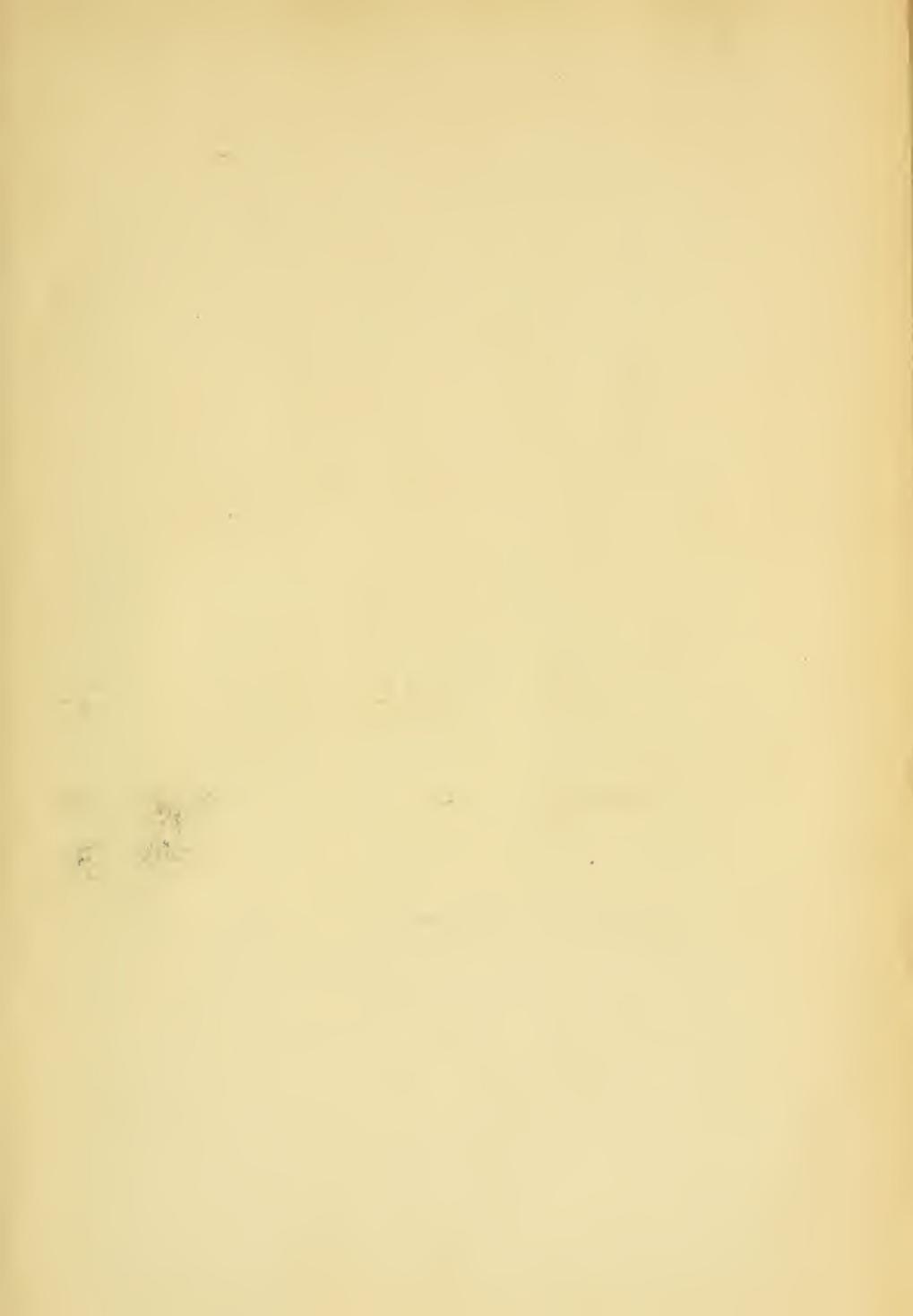
THE GIFT OF C.C. Dodge Class of '78

December 1919

NO.

478.2

5a 2f.



A FIRST LATIN BOOK

BOSTON UNIVERSITY
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS
LIBRARY

A
FIRST LATIN BOOK
(CAESAR FOR BEGINNERS)

*A COMPLETE BEGINNER'S BOOK IN LATIN, INTRODUCTORY TO
CAESAR, AND CONTAINING THE ENTIRE TEXT OF THE
SECOND BOOK OF THE GALlic WAR, WITH
COPIOUS NOTES, AND A VOCABULARY*

BY

WILLIAM T. ST. CLAIR, A.M.

*Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in the Louisville (Kentucky)
Male High School; Author of 'Medical Latin,' 'Summary of Latin
Syntax,' and 'Notes to the Third Book of Caesar's Gallic War'*

BOSTON UNIVERSITY
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS
LIBRARY

NEW YORK
LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.
LONDON AND BOMBAY
1905

Dodge 18
Delin

Copyright, 1899, by
LONGMANS, GREEN & CO.

All rights reserved.

First Edition, August, 1899.

Reprinted, January and October, 1900 ; October, 1902 ; August, 1904.
Revised, March, 1905.

ROBERT DRUMMOND, PRINTER, NEW YORK.

PA
2087
E991

Affectionately Inscribed

to

My Son

PREFACE.

LATIN is an excellent mental training for teaching accuracy, conciseness and exactness. How can this discipline be best secured in schools where the Latin course is confined within three or four years? Those preparatory schools in which Latin is taken up early—say at the age of ten or twelve—may with great profit use ‘New Gradatim,’ ‘Viri Romae,’ or ‘Nepos’ before ‘Caesar’s Gallic War.’ The material for schools of limited time, however, clearly must be taken from the Latin author to be studied first. This book is designed to fit the beginner to take up Caesar as his first Latin. Caesar is not claimed as indispensable to the preparatory course, to the exclusion of other pertinent authors; but the choice of Caesar is the best solution of the problem under the limitations and restrictions given. Besides the fact that Caesar’s Latin is hard to master, we have two difficulties to contend with. *First*, in many schools preparatory work is in the hands of young teachers of very narrow or very short experience; the chief result of their pains is wearisome and, to a great degree, unrewarded labor certainly to themselves and perhaps to their pupils. Indeed even the best teachers would welcome a good *teaching book* introductory to Caesar. *Second*, the change from the ordinary beginner’s book is so great and so radical that the pupil is lost when he faces Caesar’s

Latin. The aim of this book is to meet and, if it may be, lessen these hindrances, not to explain all the difficulties of the Latin language.

The points of practical value are:

1. A working vocabulary of five hundred words taken from the second book of Caesar.

2. Lessons of uniform length throughout, adapted to the average ability of pupils.

3. Lessons graded with a view towards reaching and mastering the complex constructions of Caesar. The subordinate clauses, such as *ut*, *qui*, *cum*, etc., are brought in early in carefully graded lessons, showing the combination of these clauses and illustrating their order and dependence.

4. Steady and uniform progression in the building of the complex sentence and stress laid upon the proper adjustment of words and clauses. Illustrative clauses and phrases from the second book of Caesar, often copied verbatim, oftener with the order and style of the text closely imitated.

5. Alphabetically and by conjugations all of the verbs in the second book of Caesar; principal parts and meanings to be learned as part of the vocabulary, beginning with paragraph (91).

6. The first fourteen chapters of the second book of Caesar simplified and adapted in twenty lessons. Prose composition in each of these lessons based upon the text. Principles and constructions met with in these particular chapters are explained in the *same terms and examples* used in the foregoing lessons which are prepared with a view to application in these chapters.

7. The second book of Caesar complete, with notes. The notes invariably use the terms and examples which

the pupil has been applying from the first lesson. There are no grammatical references and new or offhand expressions, but explanations in terms with which the pupil is already familiar.

There is no wide chasm between the lessons in the main part of the work and the text of Caesar. Between these come the simplified chapters of Caesar and the notes in which, when like points occur in Caesar's text, are repeated the illustrative sentences and explanations used in the former part of the work. Much Latin construction has been purposely omitted and left for the remaining books of Caesar. The lessons have been abridged and constructions made plain, so as to place them within the grasp of the average pupil; since it is not the *quantity* of material crowded into a lesson or a child's head, but the *quality* of the work done, which brings the best results and is therefore most needed. The author gratefully acknowledges his indebtedness to Professor Abraham Flexner, head master of "The Flexner School," Louisville, for valuable assistance in arranging the plan and order of the lessons and especially in the treatment of the relative pronoun; and to Professor Garland Bruce Overton of the Male High School, Louisville, for patient and exhaustive reviews of the proof-pages throughout that have added much to the value of the work. The author feels grateful to the publishers, also, for uniform courtesy and consideration, and for suggestions and help that have added strength to the book.

W. T. S.

LOUISVILLE, June, 1899.

CONTENTS.

PREFACE.....	Pages vii-ix
INTRODUCTION.....	" xiii-xv
LESSONS I—X. First-declension and second-declension nouns and adjectives declined; first-conjugation verb, <i>portō</i> , in the present, imperfect, and future indicative; sentence-building and order of words; ablative of place, means, attendance.....	Pages 1-16
LESSONS XI—XVIII. Present system of <i>portō</i> completed; purpose clauses; apposition; relation of words and clauses; relative pronoun; principal parts of verbs.....	Pages 16-35
LESSONS XIX—XXVII. First conjugation completed in the active voice; <i>sum</i> completed; third-declension nouns; <i>quod</i> and <i>cum</i> clauses; dative with adjectives; dative with <i>imperō</i> and <i>mandō</i> ; rule of sequence.....	Pages 35-54
LESSONS XXVIII—XXXVII. Second and third conjugations in the active; <i>iubeō</i> with accusative + infinitive; sentence-analysis; order and dependence of words and clauses; varying order of words; fourth declension; adjectives of the third declension; use of <i>sunt</i>	Pages 54-76
LESSONS XXXVIII—XLVIII. Complex sentence analyzed; <i>cum</i> and <i>ubi</i> clauses; personal and demonstrative pronouns declined; fifth declension; more vivid future condition; <i>nē</i> in negative purpose and commands; fourth conjugation; first conjugation passive; personal agent; gerundive construction..	Pages 76-103
LESSONS XLIX—LVI. Passive voice of the second, third, and fourth conjugations; <i>cum</i> clauses continued; intermediate clauses; subjunctive mood in indirect discourse and by attraction; ablative absolute; adjectives with genitive in <i>ius</i> ; comparison of adjectives.....	Pages 103-123
LESSONS LVII—LXVI. <i>Orātiō Oblīqua</i> ; infinitive tenses in O. O.; subordinate clauses in O. O.; relative clause of purpose; indirect	

question ; perfect passive participle ; purpose and result clauses ; deponent verbs ; less vivid future condition ; dative with compound and with special verbs ; causal and concessive <i>cum</i> ; accusative of extent in space ; verbs of commanding ; verbs of fearing.....	Pages 124-151
LESSONS LXVII—LXX. Double dative ; deponents governing the ablative ; four ways of expressing (1) purpose, (2) the ablative absolute, and (3) the <i>cum</i> clause ; dative of possession ; temporal clauses ; dative of agency with the periphrastic ; impersonal verbs ; uses of the relative ; verbs of hindering ; ablative with the comparative.....	Pages 152-161
LESSONS LXXI—LXXV. Substitutes for the perfect active participle ; adverbial accusative ; ablative of quality ; partitive genitive ; <i>persuādeō</i> in the passive ; periphrasis for supineless verbs, etc. ; how 'ought' and 'must' are expressed ; relative clause of result ; commands and exhortations, same in O. O. ; hortatory subjunctive, same in O. O. ; conditionals in O. O. ; table and rule for <i>mood</i> and <i>tense</i> in O. O.	Pages 161-172
SPECIMENS OF 'INDIRECT DISCOURSE'	" 175-177
ADAPTED AND SIMPLIFIED CAESAR	" 178-198
TEXT OF CAESAR , Book Two complete.....	" 201-219
NOTES TO THE SECOND BOOK	" 222-255
VERBS IN BOOK TWO, WITH MEANINGS	" 256-260
PARADIGMS OF NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES	" 261-270
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS	" 271-273
PARADIGMS OF REGULAR VERBS	" 274-291
PARADIGMS OF VERBS, IRREGULAR AND DEONENT	" 292-309
PARADIGMS OF THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION ...	" 310-311
RULES OF QUANTITY	" 312-314
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	" 315-341
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	" 342-350
INDEX	" 351-357

INTRODUCTION.

Alphabet.—The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters: **a**, **b**, **c**, **d**, **e**, **f**, **g**, **h**, **i**, **k**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **o**, **p**, **q**, **r**, **s**, **t**, **u**, **v**, **x**, **y**, **z**. **i** serves for both *i* and *j*; as the former it is called *vowel i*, as the latter *consonant i*. There is no **w**: properly **v** represented also the vowel **u**, but in this book **v** is used for the consonant and **u** for the vowel sound of **v** (*u*).

Vowels.—The vowels are **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, and **y**, sounded thus:

ā as in *father*. ā as in the first syllable in *aha*.

ē “ “ *prey*. ē “ “ *net*.

ī “ “ *unique*. ī “ “ *him*.

ō “ “ *hope*. ō “ “ *harmony*.

ū “ “ *rude*. ū “ “ *put*.

y is sounded like the French *u*, German *ü*.

Diphthongs.—Some diphthongs are here omitted as being unimportant.

ae is sounded *eye*.

au as *ow* in *how*.

eu as *ew* in *new*.

oe as *oi* in *soil*.

Consonants.—The consonants **b**, **d**, **f**, **h**, **k**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **p**, **qu** are pronounced as in English. **c**, **g**, **t** have the hard sound, as *cold*, *get*, *take*; **ti** never like the English *sh* in *nation*. **s** has a sharp hissing sound, as *send*, *this*; never

sound **s** like *z*. **i** consonant (for *j*) has the sound of *y*, as *million*, *yet*. **r** was probably slightly trilled. **v** has the sound of *w*, as **vīnum**, *wine*.

Syllables.—In a Latin word there is a syllable for each vowel or diphthong. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the syllable before the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*. Monosyllables are words containing *one* syllable; dissyllables, words of *two* syllables; polysyllables, words of more than two syllables. Utter separately all vowels except those combined as diphthongs. In dividing a word into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the following vowel; as, **lē-gā-tus**. In the case of two or more consonants, join with the following vowel those consonants that can be pronounced with the vowel; as, **ca-stel-lum**.

Parts of speech.—Functions as in English : verb, noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection.

Inflection.—The regular change in the form of a Latin word, by which its different relations to other words are shown, is called inflection. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, participles, and adjectives is called Declension; that of verbs, Conjugation. There are five declensions of nouns and four conjugations of verbs.

Comparison.—Adjectives and adverbs have three degrees of comparison: positive, comparative, superlative.

Number, voice, etc.—There are two numbers, singular and plural; three persons, first, second, and third; three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter; two voices in the verb, active and passive.

Cases.¹—In the inflection of nouns, etc., Latin has the following six cases:

¹ The cases, except the nominative and vocative, are called *oblique cases*.

Nominative = simple meaning of the word, as subject.

Genitive = *of* + meaning of the word with the values of the English prepositional phrase.

Dative = *to* or *for* + meaning of the word—as *indirect object*.

Accusative = simple meaning of the word—as *direct object*.

Vocative = *O* + the English meaning.

Ablative = *from*, *with*, *by*, *in* or *on* + meaning of the word.

Accent.—The accent of a syllable is the stress of voice laid upon it.

1. Words of *two* syllables are accented upon the *penult*; as, *tu'-ba*.

2. Words of *more* than *two* syllables are accented upon the *penult*, if that is long; otherwise upon the *antepenult*; as, *a-mā'-ví*, *a-mā'-ve-ram*.

3. The accent should not fall upon the last syllable.

Quantity.—Latin vowels marked with a horizontal line above them are long in quantity, i.e., long in duration of the time required to sound them. Vowels not so marked may be regarded as short and require half as much time in sound as long vowels. The length or shortness of a vowel or a syllable is called *quantity*. A syllable is long in quantity (1) if it contains a long vowel or diphthong; (2) if the vowel of the syllable precedes **x**, or two consonants, except a mute and a liquid. A syllable is short if its vowel precedes another vowel or **h**. A syllable is common when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with **l** or **r**; as, *lä-cri-ma*. In this book all long vowels are marked, special attention having been given to determining hidden quantities. For rules of quantity see (500–504).

LESSON I.

FIRST DECLENSION.

(See Introduction for the names and meanings of the cases.)

1. *Fossa*, *a* or *the ditch*, declined in the singular number.

Nom. fossa, *a ditch* ("as subject")

Gen. fossae, *of a ditch* (pronounced foss-eye)

Dat. fossae, *to or for a ditch*

Acc. fossam, *a ditch* ("as object")

Voc. fossa, *O ditch*

Abl. fossā, *from, with, by, in, or on a ditch*

2. The *stem* of a noun is the common part to which terminations are annexed to distinguish the different cases. The stem of *fossa* ends in *ā*, and is the same as the word itself in the nominative case. The stem originally ended in *ā*.

The stem form appears in each case; the nominative and vocative have nothing additional; the ablative is distinguished from the nominative and vocative by the lengthening of the stem vowel *ā*; the genitive and dative annex *e* to the stem, and the accusative annexes *m*. These terminations may be called case-endings, though strictly speaking they are combinations of the stem and the true ending.

3.

VOCABULARY.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a* in the nominative singular and are *feminine* except when males are meant, as in *poeta*, a poet. In the vocabularies of this declension, when no gender is specified the feminine is meant.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
causa	causae	cause
porta	portae	gate
Italia	Italiae	Italy
fuga	fugae	flight

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
silva	silvae	forest
tuba	tubae	trumpet
prōvincia	prōvinciae	province
lāta	lātae (<i>adj.</i>)	wide or broad
māgna	māgnæ (<i>adj.</i>)	great or large
amīcitia	amīcitiae	friendship

4. **Agreement of the adjective.**—An adjective agrees with the noun which it modifies in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. Thus: silvae lātae, *of a broad forest*; tubā māgnā, *with a large trumpet*.

The adjective is usually placed *after* the noun it modifies. For emphasis it may precede the noun.

5.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Causam.¹ 2. Ītaliae. 3. Portae. 4. Tubā. 5. Fuga. 6. Silvam lātam. 7. Prōvinciae māgnæ. 8. Fugā.

II.—1. Of the province. 2. Flight (*obj.*). 3. For the province. 4. Of a wide ditch. 5. By flight. 6. A large trumpet (*obj.*). 7. To the cause.

LESSON II.

FIRST DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

6. **Fossa** declined in the plural.

Nom. fossae, *the ditches*

Gen. fossārum, *of the ditches*

Dat. fossīs, *to or for the ditches*

Acc. fossās, *the ditches*

Voc. fossae, *O ditches*

Abl. fossīs, *from, with, by, in, or on the ditches*

The *stem* **fossa** is unchanged throughout the plural except in the dative and ablative, where final **a** is omitted before the case-ending **is**.

¹ There is no Latin word for *the* or *a*, which words must be supplied according to the sense, as also often *his, hers, theirs*.

7. Use of the genitive.—A noun in the genitive case limits another noun. One genitive may limit another genitive. Sometimes a noun in the genitive is translated by the English *possessive case* instead of *of*.

Thus: *Galbae tuba* may mean *the trumpet of Galba* or *Galba's trumpet*. Here *Galbae* is a noun in the genitive limiting the noun *tuba*.

The ablative *causā*.—*Causā* means *for the sake of*, and must stand after a genitive; as, *fugae causā*, *for the sake of flight*.

8.

VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
pūgna	pūgnæ	<i>fight</i>
Gallia	Galliae	<i>Gaul</i>
Galba	Galbae, mas.	<i>Galba (man's name)</i>
galea	galeæ	<i>helmet</i>
ripa	ripariæ	<i>bank</i>
cōpiae	cōpiārum, usually plur.	<i>forces</i>
Belgae	Belgārum, mas.	<i>Belgians</i>
amāta	amātae, adj.	<i>beloved</i>
nova	novae, adj.	<i>new</i>
alta	altae, adj.	<i>tall or deep</i>
multa	multae, adj.	<i>much or many</i>
et, conjunction		<i>and</i>
in, preposition with the abl.		<i>in</i>

9. Use of *in*.—The preposition *in* is used with the ablative to denote place where. Thus: *in prōvinciā novā*, *in the new province*.

10.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Cōpiārum.
2. Prōvinciīs.
3. Galeae.
4. Amīciiae causā.
5. Rīpās altās.
6. In silvā lātā.
7. Galbae tubā novā.
8. Galeīs multīs.
9. Belgārum cōpiās multās.
10. Galbae cōpiārum causā.

- II.—1. With a trumpet. 2. By Galba's flight. 3. For the beloved forces. 4. The flight (*obj.*) of the Belgians. 5. For the sake of a new province.

LESSON III.

FIRST-CONJUGATION VERB. FIRST DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

11. Present indicative active of *portō*, *I carry*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>portō</i> , <i>I carry</i> , <i>am carrying</i> ,	1. <i>portāmus</i> , <i>we carry</i>
2. <i>portās</i> , <i>you carry</i> [do carry]	2. <i>portātis</i> , <i>you carry</i>
3. <i>portat</i> , <i>he carries</i>	3. <i>portant</i> , <i>they carry</i>

The *present stem* of this verb is *portā*, which appears in each form except the *first person singular*, where final *ā* is lost before *ō*. The endings *s*, *t*, *mus*, *tis*, *nt*, annexed to the stem, denote the different persons of the verb and its subject, and are called *personal endings*. To conjugate this tense of a verb, change *final ō* of the *first person singular* to *ās*, *at*, *āmus*, *ātis*, *ant*.

Conjugate and give meanings of *pūgnō*, *parō*, and *superō* in the *present indicative active*. Decline and give meanings in both singular and plural of *tuba*, *galea*, and *silva alta* (*together*).

12.

VOCABULARY.

<i>pūgnō</i> ,	<i>I fight</i>
<i>parō</i> ,	<i>I prepare</i>
<i>superō</i> ,	<i>I overcome</i>
<i>occupō</i> ,	<i>I seize</i>
<i>cēlō</i> (<i>pronounced ka-lo</i>),	<i>I conceal</i>
<i>vītō</i> (<i>pronounced we-to</i>),	<i>I avoid</i>

13. Commit to memory the following examples:

1. <i>portat</i> ,	<i>he carries</i>
2. <i>galeam parat</i> ,	<i>he prepares a helmet</i>
3. <i>Galba Belgās superat</i> ,	<i>Galba overcomes the Belgians</i>
4. <i>occupant</i> ,	<i>they seize</i>
5. <i>fugam cēlant</i> ,	<i>they conceal their flight</i>
6. <i>Belgae cōpiās Galbae vītant</i> ,	<i>the Belgians avoid Galba's forces</i>

In sentences (1) and (2), as no subject is separately expressed, *he* is to be supplied. In (3) the subject **Galba** is separately given and therefore *he* should be omitted. Again in (3) **Belgās** is the *direct object* of the verb **superat**, which it precedes : so in (2), (5), and (6), the *direct object* is in the *accusative* and stands before the verb, which comes last.

LESSON IV.

FIRST DECLENSION AND FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

14. Conjugate and give meanings of **occupō**, **cēlō**, and **vitō** in the *present indicative active*.

Decline and give meanings of **rīpa**, **cōpiae**, and **porta māgna**.

Review vocabularies in Lessons I and II.

15. Example of the direct and indirect objects.

Galba cōpiis galeās multās *Galba prepares many helmets*
parat, *for his forces*

In this sentence **cōpiis** is in the *dative* and is called the *indirect object* of the verb **parat**; the *indirect object* usually precedes the *direct*, as **cōpiis** here precedes **galeās**.

16. Fix in mind this common *order of words* :

- a. Place the adjective *after* the noun it modifies.
- b. **causā**, *for the sake of*, always comes *after* a genitive.
- c. The verb stands at the end of a sentence with the direct object before it.
- d. The indirect (*dative*) object comes before the direct.
- e. The subject comes first; if not separately expressed, it is indicated by the *ending* of the verb.

17.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Occupat. 2. Cēlāmus. 3. Superās. 4. Vītātis.
5. Belgās superāmus. 6. Belgae fugam cēlant. 7. Cōpiis

tubās novās parāmus. 8. Galbae cōpiae galeās multās portant (are carrying). 9. Belgae in Galliā cōpiās māgnās parant. 10. Galba in Italiā Belgārum cōpiās superat.

- II.—1. We seize. 2. You (*sing.*) are fighting (or fight). 3. You (*plur.*) are preparing helmets for the beloved forces. 4. They avoid a fight for the sake of friendship. 5. They conceal helmets and trumpets for the Belgians. 6. Galba avoids a fight and conceals his flight.

LESSON V.

SECOND DECLENSION.

18. *Servus*, *slave*, declined in the singular.

Nom. servus, *a slave*

Gen. servī,¹ *of a slave*

Dat. servō, *to or for a slave*

Acc. servum, *a slave*

Voc. serve,² *O slave*

Abl. servō, *from, with, by, etc., a slave*

The stem of nouns in the second declension ends in o. In combination with the case-endings o undergoes changes, appearing as ī, ī, u, e, or disappearing altogether. The stem of *servus* is *servo*.

19. Table of case-endings.—Commit to memory:

Nom. -us = *subject*

Gen. -ī = *of*

Dat. -ō = *to or for*

Acc. -um = *object*

Voc. -e = *O*

Abl. -ō = *from, with, by, in, or on*

¹ Pronounced ser-we, with the r slightly trilled.

² Pronounced ser-wāy, with the r slightly trilled.

20.

VOCABULARY.

Nouns of this declension ending in **us** are mostly masculine; when no gender for such nouns is specified, the *masculine* is meant.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
mūrus	mūrī	wall
vīcus	vīcī	village
amīcus	amīcī	friend
gladius	gladī ¹	sword
dō (conjugated like portō)		I give
novus	novī, adj.	new
māgnus	māgnī, adj.	great or large
multus	multī, adj.	much or many
amātus	amātī, adj.	beloved

21. Agreement of adjective. (4.²)—Notice carefully the agreement of the adjective in the following examples; thus far the noun and its limiting adjective have the same ending:

1. fossae lātae, *of a wide ditch*
2. mūrī lātī, *of a wide wall*
3. galeā novā, *with a new helmet*
4. gladiō novō, *with a new sword*

22.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Mūrō. 2. Gladium novum. 3. Amīcī causā.
 4. Caesar amīcō galeam novam et gladium māgnum dat.
 5. Galba in vīcō tubās multās cēlat.

- II.—1. Of a large village. 2. To a beloved friend.
 3. Galba is preparing a high wall for the village. 4. Caesar conceals in the village the helmets of his forces.

¹ Nouns in **ius** and **iūm** contract the genitive ending **ii** to single **i**.

² All references are made to paragraphs.

LESSON VI.

FIRST CONJUGATION AND SECOND DECLENSION,
CONTINUED.

23. Imperfect indicative of *portō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>portābam</i> , <i>I was carrying</i> — <i>I carried</i>	1. <i>portābāmus</i> , <i>we were carry-</i> <i>ing</i> [ing]
2. <i>portābās</i> , <i>you were carrying</i>	2. <i>portābātis</i> , <i>you were carry-</i>
3. <i>portābat</i> , <i>he was carrying</i>	3. <i>portābant</i> , <i>they were car-</i> <i>rying</i>

The stem is **portā**, which appears in each form. To make the imperfect tense of a verb, take the present stem (11) and annex **ba**, which is called the *tense-sign*, and to this add the personal endings **m**, **s**, **t**, **mus**, **tis**, **nt**. Thus **occupā+ba+m**.

24. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-bam	-bāmus
-bās	-bātis
-bat	-bant

25. **Servus** declined in the plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>servī</i> ,	<i>slaves</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>servōrum</i> ,	<i>of slaves</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>servīs</i> ,	<i>to or for slaves</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>servōs</i> ,	<i>slaves</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>servī</i> ,	<i>O slaves</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>servīs</i> ,	<i>from, with, etc., slaves</i>

26. Table of case-endings.

<i>Nom.</i> -ī	<i>Acc.</i> -ōs
<i>Gen.</i> -ōrum	<i>Voc.</i> -ī
<i>Dat.</i> -īs	<i>Abl.</i> -īs

27.

VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
lēgātus	lēgātī	ambassador
Rōmānus	Rōmānī	Roman (noun or adj.)
populus	populī	people
Gallus	Gallī	Gaul (noun or adj.)
numerus	numerī	number
nūntius	nūntī	message
hiemō		I winter
aedificō		I build
conlocō		I place
in, prep. with the accusative		into
in Galliam, in Ītaliām		into Gaul, into Italy

28.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hiemāmus. 2. Hiemābāmus. 3. Aedificat. 4. Aedificābat. 5. Caesar Gallōrum cōpiās superābat. 6. Cōpiae populī¹ Rōmānī in vīcō Belgārum hiemant. 7. Gallī amīcīs Galbae gladiōs novōs dabant.

II.—1. They were building. 2. Caesar is wintering in a new village. 3. Galba was building a high wall for his forces. 4. The ambassadors of the Belgians give swords and helmets to Galba's slaves.

LESSON VII.

FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

29. Future indicative of *porto*.

SINGULAR.

1. portābō, I shall carry
2. portābis, you will carry
3. portābit, he will carry

PLURAL.

1. portābimus, we shall carry
2. portābitis, you will carry
3. portābunt, they will carry

The stem is *portā*; the tense-signs are *bō*, *bi*, and *bu*, to which are annexed the personal endings *s*, *t*, *mus*, *tis*, *nt*.

¹ **Populus Rōmānus** (always singular) means the Roman people, the Romans.

30. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-bō	-bimus
-bis	-bitis
-bit	-bunt

31. Order of words.—For answers to questions on the following sentence see (16).

Caesar in Galliā cōpiīs Galbae vīcōs novōs parābit, *Caesar will prepare in Gaul new villages for Galba's forces*

Point out the subject. What does the adverbial phrase *in Galliā* limit? See use of adjunct (34). Name and give position of the *indirect object*. The genitive *Galbae* limits what? (7). *Direct object* and position? *Agreement of adjective* and its position? (4).

32.

VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
locus	locī	place
līberī	līberōrum (<i>plur. only</i>)	children
Germānī	Germānōrum	Germans
fīnitimī	fīnitimōrum	neighbours
nostrī	nostrōrum	our (men) ¹
idōneus or idōnea, <i>adj. mas. or fem.</i>		suitable
reliquus ² or reliqua, <i>adj. mas. or fem.</i>		remaining
properō		I hasten
contrā, <i>prep. with the acc.</i>		against

33. Conjugate in the present, imperfect, and future indicative properō, conlocō, and hiemō, and give meanings.

¹ For this use of *nostrī* see (258).

² *reliquus* often means 'the rest of,' but the 'of' does not necessitate the use of a *genitive*: *cōpiae reliquae*—*cōpiās reliquās*, may mean 'the rest of the forces.'

Decline and give meanings of *causa*, *prōvincia*, *mūrus*, *gladius*, and *finitimī*.

34. Use of the adjunct or adverbial phrase.—The preposition with its noun always in the accusative or ablative case forms an adverbial phrase and modifies the verb. The accusative contains the idea of *place whither*, the ablative *place whence* and *where*. Prepositions are used to define more exactly the local ideas involved in these cases.

35. Uses of *in*.—*In* + ablative = *in* or *on*, and modifies a verb of *rest* within the limits of one place. *In* + accusative = *into* (*to, against*), and modifies a verb of *motion* from one place to another.

Caesar in Galliā (abl.) hiemā- *Caesar was wintering (resting) in Gaul*

Caesar in Galliam (acc.) pro- perābit, *Caesar will hasten into Gaul*

36.

EXERCISE.

1. *Nostri Germānōs et Belgās superābunt.* 2. *Germānī in locīs idōneīs liberōs cēlābant.* 3. *Reliquae Belgārum cōpiae contrā populum Rōmānum pūgnant.* 4. *Cōpiae Rōmānae (adj.) in Galliam pūgnæ causā properābunt.* 5. *Galbae amīcī nostrīs māgnum gladiōrum numerum parant.*

LESSON VIII.

SECOND DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

37. Nouns in *um*.

Nouns of the second declension ending in **um** are neuter. The *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative* are alike, ending in **um** in the *singular* and **a** in the *plural*.

Oppidum, town.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Gen.</i>	oppidī	oppidōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	oppidō	oppidīs
<i>Acc.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Voc.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Abl.</i>	oppidō	oppidīs

Singular nouns ending in **a**, genitive **ae**, are *feminine* and are declined like **fossa**.

Plural nouns ending in **a**, genitive **ōrum**, are *neuter* and are declined like the *plural* of **oppidum**.

38. Table of case-endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> -um	-a	<i>Acc.</i> -um	-a
<i>Gen.</i> -ī	-ōrum	<i>Voc.</i> -um	-a
<i>Dat.</i> -ō	-īs	<i>Abl.</i> -ō	-īs

39.

VOCABULARY.

(The gender is *neuter*.)

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
scūtum	-ī	shield
vāllum	-ī	rampart
periculum	-ī	danger
arma	armōrum (<i>plur. only</i>)	arms
loca	locōrum	places ¹
nōn (<i>adv.</i>)		not
expūgnō		I storm
per, <i>prep. with the acc.</i>		through
multus	multa	multum, <i>adj.</i> much ²
altus	-a	-um, <i>adj.</i> high
māgnus	-a	-um, <i>adj.</i> great

¹ **Locus**, *place*, may in the plural take the endings of the *masculine* gender, like the plural of **servus**; or the endings of the *neuter*, like the plural of **oppidum**. In Caesar's Latin the *neuter* plural is regularly used.

² The three genders of the adjective occur side by side. For full declension, see (46).

40.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostrī in Galliam arma multa portābunt. 2. Cōpiae Rōmānāe (*adj.*) Belgārum vīcōs et oppida expūgnābant. 3. Germānī per oppida Belgārum arma et līberōs portant. 4. Belgae pūgnæ causā in silvīs altīs galeās et gladiōs et scūta cēlābunt. 5. Lēgātus populī Rōmānī nostrīs loca idōnea parat.

II.—1. Slaves were carrying Galba's arms through places of danger. 2. Neighbours of the Roman people (*sing.*) build large ramparts for Galba's forces. 3. Caesar will give helmets and shields to his beloved forces and storm the walls of the town.

LESSON IX.

SECOND DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

41. **Puer**,¹ boy, mas. **Ager**, field, mas. **Vir**, man, mas.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum	virī	virōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs	virum	virōs
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs

42. **Rule of gender.**—Second-declension nouns ending in *us* are mostly *masculine*, rarely *feminine*. Nouns in *er* and *ir* are *masculine*, those in *um* are *neuter*.

Decline the *nouns* of the first and second declensions (453, 454), and conjugate (with meanings) the present, imperfect, and future indicative of *amō* (474).

43 (a). **Ablative with *cum*.**—When *with* means *together*

¹ Observe that the noun and agreeing adjective need not end alike; as, *puer amātus*, *the beloved boy*.

with, it is expressed not by the *ablative alone*, but by **cum** + *ablative*. This is called the “*ablative of attendance*.”

Galba in Galliam cum cōpiīs Galba hastens into Gaul with properat, *his forces*

In this example the two adverbial phrases in **Galliam** and **cum cōpiīs** precede and limit the verb **properat**, which they follow in the translation.

43 (b). Ablative without *cum*.—When *with* means *with the help of* or *with the aid of*, it is expressed by the ablative alone. This is called the “*ablative of means*.”

Nostrī pīlīs multīs castra ex-pūgnant, *Our men are storming the camp with many javelins*

44.

VOCABULARY.

(The gender is *neuter*.)

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
proelium	proelī	battle
pīlum	-ī	javelin
castra	castrōrum (<i>plur. only</i>)	camp ¹
hiberna	-ōrum	winter-quarters
praesidium	praesidī	defence
cum, prep. <i>with the abl.</i>		with
redintegrō		I renew

45.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānī cum nostrīs proelium nōn redintegrābunt. 2. Nostrī gladiīs et pīlīs praesidia Gallōrum expūgnābant. 3. Galba in Galliam cum cōpiīs properābit et armīs castra Gallōrum expūgnābit. 4. Cōpiæ reliquae in castra arma portant et praesidia nova parant.

II.—1. Caesar places his new forces in winter-quarters for the sake of a defence. 2. Our men were storming the walls of the town and renewing battle with the Germans. 3. The friends of the Romans (*noun*) will build many ramparts for our men.

¹ Decline **castra** (37).

LESSON X.

ADJECTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

46. Altus, alta, altum, *high*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> altus	alta	altum	altī	altae	alta
<i>Gen.</i> altī	altae	altī	altōrum	altārum	altōrum
<i>Dat.</i> altō	altae	altō	altīs	altīs	altīs
<i>Acc.</i> altum	altam	altum	altōs	altās	alta
<i>Voc.</i> alte	alta	altum	altī	altae	alta
<i>Abl.</i> altō	altā	altō	altīs	altīs	altīs

47. Uses of the ablative.

1. Ablative of *place where* takes the preposition *in*, thus:
Caesar in Galliā hiemābit.

2. Ablative of *attendance* takes the preposition *cum*, thus:
Galba cum cōpiis properat.

3. Ablative of *means or instrument* has *no preposition*, thus: **Rōmāni gladiis pūgnābant.**

In (1) and (2) the adverbial phrases *in Galliā* and *cum cōpiis* modify the verb; in (3) *gladiis*, though a noun in the ablative case, modifies *pūgnābant* in an adverbial sense.

48.

VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
nūntius	nūntī, mas.	<i>messenger</i>
mora	-ae, fem.	<i>delay</i>
auxilium	auxilī, neut.	<i>aid or help</i>
imperium	-ī, neut.	<i>power or command</i>
sine, prep. with the abl.		<i>without</i>
ē or ex, prep. with the abl.		<i>out of</i>
convocō		<i>I summon</i>
cōpia	-ae, fem.	<i>abundance</i>
Rēmī	-ōrum, mas.	<i>the Remi</i>
dubitō		<i>I hesitate</i>

49.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostrī cum Germānōrum fīnitimīs proelium nōn redintegrābunt. 2. Lēgātus Rōmānus sine morā ex hībernīs nūntiōs multōs convocābat. 3. Galba oppidī mūrōs expūgnābit et imperī causā cōpiās Belgārum superābit. 4. Rēmī in proeliīs multīs populō Rōmānō auxilium dant. 5. Caesar per prōvinciam cum cōpiīs properābit et in Ītaliā sine periculō hiemābit.

II.—1. Slaves were carrying arms out of the town into winter-quarters. 2. Caesar will not give help to the remaining Remi. 3. They winter in the fields of the Gauls and renew the battle against our men.

LESSON XI.

FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

50. Present subjunctive of *portō*.

SINGULAR.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. portem, <i>I may</i> ¹ carry | 1. portēmus, <i>we may carry</i> |
| 2. portēs, <i>you may carry</i> | 2. portētis, <i>you may carry</i> |
| 3. portet, <i>he may carry</i> | 3. portent, <i>they may carry</i> |

PLURAL.

The present subjunctive is formed by changing final ā, of the stem *portā*, to ē and annexing the *personal endings* m, s, t, mus, tis, nt.

This is the only tense in which the stem *portā* undergoes a change of the final vowel.

51. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.

- em
- ēs
- et

PLURAL.

- ēmus
- ētis
- ent

¹ This meaning of the *present subjunctive* is given with a view to its use in *final clauses of purpose*. Other English renderings will be given later.

52.

VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
frūmentum	-ī, neut.	corn
equus	-ī, mas.	horse
oppidānī	-ōrum, mas.	townsmen
sīgnūm	-ī, neut.	signal
ut (<i>with the subjunctive</i>)		so that
coniūrō		I conspire
vāstō		I lay waste
appellō		I call
praefectus	-ī, mas.	general

53. Apposition.

Rōmānī Rēmīs amīcīs auxi- *The Romans give help to the
lium dant,* *Remi, their friends*

In the English sentence *friends* is in apposition with and limits *Remi*; the Latin equivalent for *friends* is put in the *dative* to agree with **Rēmīs**, as the *appositive* takes the *case of the noun which it limits*.

54. Use of *ut*.—When *ut* means *so that*, it introduces a subordinate clause of *purpose*, and the verb of this clause is in the *subjunctive*. This *ut + subjunctive* may be translated by the *English infinitive*.

Example of the *ut* clause.

Pūgnant ut superent, *They fight so that they may
overcome (or to overcome)*

The *English infinitive* “to overcome” is not rendered by the *Latin infinitive*; it must be changed to the *subjunctive*.

55.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Rōmānī gladiīs pūgnant, ut Gallōs superent.
2. Galba nostrīs equōs dabit, ut ex Ītaliā properent. 3. Caesar cum cōpiīs per prōvinciam properat ut Gallōrum vīcōs vāstet. 4. Germānī cūm Belgīs, fīnitimīs populī

Rōmānī, coniūrābunt. 5. Caesar sīgnum proelī dat et cōpiae Rōmānae oppidum māgnum expūgnant.

II.—1. The Gauls build high walls so that they may avoid a battle with our men. 2. The Romans will not lay waste the fields of the Remi, their friends. 3. Caesar hastens into Gaul to prepare¹ a suitable camp for our men.

LESSON XII.

ADJECTIVE AND VERB, CONTINUED.

56. Integer, integra, integrum, *fresh*.

The masculine gender is inflected like *ager*, the feminine like *fossa*, and the neuter like *oppidum*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> integer	-gra	-grum	integrī	-grae	-gra
<i>Gen.</i> integrī	-grae	-grī	integrōrum	-grārum	-grōrum
<i>Dat.</i> integrō	-grae	-grō	integrīs	-grīs	-grīs
<i>Acc.</i> integrum	-gram	-grum	integrōs	-grās	-gra
<i>Voc.</i> integer	-gra	-grum	integrī	-grae	-gra
<i>Abl.</i> integrō	-grā	-grō	integrīs	-grīs	-grīs

57. Principal parts of the verb.—Latin verbs have four principal parts, so called because when these parts are known, the other forms of the verb may be found.

They are *present indicative*, *present infinitive*, *perfect indicative*, and the *first supine*. The *present infinitive* of first-conjugation verbs ends in -re, thus: portō, portāre.

The present stem of a verb is found regularly by dropping re from the present active infinitive. Stem of portō, portā.

¹ Not infinitive in Latin.

58.

VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
subsidiū	-ī, neut.	relief
cōnsilium	-ī, neut.	plan
initium	-ī, neut.	beginning
aedificiū	-ī, neut.	building
impedimenta	-ōrum, neut. plur.	baggage
ferus	-a, -um, adj.	fierce
sed,	conj.	but
trāns,	prep. with the acc.	across
propter,	prep. with the acc.	on account of
ad,	prep. with the acc.	to or towards
noster,	-tra, -trum, adj.	our
cōfīrmō		I establish

Conjugate the following verbs in the present subjunctive, and review them in the present, imperfect, and future indicative with meanings: dubitō, appellō, convocō, and parō. Decline altus and crēber (466).

59. Use of *ad*.—When “to” means *towards* (of place), it is expressed *not* by the *dative*, but by *ad + accusative*. This phrase—*ad + accusative*—modifies a verb which denotes *motion* from one place to another. Thus:

Nostrī ad Galbae castra pro- Our men hasten to Galba's
perant, camp

But:

Caesar Galbae (dat.) equum Caesar gives a horse to Galba
dat,

60.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Galba proelī causā ē castrīs nostrōs convocāre nōn dubitābit. 2. Praefectī nostrī (adj.) ad Galbae castra gladiōs et scūta portāre parant. 3. Lēgātus Rōmānus in Galliā aedificia nōn vāstābat sed cum Gallis amīcitiam cōfīrmābat. 4. Caesar cōpiis amātis arma nova dabit ut castra Germānōrum expūgnent.

II.—1. The Belgians do not hesitate to build high walls so that they may avoid a battle. 2. The remaining Gauls were preparing to renew the battle with the Germans, their neighbours. 3. The fierce Germans are carrying corn to the camp of the Belgians; they will not give aid to Galba.

LESSON XIII.

VERB, CONTINUED.

61. Imperfect subjunctive of *portō*.

SINGULAR.

1. *portārem*, *I might carry*
2. *portārēs*, *you might carry*
3. *portāret*, *he might carry*

PLURAL.

1. *portārēmus*, *we might carry*
2. *portārētis*, *you might carry*
3. *portārent*, *they might carry*

62. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-rem	-rēmus
-rēs	-rētis
-ret	-rent

These endings are annexed to the stem *portā*.

Conjugate in both *present* and *imperfect subjunctive*, and give meanings of *fugō*, *mandō*, and *imperō*.

63. Principal parts of verbs.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Ind.	First Supine.	
<i>fugō</i>	<i>fugāre</i>	<i>fugāvī</i>	<i>fugātum</i>	<i>to rout</i>
<i>pūgnō</i>	<i>pūgnāre</i>	<i>pūgnāvī</i>	<i>pūgnātum</i>	<i>to fight</i>
<i>occupō</i>	<i>occupāre</i>	<i>occupāvī</i>	<i>occupātum</i>	<i>to seize</i>

64. Moods and tenses.—The indicative mood has six tenses, viz.: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect.

The subjunctive has four tenses: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.

The first *three* of the indicative and the first *two* of the subjunctive are formed upon the *present stem*.

65. Ablative of time.—*Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Vigiliā secundā trāns Rhēnum	<i>He hastens across the Rhine in</i>
properat,	<i>(during) the second watch</i>
Nostrī initiō proelī Germānōs	<i>Our men rout the Germans in</i>
fugant,	<i>the beginning of the battle</i>

Vigiliā and initiō, though nouns in the ablative case, in an adverbial sense modify the verb.

66.

VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
animus	-ī, mas.	<i>mind</i>
Rhēnus	-ī, mas.	<i>the Rhine</i>
tēlum	-ī, neut.	<i>weapon</i>
prō, prep. with the abl.		<i>in front of</i>
prīmus	-a, -um, num. adj.	<i>first</i>
secundus	-a, -um, “ “	<i>second</i>
extrēmus	-a, -um, adj.	<i>farthest</i>
oppūgnō	-āre	<i>to attack</i>
mandō	-āre	<i>to direct or instruct</i>
imperō	-āre	<i>to command</i>
fugō	-āre	<i>to rout</i>
vigilia	-ae, fem.	<i>watch (division of the night)</i>

67.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostrī prō castrīs valla alta aedificant. 2. Caesar cum cōpiis trāns Rhēnum ad oppida Germānōrum properābat. 3. Germānī in castra lēgātōs Rōmānōs convocant et nostrī auxilium dare parant. 4. Nostrī in Galbae castra tēla multa portābunt et prīmā vigiliā Belgās fugābunt. 5. Gallī prō mūrō oppidī cōpias integrās conlocābant ut proelium cum nostrīs redintegrārent.

II.—1. Our (*adj.*) ambassador will not hesitate to attack a

town of the Belgians in farthest Gaul. 2. Our men were carrying new weapons into a suitable camp so that they might rout the Gauls. 3. The Belgians in many places build high walls for the sake of defence.

LESSON XIV.

VERB AND ADJECTIVE, CONTINUED. REVIEW OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

68. Conjugation of *imperō*.

Present Indicative. <i>I command.</i>	Imperfect Indicative. <i>was commanding.</i>	Future Indicative. <i>shall command.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. imperō	imperābam	imperābō
2. imperās	imperābās	imperābis
3. imperat	imperābat	imperābit
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. imperāmus	imperābāmus	imperābimus
2. imperātis	imperābātis	imperābitis
3. imperant	imperābant	imperābunt
Present Subjunctive. <i>may command.</i>	Imperfect Subjunctive. <i>might command.</i>	
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	
1. imperem	imperārem	
2. imperēs	imperārēs	
3. imperet	imperāret	
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	
1. imperēmus	imperārēmus	
2. imperētis	imperārētis	
3. imperent	imperārent	

69. Agreement of the adjective.—Compare the *ending* of the *adjective* and the *ending* of the *noun* which it limits, in the following:

Nostrī Belgās ferōs fugābunt, *Our men will rout the fierce Belgians*

Do the noun **Belgās** and the adjective **ferōs** end alike? Look up the *gender* of **Belgās** and apply the rule for agreement of the adjective (4).

70. Imperative mood of *porto*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. [wanting]	[wanting]
2. { portā, carry (<i>thou</i>)	{ portātē, carry (<i>ye</i>)
{ portātō, thou shall carry	{ portātōtē, ye shall carry
3. portātō, he shall carry	portantō, they shall carry

Examples of the use of the imperative.

Gladiōs portā, serve ! Slave, carry the swords !
 Oppidum, lēgātī, expūgnātē ! Ambassadors, storm the town !

Do not place the person addressed (*voc.*) first in a Latin sentence.

71.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānōs fugātē, Rōmānī ! 2. Gallī, ut peri-
 culum vītent, ex oppidīs properant. 3. Galba tubā sīgnū
 proelī dabit. 4. Nostrī e Germānōrum castrīs equōs et
 arma portābunt. 5. Germānī cum Belgīs coniūrābant ut
 populī (*gen.*) Rōmānī praeſidia expūgnārent. 6. Lēgātī
 Rōmānī in hibernīs in vīcō idōneō cōpiās conlocābunt.

II.—1. Ambassador, give the signal ! 2. The Germans
 will attack the remaining towns and winter in the vil-
 lages of the Gauls. 3. The townsmen hasten to Galba's
 camp to establish ¹ friendship with ² the Roman people.

¹ Not infinitive in Latin.

² Use **cum**.

LESSON XV.

PORΤΟ, CONTINUED. PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES,
COMPLETED.

72. Present system of *portō* completed.

Present participle portāns, *carrying*

Present infinitive portāre, *to carry*

Gerund portandī, *of carrying*

73. Gerund defined and declined.—The gerund is, in form, a neuter verbal noun of the second declension, corresponding in meaning to the English verbal noun ending in *ing*.

The gerund is thus declined. The *nominative* is supplied by the present infinitive active.

Gen. portandī, *of carrying*

Dat. portandō, *to or for carrying*

Acc. (ad) portandum, *for carrying*

Abl. portandō, *from, with, by, etc., carrying*

74. Use of the gerund.—The gerund in any form governs the same case as the verb of which it is a part. As:

Agrōs vāstandō, By laying waste the fields

75. Synopsis of *portō* in the present system.—The following nine forms are built upon the *present stem portā*:

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Present indicative</i> | portō, | <i>I carry</i> |
| 2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i> | portābam, | <i>I was carrying</i> |
| 3. <i>Future indicative</i> | portābō, | <i>I shall carry</i> |
| 4. <i>Present subjunctive</i> | portem, | <i>I may carry</i> |
| 5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i> | portārem, | <i>I might carry</i> |
| 6. <i>Imperative</i> | portā, | <i>carry (thou)</i> |
| 7. <i>Present participle</i> | portāns, | <i>carrying</i> |
| 8. <i>Present infinitive</i> | portāre, | <i>to carry</i> |
| 9. <i>Gerund</i> | portandī, | <i>of carrying</i> |

Give complete synopsis, *present system*, in order of “tense-name,” “tense-form,” and “meaning,” of *incūsō* and *sustentō*.

Decline the *nouns* of the *first* and *second declensions* (453, 454), also *altus* and *crēber* (466). Name *four kinds of ablatives*.

76.

VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<i>rēgnūm</i>	-ī, neut.	<i>kingdom or royal power</i>
<i>facile</i> , <i>adv.</i>		<i>easily</i>
<i>castellūm</i>	-ī, neut.	<i>redoubt</i>
<i>armātūs</i>	-a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>armed</i>
<i>proximus</i>	-a, -um, “	<i>next</i>
<i>parātūs</i>	-a, -um, “	<i>ready</i>
<i>incūsō</i>	-āre, -āvī, -ātūm	<i>to blame</i>
<i>sustentō</i>	-āre, -āvī, -ātūm	<i>to hold out</i>
<i>impetrō</i>	-āre, -āvī, -ātūm	<i>to obtain</i>

77. Relation of words and clauses.

*Lēgātī Belgārum ad Galbae Ambassadors of the Belgians
castra veniunt, ut cum come to Galba's camp to es-
populō Rōmānō amīcitiam tablish* friendship with the
cōfirment, Roman people*

Lēgātī = subject of the principal verb *veniunt* (indicative mood).

Belgārum = genitive plural modifying *lēgātī*.

{ *ad* = preposition governing the noun *castra* in the accusative.

Galbae = genitive singular limiting *castra*.

{ *castra* = object of *ad*: this phrase limits the principal verb *veniunt*—*a verb of motion*.

veniunt = present indicative active, 3d plural, *not of the first conjugation*.

* To establish, etc., subordinate clause denoting purpose (53).

ut = conjunction going with **cōfirment**: this entire clause denotes *purpose* and is subordinate to **veniunt**.

{ **cum** = preposition governing the noun **populō** in the *ablative*.

{ **populō** = object of **cum**: this phrase limits the verb **cōfirment**.

{ **Rōmānō** = adjective modifying **populō** in the *ablative singular masculine*.

amicitiam = direct object of **cōfirment**.

cōfirment = present subjunctive active, 3d plural; subjunctive of *purpose* introduced by **ut**.

78.

REVIEW VOCABULARY.

LESSONS I—XV.

1. *trāns* (prep. with the *acc.*), *across*
2. *contrā* (prep. with the *acc.*), *against*
3. *auxilium*, *auxilī* (neut.), *aid or help*
4. *iuvō*, *iuvāre*, *iūvī*, *iūtum*, *to aid*
5. *adiuvō*, *adiuvāre*, *adiūvī*, *adiūtum*, *to aid*
6. *sum*, *esse*, *fūi*, [no supine], *be or am*
7. *lēgātus*, *lēgātī* (mas.), *ambassador*
8. *et* (conj.), *and*
9. *armātus*, *armāta*, *armātum* (adj.), *armed*
10. *arma*, *armōrum* (neut.), *arms*
11. *oppūgnō*, *oppūgnāre*, *oppūgnāvī*, *oppūgnātum*, *attack*
12. *vītō*, *vītāre*, *vītāvī*, *vītātum*, *avoid*
13. *impedīmenta*, *impedīmentōrum* (neut.), *baggage*
14. *rīpa*, *rīpae* (fem.), *bank*
15. *proelium*, *proelī* (neut.), *battle*
16. *quod* (conj.), *because*
17. *initium*, *initī* (neut.), *beginning*
18. *Belgae*, *Belgārum* (mas.), *Belgians*
19. *amātus*, *amāta*, *amātum* (adj.), *beloved*
20. *incūsō*, *incūsāre*, *incūsāvī*, *incūsātum*, *blame*
21. *puer*, *puerī* (mas.), *boy*
22. *lātus*, *lāta*, *lātum* (adj.), *broad or wide*
23. *aedificō*, *aedificāre*, *aedificāvī*, *aedificātum*, *build*
24. *aedificium*, *aedificī* (neut.), *building*
25. *sed* (conj.), *but*
26. *appellō*, *appellāre*, *appellāvī*, *appellātum*, *call*
27. *castra*, *castrōrum* (neut.), *camp*
28. *portō*, *portāre*, *portāvī*, *portātum*, *carry*
29. *causa*, *causae* (fem.), *cause*
30. *līberī*, *līberōrum* (mas.), *children*
31. *imperium*, *imperī* (neut.), *command*

32. imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, *to command*
 33. cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātum, *conceal*
 34. coniūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī, coniūrātum, *conspire*
 35. frūmentum, frūmentī (neut.), *corn*
 36. periculum, periculī (neut.), *danger*
 37. praesidium, praesidī (neut.), *defence*
 38. mora, morae (fem.), *delay*
 39. mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum, *direct or instruct*
 40. fossa, fossae (fem.), *ditch*
 41. facile (adv.), *easily*
 42. cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī, cōfirmātum, *establish*
 43. extrēmus, extrēma, extrēmum (adj.), *farthest*
 44. ager, agrī (mas.), *field*
 45. ferus, fera, ferum (adj.), *fierce*
 46. pūgna, pūgnæ (fem.), *fight*
 47. pūgnō, pūgnāre, pūgnāvī, pūgnātum, *to fight*
 48. prīmus, prīma, prīmum (adj.), *first*
 49. fuga, fugae (fem.), *flight*
 50. causā (stands after the gen.), *for the sake of*
 51. cōpiae, cōpiārum (fem.), *forces*
 52. silva, silvae (fem.), *forest*
 53. integer, integra, integrum (adj.), *fresh*
 54. amīcus, amīcī (mas.), *friend*
 55. amīcitia, amīcitiae (fem.), *friendship*
 56. Galba, Galbae (mas.), *Galba*
 57. porta, portae (fem.), *gate*
 58. Gallia, Galliae (fem.), *Gaul (country)*
 59. Gallus, Gallī (mas.), *Gaul (citizen)*
 60. praefectus, praefectī (mas.), *general*
 61. Germānī, Germānōrum (mas.), *Germans*
 62. dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give*
 63. māgnus, māgna, māgnum, (adj.), *great or large*
 64. mātūrō, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī, mātūrātum, *hasten*
 65. galea, galeae (fem.), *helmet*
 66. hīc (adv.), *here*
 67. dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum, *hesitate*

68. *altus, alta, altum* (adj.), *high, tall, or deep*
69. *sustentō, sustentāre, sustentāvī, sustentātum, hold out*
70. *equus, equī* (mas.), *horse*
71. *in* (prep. with the *abl.*), *in*; (with the *acc.*) *into*
72. *prō* (prep. with the *abl.*), *in front of*
73. *Ītalia, ītaliae* (fem.), *Italy*
74. *pīlūm, pīlī* (neut.), *javelin*
75. *rēgnūm, rēgnī* (neut.), *kingdom or power*
76. *vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum, lay waste*
77. *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, love*
78. *vir, virī* (mas.), *man*
79. *multus, multa, multum* (adj.), *much or many*
80. *nūntius, nūntī* (mas.), *message or messenger*
81. *animus, animī* (mas.), *mind*
82. *fīnitimī, fīnitimōrum* (mas.), *neighbours*
83. *novus, nova, novum* (adj.), *new*
84. *proximus, proxima, proximum* (adj.), *next*
85. *nōn* (adv.), *not*
86. *numerus, numerī* (mas.), *number*
87. *impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātum, obtain*
88. *propter* (prep. with the *acc.*), *on account of*
89. *noster, nostra, nostrum* (adj.), *our*
90. *nostrī, nostrōrum* (mas.), *our men*
91. *ē or ex* (prep. with the *abl.*), *out of*
92. *superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum, overcome*
93. *populus, populī* (mas.), *people*
94. *locus, locī* (mas.), *place*
95. *conlocō conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātum, to place*
96. *loca, locōrum* (neut.), *places*
97. *cōnsilium, cōnsiliī* (neut.), *plan*
98. *parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum, prepare*
99. *prōvincia, prōvinciae* (fem.), *province*
100. *vāllum, vālli* (neut.), *rampart*
101. *parātus, parāta, parātum* (adj.), *ready*
102. *castellum, castellī* (neut.), *redoubt*
103. *subsidiūm, subsidiī* (neut.), *relief*

104. Rēmī, Rēmōrum (mas.), *Remi*
 105. reliquus, reliqua, reliquum (adj.), *remaining*
 106. redintegrō, redintegrāre, redintegrāvī, redintegrātum, *renew*
 107. Rhēnus, Rhēnī (mas.), *Rhine*
 108. Rōmānus, Rōmānī (mas.), *Roman*
 109. Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum (adj.), *Roman*
 110. fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum, *rout*
 111. prōfligō, prōfligāre, prōfligāvī, prōfligātum, *rout*
 112. secundus, secunda, secundum (adj.), *second*
 113. occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum, *seize*
 114. servus, servi (mas.), *servant or slave*
 115. scūtum, scūtī (neut.), *shield*
 116. sīgnū, sīgnī (neut.), *signal*
 117. ut (conj.), *so that*
 118. expūgnō, expūgnāre, expūgnāvī, expūgnātum, *storm*
 119. idōneus, idōnea, idōneum (adj.), *suitable*
 120. convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum, *summon*
 121. gladius, gladī (mas.), *sword*
 122. per (prep. with the acc.), *through*
 123. ad (prep. with the acc.), *to, towards*
 124. oppidum, oppidī (neut.), *town*
 125. oppidānī, oppidānōrum (mas.), *townsmen*
 126. tuba, tubae (fem.), *trumpet*
 127. vīcus, vīcī (mas.), *village*
 128. mūrus, mūrī (mas.), *wall*
 129. tēlum, tēlī (neut.), *weapon*
 130. hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātum, *winter*
 131. hīberna, hībernōrum (neut.), *winter-quarters*
 132. cum (prep. with the abl.), *with*
 133. sine (prep. with the abl.), *without*

LESSON XVI.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

79. Quī, quae, quod, who, which, what, or that.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

80. English meanings of the Latin relative pronoun.

NOTE.—The plural forms of the *Latin* relative pronoun have the same *English meanings* as the singular forms.

The word *that* may be substituted for *who* or *which* in the nominative and accusative cases.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Mas. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>who</i> or <i>which</i>	<i>which</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>whose, of whom, of which</i>	<i>whose, of which</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>to or for whom, to or for which</i>	<i>to or for which</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>whom or which</i>	<i>which</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>from, with, by, in, or on whom or which</i>	<i>from, with, by, in, or on which</i>

81.

VOCABULARY.

Review words 1–66 in ‘review vocabulary’ (78).

82. Commit to memory:

1. *Lēgātus qui properat,* *The ambassador who hastens*
2. *Gallī qui hiemant,* *The Gauls who winter*

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 3. Cōpiae quae parant, | <i>The forces which prepare</i> |
| 4. Tuba quae signum dat, | <i>The trumpet which gives a signal</i> |
| 5. Praesidia quae cēlant, | <i>The defences which conceal</i> |
| 6. Pīlum quod superat, | <i>The javelin which overcomes</i> |

83. Agreement of the relative.—The relative *must* agree with its antecedent in *number* and *gender*; the case of the relative is determined by its function in its own clause, which function is always independent of that of its antecedent.

LESSON XVII.

RELATIVE PRONOUN, CONTINUED.

84. *Castra* and the relative pronoun.—As *castra* is *plural* in form and *singular* in meaning and also *neuter*, a relative pronoun referring to *castra* as its antecedent must be *neuter* and *plural*, as in example (1).

When *castra* becomes the *subject* of a verb, the latter takes a *plural form* in Latin, although it is *singular* in English, as in example (2).

85. Examples of *castra*, etc.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Caesar castra quae impedi- | <i>Caesar storms the camp which</i> |
| menta cēlant expūgnat, | <i>conceals the baggage</i> |
| 2. Castra Galbae equōs cēlā- | <i>The camp concealed Galba's</i> |
| bant, | <i>horses</i> |

86.

VOCABULARY.

Review words 67–133 in ‘review vocabulary’ (78).

87. Conjugate and give meanings of *fugō* and *mandō* in the *imperative* (70); also decline their *gerunds* and give their *present participles* and *present infinitives* (72, 73).

88. What is the *present stem* of *cōfirmō*?

How many forms are derived from this stem?

Give full synopsis of these *with meanings*.

How is *purpose* expressed in Latin?

Explain fully the agreement of the *relative quae* in Latin sentence (3) below.

89.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Lēgātus quī in Galliā hiemat cum Belgīs proelium redintegrābit. 2. Galba pīlīs multīs aedificia Germānōrum quī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrant expūgnat. 3. Lēgātī nostrī (*adj.*) in hibernīs in prōvinciā cōpiās quae castella nova aedificant conlocābunt. 4. Germānī quī in castra cōpiās convocant, ut pūgnam vītent, proelium nōn redintegrābunt sed ē castrīs properābunt.

II.—1. With the aid of the Remi Galba overcomes the remaining Belgians who are laying waste the fields of the Romans. 2. Slaves were carrying many weapons into the camp which concealed the baggage of the Roman ambassador. 3. Our men overcome in many battles the forces which are building defences in Gaul. 4. The fierce Belgians will establish friendship with their neighbours and storm the town which gives aid to the Roman forces.

LESSON XVIII.

RELATIVE PRONOUN, CONTINUED.

90. Examples of the relative as the object:

1. Oppidum quod Galba aedificat, *The town which Galba builds*

2. Agrī quōs Germānī vāstant, *The fields which the Germans lay waste*

3. Castra quae Rēmī in Galliā
conlocant,
The camp which the Remi place
in Gaul
4. Cōpiae quās Caesar in prō-
vinciam convocat,
Forces which Caesar summons
into the province
5. Tuba quam Galba servō
dat,
The trumpet which Galba gives
to (his) slave
6. Lēgātūs quem oppidānī in-
cūsant,
The ambassador whom the
townsmen blame

91.

VOCABULARY.

Learn the *principal parts* and *meanings* of verbs 1–10 (448).

92. How words are joined together in a sentence.

- Belgae contrā integrās cōpiās *The Belgians will not hold out*
 quās Caesar in castra con- *against the fresh forces which*
 vocat nōn sustentābunt, *Caesar is summoning into*
 camp

Belgae: subject of *sustentābunt*, which is the *principal verb* in the sentence and is placed *at the end*. **contrā integrās cōpiās:** adverbial phrase, modifies *sustentābunt*. **nōn:** adverb limiting *sustentābunt*. **quās:** begins the relative clause and is the *direct object* of *convocat*. **Caesar:** subject of *convocat*. **in castra:** adverbial phrase limiting the *next verb*, *convocat*.

93.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Cōpiae quās Galba in hībernīs conlocat Belgārum
praesidia nōn oppūgnābunt. 2. Nostrī cum Rēmīs coniū-
randō castra quae Germānī in Galliā conlocābant oppū-
gnāre parābant. 3. Lēgātī Galbae in Galliam properāre

nōn dubitant, ut oppida quae amīcī Germānōrum imperī causā aedificant oppūgnent. 4. Caesar cōpiīs amātīs vīcōs quōs nostrī in Galliā facile expūgnābant (*stormed*) dabit.

II.—1. The slaves whom Galba conceals in a suitable place will carry relief to the Remi. 2. Caesar was giving swords and javelins to the Remi, whom he calls friends, so that they might attack the large camp which the Germans were preparing to place in Gaul. 3. O Romans! storm the redoubt which the Belgians are preparing. 4. Galba's forces will attack the wall which the Germans are building.

LESSON XIX.

IRREGULAR VERB **SUM**, *I AM*. RELATIVE PRONOUN,
CONTINUED.

94. Present indicative, *sum*, *I am*. Imperfect indicative, *eram*, *I was*. Future indicative, *erō*, *I shall be*.

I am.		I was.		I shall be.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sum, <i>I am</i>	sumus, <i>we are</i>	eram	erāmus	erō	erimus
2. es, <i>you are</i>	estis, <i>you are</i>	erās	erātis	eris	eritis
3. est, <i>he is</i>	sunt, <i>they are</i>	erat	erant	erit	erunt

95. Use of *sum*—Predicate nominative.—Finite forms of *sum* are followed by a *noun* or an *adjective* in the nominative case; such a nominative is called a *predicate nominative*. If the predicate nominative is an *adjective*, it takes the *gender* and *number* of the *subject* to which it belongs. The case with *esse* will be explained later.

97. Examples of the predicate nominative:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Mūrus altus est, | <i>The wall is high</i> |
| 2. Porta lāta est, | <i>The gate is wide</i> |
| 3. Oppidum māgnum erat, | <i>The town was large</i> |
| 4. Cōpiae ferae erant, | <i>The forces were fierce</i> |
| 5. Belgae ferī erant, | <i>The Belgians were fierce</i> |
| 6. Castra māgna erunt, | <i>The camp will be large</i> |

In the above sentences the *predicate adjective* is in the *nominative*, having the *number* and *gender* of the subject to which it belongs. In (2) *lāta* is *nominative singular feminine*, to agree with *porta*. In (6) *castra* is *plural*, hence *erunt* is *plural* and *māgna* is *nominative plural neuter*, agreeing with *castra*.

98. The pronoun in the genitive (possessive) case.

EXAMPLES.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Germānī quōrum castra | <i>The Germans whose camp Galba
Galba occupābit,</i> | <i>will seize</i> |
| 2. Cōpiae quārum tēla nova | <i>The forces whose weapons are
sunt,</i> | <i>new</i> |
| 3. Oppidum cūius mūrī altī | <i>The town whose walls are tall
sunt,</i> | <i></i> |
| 4. Lēgātus Rōmānus cūius cō-
piae Gallōs superābant, | <i>The Roman ambassador whose
forces overcame the Gauls</i> | <i></i> |

99.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Silvae in Galliā multae sunt (*there are many*, etc.).
 2. Mūrus oppidī altus est. 3. Sumus amīcī populī Rōmānī.
 4. Nostrī tēlīs et armīs vīcum cūius mūrī nōn māgnī sunt
expūgnābunt. 5. Caesar lēgātō cūius cōpiae ad Belgās
auxilium nōn portābant pīla multa dabat. 6. Nostrī frū-
mentō Belgās quōrum oppida in prōvinciā sunt iuvābant
(were aiding).

- II.—1. The walls are high. 2. Galba's camp is new.
 3. The Roman forces are fresh. 4. Caesar will give help to
 the Remi whose fields are in farthest Gaul. 5. Our friends
 will carry corn into the town whose walls the fierce Belgians

are preparing to storm. 6. The forces whose ambassadors Galba summons out of winter-quarters will renew the battle, so that they may rout the Germans.

LESSON XX.

PORTŌ, CONTINUED. PERFECT STEM.

100. Perfect indicative of *portō*, *I carried, have carried, did carry.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portāvī	1. portāvimus
2. portāvistī	2. portāvistis
3. portāvit	3. portāvērunt (<i>ēre</i>)

Personal endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-ī	-imus
-istī	-istis
-it	-ērunt (<i>ēre</i>)

101. Portāv, the stem of this tense, called the *perfect stem*, is found by dropping final ī from the first person singular of the *perfect indicative*.

Conjugate, with meanings, vītō, parō, and occupō in the *perfect indicative*.

102. Meanings of the perfect and imperfect indicative.—The *perfect tense* has *two uses*, denoting (1) an action completed just now (*Definite perfect*), or (2) one completed at some point of *past time* (*Indefinite or Historical perfect*): as, (*definite perfect*) pater pervēnit, *father has (already) arrived*; (*indefinite perfect*) Caesar omnem Galliam vicit, *Caesar conquered all Gaul*.

The *imperfect tense* represents an action as *continued* in

the *past*. The action may be (1) *continuous* in the past; as, *oppidānī oppidum aedificābant*, *the townsmen were building a town*;—(2) *customary* or *usual* action; as, *Germānī Rhēnum trānsibant*, *the Germans used to cross (kept crossing) the Rhine*;—(3) *attempted* action (*Conative imperfect*); as, *hostēs pontem incendēbant*, *the enemy tried to burn the bridge*.

103.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 21–30 (448).

104. Use of *quod*,¹ because.—*Quod* introduces a subordinate clause to shew ‘reason why,’ and such a clause is called a *causal clause*.

Causal clauses do not usually stand last.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Quod nostrī ad pūgnandum</i> | <i>Galba gives the signal, because</i> |
| (<i>gerund</i>) <i>parātī sunt</i> , <i>Galba</i> | <i>our men are ready for fighting</i> |
| <i>sīgnūm dat,</i> | <i>ing</i> |
| 2. <i>Quod Belgae coniūrāvērunt</i> , | <i>Because the Belgians conspired,</i> |
| <i>Galba oppida oppūgnāre</i> | <i>Galba prepared to attack their towns</i> |
| <i>parāvit,</i> | |

In (1) above *quod* introduces *sunt parātī*, giving the *cause of* and modifying the *principal verb*, *dat*. So in (2) *quod . . . coniūrāvērunt* limits *parāvit*, stating the *reason* for the action.

105.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. *Servī fugae causā lēgātīs equōs parāvērunt.*
 2. *Quod Germānī quōs fugāvit ex Galliā mātūrābant*,
Caesar in hībernīs cōpiās conlocāvit. 3. *Caesar lēgātōs*
incūsābat, quod contrā Belgās proeliō nōn sustentāvērunt
(did not hold out) sed in castra properāvērunt. 4.
Belgārum cōpiae quās nostrī initiō proelī superāvērunt

¹ *Quod, quia, quoniam*, discussed in (276).

equōs parābant (*were making ready*), ut trāns Rhēnum properārent. 5. Galba, lēgātus Rōmānōrum, quod Ger-mānī multōs populī Rōmānī agrōs vāstābant, proelium redintegrāre parāvit.

II.—1. The Romans in Galba's camp routed the remaining Belgians with the forces¹ which the Remi gave (*dedē-runt*) to the Roman people. 2. The ambassador to whom Caesar gave fresh forces will easily storm the redoubt of the Belgians. 3. The townsmen to whom Caesar gives corn and weapons are friends of the Roman people. 4. The Germans will hasten out of the village, in which they are wintering, to lay waste the fields of the Belgians.

LESSON XXI.

PORTŌ AND SUM, CONTINUED.

106. Pluperfect indicative of *portō*. Future perfect indicative.

<i>had carried.</i>	<i>shall have carried.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. portāveram	portāverō
2. portāverās	portāveris
3. portāverat	portāverit
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. portāverāmus	portāverimus
2. portāverātis	portāveritis
3. portāverant	portāverint

107. These two tenses *complete* the indicative mood of *portō* in the active voice. See indicative mood, active, (*six tenses*,) of *amō* (474). Conjugate the entire indicative mood of *sustentō*, *convocō*, and *dō*. Distinguish the indicative tenses with respect to *stems*.

¹ Ablative of means (43 b) ‘ablative without *cum*.’

108. Present subjunctive of *sum*. Imperfect subjunctive.

may be.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sim	sīmus
2. sīs	sītis
3. sit	sint

might be.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

109.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 31–40 (448).

110. Subordinate clauses.—Three kinds of *subordinate clauses* have thus far been used, viz.: the *ut clause*, the *relative*, and the *quod clause*. What can be said of the *ut clause*? of the agreement and position of the *relative*? of the meaning of the *quod clause*?

111.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānī prō oppidī mūrīs vallum altum conlocandō praesidia parāverant. 2. Quod pericula proelī māgna sunt, Caesar in silvīs altīs pūgnam nōn redintegrābit. 3. Lēgātus Belgārum nostrīs equōs et arma dedit, ut ad Rēmōs, amīcōs, subsidium portārent. 4. Germānī propter māgnūm nostrōrum numerūm vīcum novūm in quem līberōs et impedimenta portāre parābant aedificāvērunt. 5. Lēgātus Rōmānōrum oppidānōs, quod amīcīs populī Rōmānī subsidium nōn dederant, incūsābat.

II.—1. Because the Germans gave aid to the Belgians who were not friends of the Roman people, Caesar hastened² to attack with many forces the redoubt which they had placed in front of their camp. 2. With the help³ of the slaves whom Galba had summoned into Gaul, our forces¹ built² a large camp in which they placed weapons for fighting.

¹ Place *first* in sentence. ²properāvit. See vocabulary, **properū**.

³ Ablative of means (43 b) ‘ablative without *cum*.’

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION. SUM, CONTINUED.

112. Miles, soldier, mas.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. mīles	mīlītēs
Gen. mīlitis	mīlitum
Dat. mīlitī	mīlitibus
Acc. mīlitem	mīlītēs
Voc. mīles	mīlītēs
Abl. mīlite	mīlitibus

Case-endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
—	-ēs
-is	-um
-ī	-ibus
-em	-ēs
—	-ēs
-e	-ibus

113. The stem¹ of miles may be found by dropping is from the *genitive singular*: militis, stem milit.

The *nominative* and *vocative singular* are alike, differing somewhat from the *stem*; the remaining cases of the *singular* and *all* the cases of the *plural* are formed by annexing the *case-endings* to the *stem*. The *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative plural* end in ēs, the *dative* and *ablative plural* in ibus.

114.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 41–46 (448).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
pedes	peditis, mas.	footman, plural <i>infantry</i>
eques	equitis, mas.	horseman, plural <i>cavalry</i>
obses	obsidis, mas.	hostage
bellum	-ī, neut.	war
Sēquani	-ōrum, mas.	the Sequani
inimīcus	-a -um, adj.	unfriendly
bonus	-a -um, adj.	good
armō	(give principal parts)	to arm
dēcertō	" " "	to contend
exercitō	" " "	to train

Decline pedes, eques, and obses.

¹ For the classification of stems see Third Declension (455).

115. Notice carefully the *agreement* of *adjective* and *noun* in the following:

1. *servī bonī*, *of a good slave*
2. *mīlitis bonī*, *of a good soldier*

Notice that the adjective does not necessarily agree with the noun in *ending*, but only in *gender, number, and case*.

116. Imperative of sum.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. [wanting]	1. [wanting]
2. { es, <i>be thou</i>	2. { este, <i>be ye</i>
estō, <i>thou shalt be</i>	estōte, <i>ye shall be</i>
3. estō, <i>he shall be</i>	3. suntō, <i>they shall be</i>

Present infinitive.

esse, to be.

This completes the *present system* of tenses of the verb **sum**.

117. Synopsis of sum (present stem es):

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	sum
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	eram
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	erō
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	sim
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	essem
6. <i>Imperative</i>	es
7. <i>Present participle</i>	[lacking]
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	esse
9. <i>Gerund</i>	[lacking]

118.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Galbae mīlitēs ad pūgnandum parātī sunt.
2. Lēgātus noster mīlitibus Rōmānīs galeās quās Germānī in castrīs praeṣidī causā cēlāverant dedit. 3. Mūrī quōs Gallī praeṣidī causā prō oppidīs aedificāvērunt altī et lātī erant. 4. Lēgātī nostrī Gallōs incūsāvērunt et oppida

quae sine praesidiō erant oppūgnāvērunt, quod populō Rōmānō līberōs obsidēs¹ nōn dederant.

II.—1. Caesar will have given a new shield to the good soldier. 2. Galba was summoning the fresh infantry out of camp. 3. Caesar was blaming the ambassador to whom he had given the signal, because he hesitated to renew the battle with² the cavalry of the Sequani. 4. The Germans gave their children to Galba as hostages, so that they might establish friendship with² the Roman people.

LESSON XXIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION AND THIRD DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

119. Perfect subjunctive of *porto*. Pluperfect subjunctive.
may have carried. *might have carried.*

SINGULAR.

1. portāverim
2. portāveris
3. portāverit

SINGULAR.

- portāvissem
portāvissēs
portāvisset

PLURAL.

1. portāverimus
2. portāveritis
3. portāverint

PLURAL.

- portāvissēmus
portāvissētis
portāvissent

Perfect infinitive.

portāuisse, to have carried

This completes the *perfect system of tenses* formed upon the perfect stem **portāv.**

¹ Appositive, *as hostages* (53).

² Use prep. **cum.** Why? (43 a.)

120. Synopsis of the perfect system of *portō* (*six tenses*):

1. *Perfect indicative* portāvī
2. *Pluperfect indicative* portāveram
3. *Future perfect indicative* portāverō
4. *Perfect subjunctive* portāverim
5. *Pluperfect subjunctive* portāvissem
6. *Perfect infinitive* portāvisse

121.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 47-52 (448).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
imperātum	-ī, neut.	order or command
levitās	levitātis, fem.	fickleness
facultās	-tātis, "	opportunity
aestās	-tātis, "	summer
potestās	-tātis, "	power
auctōritās	-tātis, "	influence
flūmen	flūminis, neut.	river
homō	hominis, mas.	man
rūmor	rūmōris, mas.	report
celeritas	-tātis, fem.	swiftness, speed

122. Declension of nouns.

Cīvitās, state, fem. Agmen, line (of march), neut.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. cīvitās	cīvitātēs	agmen	agmina
Gen. cīvitātis	cīvitātum	agminis	agminum
Dat. cīvitātī	cīvitātibus	agminī	agminibus
Acc. cīvitātem	cīvitātēs	agmen	agmina
Voc. cīvitās	cīvitātēs	agmen	agmina
Atl. cīvitātē	cīvitātibus	agmine	agminibus

Nouns in *ās*, gen. *ātis*, are feminine. Nouns in *men*, gen. *minis*, are neuter.

Lapis, stone, mas.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. lapis	lapidēs	Acc. lapidem	lapidēs
Gen. lapidis	lapidum	Voc. lapis	lapidēs
Dat. lapidī	lapidibus	Abl. lapide	lapidibus

Nouns in *is*, gen. *idis*, and *es*, gen. *itis* or *idis*, are masculine.

Combined declension of *miles ferus* (*miles*, third-declension noun; *ferus*, an adjective with the second-declension endings):

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> mīles ferus	mīlitēs ferī
<i>Gen.</i> mīlitis ferī	mīlitum ferōrum
<i>Dat.</i> mīlitī ferō	mīlitibus ferīs
<i>Acc.</i> mīlitem ferum	mīlitēs ferōs
<i>Voc.</i> mīles fere	mīlitēs ferī
<i>Abl.</i> mīlite ferō	mīlitibus ferīs

123.

EXERCISE.

1. Lēgātūs cui Caesar proelium redintegrāndī sīgnūm dat Germānōrum peditēs facile fugābit. 2. Noster lēgātūs in Galliam cum peditibūs integrīs quōs in hībernīs in prōvinciā Rōmānā conlocāverat properāvit et obsidēs multōs postulāvit. 3. Belgae lēgātō nostrō līberōs obsidēs dabant, ut in potestāte populū Rōmānī essent. 4. Caesar multīs cum cīvitātibūs quae in armīs nōn erant et contrā populū Rōmānum nōn coniūrāverant amīcitiam cōnfīrmāvit. 5. Quod Germānī obsidēs quōs postulāverat nōn dedērunt,¹ Caesar oppida trāns flūmen Rhēnum oppūgnāvit.

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD DECLENSION. SUM, CONTINUED.

124. *Pater, father, mas.**Rūmor, report, mas.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> pater	patrēs	rūmor	rūmōrēs
<i>Gen.</i> patris	patrum	rūmōris	rūmōrum
<i>Dat.</i> patrī	patribus	rūmōrī	rūmōribus
<i>Acc.</i> patrem	patrēs	rūmōrem	rūmōrēs
<i>Voc.</i> pater	patrēs	rūmor	rūmōrēs
<i>Abl.</i> patre	patribus	rūmōrē	rūmōribus

Nouns in *er* and *or* are *masculine*.

¹ Would not give.

Latus, *side or flank*, neut.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Gen.</i>	lateris	laterum
<i>Dat.</i>	lateri	lateribus
<i>Acc.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Voc.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Abl.</i>	laterē	lateribus

Nouns in us, gen. eris or oris, are *neuter*.

Legiō, *legion*, fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	legiō	legiōnēs
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnis	legiōnum
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnī	legiōnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnem	legiōnēs
<i>Voc.</i>	legiō	legiōnēs
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōne	legiōnibus

Nouns in ō are *masculine*, save those in dō, gō, and iō, which are *feminine*.

125.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 53–66 (448).

126. Dative with adjectives. — Adjectives of *likeness*, *fitness*, *nearness*, and the like with their opposites take the *dative*; as,

Belgae sunt proximī Germānīs, *The Belgians are next to the Germans*

127. Sum in the perfect tenses. — Principal parts: sum, esse, fuī, no supine. Upon the *perfect stem* fu are formed six tenses. For synopsis of the present system, see (117).

Synopsis of the *perfect system* of sum (stem fu), see (484):

<i>Perfect indicative</i>	fuī, <i>I have been—was</i>
<i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	fueram
<i>Future perfect indicative</i>	fuerō
<i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	fuerim
<i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	fuissem
<i>Perfect infinitive</i>	fuisse

128. Use of *cum* + subjunctive.—**Cum**,¹ *when*, is followed by a verb in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive*. **Cum** + *imperfect subjunctive* means ‘*when*’ in the sense of *while*, denoting action *unfinished*; **cum** + *pluperfect subjunctive* means ‘*when*’ in the sense of *after*, denoting action *finished*. If the verb depending on **cum** is in the *imperfect subjunctive*, then **cum** = *while (when)*, not *with*, and the verb is translated *as if it were imperfect indicative*; as, **cum Caesar in Galliā esset**, *while Caesar was in Gaul*.

129.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Cum Caesar equitēs integrōs exspectāret, peditēs oppidum cūius mūrī nōn altī fuērunt expūgnāvērunt.
 2. Lēgātī tubīs mīlitibus integrīs sīgnū dedērunt et ē castrīs celeritāte māgnā mātūrāvērunt, ut Germānōrum hīberna quae in Galliā erant occupārent. 3. Cum reliquae cīvitātēs quae Galbae amīcae² erant ad castra Rōmāna auxiliū portārent, Caesar trāns Rhēnum cum peditibus et equitibus mātūrāvit et Germānōrum castella, quod populō Rōmānō obsidēs novōs nōn dederant, oppūgnāvit.
 4. Caesar auctōritātem amplificandī causā cum cīvitātibus multīs in Galliā amīcitiam cōnfīrmāvit.

- II.—1. The state in which Caesar placed his camp will give much corn to the Roman infantry. 2. While our soldiers were preparing to attack the walls of the town, the townsmen hastened out of the town, so that they might avoid (to avoid) the dangers of battle. 3. While the Sequani were awaiting the forces of the neighbouring Belgians, the Roman legions hastened with great swiftness through the province and seized the camp which the Sequani had prepared for the sake of defence.

¹ For treatment of *historical cum* see (203).

² Adjective, *friendly*.

LESSON XXV.

THIRD DECLENSION AND FIRST CONJUGATION,
CONTINUED.130. *Collis, hill, mas.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> collis	collēs
<i>Gen.</i> collis	collium
<i>Dat.</i> collī	collibus
<i>Acc.</i> collem	collēs -īs
<i>Voc.</i> collis	collēs
<i>Abl.</i> colle	collibus

Rēx, king, mas.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēx	rēgēs
rēgis	rēgum
rēgī	rēgibus
rēgem	rēgēs
rēx	rēgēs
rēge	rēgibus

Flūmen lātum, a wide river, neut.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> flūmen lātum	flūmina lāta
<i>Gen.</i> flūminis lātī	flūminum lātōrum
<i>Dat.</i> flūminī lātō	flūminib⁹s lātīs
<i>Acc.</i> flūmen lātum	flūmina lāta
<i>Voc.</i> flūmen lātum	flūmina lāta
<i>Abl.</i> flūmine lātō	flūminib⁹s lātīs

131. Nouns ending in *es* and *is* *not increasing* the number of syllables in the *genitive* are called “*vowel-stems in i*” (*collis, collis*, stem *colli*; *nubes, nubis*, stem *nubi*). They have *ium* in the *genitive plural* and *ēs* or *is* in the *accusative plural*. Some have the *ablative* in *i* (457). They are mostly *masculine*, sometimes *feminine*. The stem of nouns in *es* or *is* *increasing* the number of syllables in the *genitive* is found by dropping *is* from the *genitive*: *lapis, lapidis*, stem *lapid*; *miles, militis*, stem *milit*.

¹ For summary of the genitive plural in *um* and *ium* see (460).

132.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 67-80 (448).

133. Supine system of *portō*.—The *supine stem*, upon which *four* forms are based, is found by dropping **um** from the first supine: *portātum*, supine stem *portāt*.

The following, formed upon the stem *portāt*, *complete the active voice of portō*:

1. *First supine* *portātum*, joined to verbs, *to carry*
2. *Second supine* *portātū*, “ adjectives, *to carry*
3. *Future participle* *portātūrus*, -a, -um, *being about to carry*
4. *Future infinitive* *portātūrum*, -am, -um esse, *to be about to carry*

Write a *complete synopsis* of *superō* in the active voice in order of *stems*, giving *name of tense and meaning*, with *nine* forms upon *superā* (75), *six* upon *superāv* (120), and *four* upon *superāt*.

134. Dative with *imperō* and *mandō*.—*Imperō*, *I command*, and *mandō*, *I direct*, take their *object*, the person commanded, in the *dative*; thus:

Caesar legiōnibus imperat, *Caesar commands the legions*
Galba lēgātīs mandāvit, *Galba directed the ambassadors*

135. Rule of sequence of tenses.—When the verb in the *principal clause* denotes *present* or *future time*, the verb in the *dependent clause* is *present* or *perfect subjunctive*.

When the verb in the *principal clause* denotes *past time*, the verb in the *dependent clause* is *imperfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive*.

136. Table of sequence.

Present	}	are fol-	}	present subjunctive to show <i>con-</i>
Future				temporaneous or subsequent action (<i>unfinished</i>);
Future-perfect				perfect subjunctive to show <i>an-</i> <i>tecedent action</i> (<i>finished</i>).

Imperfect }
 Perfect }
 Pluperfect } are follow.
ed by { imperfect subjunctive to show
 contemporaneous or subsequent action (unfinished);
 pluperfect subjunctive to show
 antecedent action (finished).

137. Application of the rule of sequence in the *ut* clause.

Caesar obsidēs postulat ut Caesar demands hostages so
 auctōritātem amplificet,
 that he may increase his power

Caesar obsidēs postulābit ut Caesar will demand hostages so
 auctōritātem amplificet,
 that he may increase his power

Caesar obsidēs postulāverit ut Caesar will have demanded
 auctōritātem amplificet,
 hostages so that he may increase his power

Caesar obsidēs postulābat ut Caesar kept demanding hostages
 auctōritātem amplificāret,
 so that he might increase his power

Caesar obsidēs postulāvit ut Caesar demanded hostages so
 auctōritātem amplificāret,
 that he might increase his power

Caesar obsidēs postulāverat ut Caesar had demanded hostages
 auctōritātem amplificāret,
 so that he might increase his power

LESSON XXVI.

THIRD DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

138. Multitūdō, *multitude*, fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	multitūdō	multitūdinēs
Gen.	multitūdinis	multitūdinum
Dat.	multitūdinī	multitūdinibus
Acc.	multitūdinem	multitūdinēs
Voc.	multitūdō	multitūdinēs
Abl.	multitūdine	multitūdinibus

Vīs, force, vigor, fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	vīs	vīrēs	iter	itinera
<i>Gen.</i>	vīs	vīriūm	itineris	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	—	vīribus	itinerī	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	vim	vīrēs	iter	itinera
<i>Voc.</i>	—	vīrēs	iter	itinera
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	vīribus	itinere	itineribus

For 'general rules of gender' in the *third declension* see (458).

139. Review declension of all the *nouns* in the third declension (458, 459). Give synopsis in the entire active voice of *imperō* in order of 'tense-name,' 'stem,' and 'meaning.' Give synopsis, active voice, of *amō*, by *moods, etc.* (474). What can be said of the *relative clause* and of subordinate clauses introduced by *ut, quod, and cum?* Give the *rule of sequence of tenses.*

140.**VOCABULARY.**

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
hostis	hostis, mas.	enemy (usually plural in Caesar)
īgnis	īgnis, mas.	fire
fīnis	fīnis, mas.	end (in the plural, territory)
turris	turris, fem.	tower
calamitās	-tātis, fem.	calamity
pāx	pācis, fem.	peace
pars	partis, fem.	part
subitō, adv.		suddenly
fortiter, adv.		bravely
ōrātiō	-ōnis, fem.	speech
profectiō	-ōnis, fem.	departure
dēditiō	-ōnis, fem.	surrender
mūnitiō	-ōnis, fem.	fortification

īgnis has the ablative īgne or īgni.

141.**EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Cum Caesar in Galliā esset, lēgātī multārum cīvitātum ad castra quae in hostium fīnibus parābat mātū-

rāvērunt. 2. Equitēs Rōmānī auxiliō Rēmōrum castellum in quō arma multa erant expūgnāvērunt et agmina hostium facile prōfligāvērunt. 3. Quod hostēs proeliō cum Caesaris legiōnibus nōn dēcertābant sed in oppidō cōpiās cēlābant, mīlitēs nostrī altās turrēs quibus oppidi mūrōs facile ex-pūgnāvērunt aedificāvērunt. 4. Germānī in quōrum fīni-bus nostrī praesidia parant ad Caesaris castra līberōs obsidēs, ut pācem impetrent, portābunt. 5. Galba in fīnēs hostium cum peditibus et māgnā equitum parte mātūrāvit, ut mā-gnum obsidum numerum postulāret.

II.—1. Caesar blamed the soldiers of the first and second legion, because they did not renew the battle with the enemy's infantry. 2. While Caesar was preparing on the hill a place for his camp, the enemy's forces suddenly hastened out of the woods towards our men. 3. The Remi whose soldiers routed the Sequani will hasten into the territory of the Belgians to prepare¹ new fortifications. 4. While Galba was contending in the boundaries² of the Belgians, Caesar's legions easily routed the infantry of the Sequani and gave to the rest of³ the enemy an opportunity of establishing peace with the Roman people.

LESSON XXVII.

USE OF IMPERŌ AND MANDŌ.

142. Review **sum**—*present system* (117), *perfect system* (127). Also conjugate with meanings all of **sum** in the order given in (484); observe carefully the *future participle* and *future infinitive*. What forms of **sum** are lacking?

143. Decline the nouns of the *first* and *second declensions*

¹ How is *purpose* expressed in Latin? (54.)

² 'boundaries' = *territory*.

³ 'rest of': *dative of reliquus*.

(453, 454), and also *altus* and *crēber* (466). What is the case of the *predicate noun* or *adjective* after finite forms of *sum*? After *esse* the predicate noun is *acc.* Give example, both English and Latin, illustrating the *agreement* of the *relative with its antecedent*, and explain.

144.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 81–92 (448).

145. Use of *imperō* and *mandō*.—*Imperō* and *mandō* take the person commanded in the *dative* and an *ut* clause to denote what is commanded to be done. This *ut* clause is translated by the *present infinitive*.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Caesar servō ut mātūret im- | <i>Caesar commands the slave to hasten</i> |
| perat, | |
| 2. Galba lēgātīs ut frūmen- | <i>Galba will direct the ambassadors to obtain corn</i> |
| tum impetrēt mandābit, | |
| 3. Lēgātūs nostrīs ut mūnī- | <i>The ambassador commanded our men to storm the fortifi-</i> |
| tiōnēs expūgnārent impe- | <i>cations</i> |
| rāvit | |

Notice very carefully the *sequence of tenses in the ut clauses* when the *English infinitive verb* is turned into the *subjunctive in Latin*. In (1) and (2) the *present subjunctive* is used because the *time of the leading verb* is in (1) *present* and in (2) *future*; see ‘*table of sequence*’ (first part) (136). In (3) the *imperfect subjunctive* is used because the *principal verb* denotes *past time* (‘*table of sequence*,’ second part).

146.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Caesar Germānīs quī in fīnibus nostrīs hiemant imperābit ut in prōvinciam Rōmānam liberōs obsidēs portent. 2. Caesar lēgātō equitum mandat ut in hostium fīnēs mātūret et cōpiās prōfliget. 3. Galba lēgātō cūiūs mīlītēs mūnītiōnēs novās aedificābant mandāvit ut in hībernīs peditēs et equitēs conlocāret (*sequence*). 4. Cum Rēmī, amīcī nostri (*adj.*), contrā Germānōrum et Belgārum

cōpiās fortiter sustentārent, Caesar Galbae imperāvit ut in Galliam cum mīlitibus p̄imae et secundae legiōnis mātūrāret et ad Rēmōs subsidium portāret.

II.—1. Because the fortifications in the enemy's territory were large, Galba directed (*past time*) his soldiers to build a high tower. 2. The Remi direct their ambassadors to obtain peace for their state which had given aid to the Roman legions in many battles. 3. While Caesar was preparing to attack a large town, messengers hastened into our camp to announce¹ the departure of the enemy out of the town. 4. The soldiers whom Caesar commanded to attack the new fortifications will seize the enemy's baggage.

LESSON XXVIII.

SECOND-CONJUGATION VERB.

147. Present indicative of *dēleō*, *I destroy*. Meanings of persons as in *portō*.

I destroy.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-----------	---------

1. dēleō	dēlēmus
2. dēlēs	dēlētis
3. dēlet	dēlēnt

The present infinitive of second-conjugation verbs ends in ēre. Hence the present stem ends in ē. Stem of *dēleō*, *dēlē* (57).

148.

VOCABULARY.

videō,	<i>I see</i>
habeō,	<i>I have</i>
teneō,	<i>I hold</i>
moveō,	<i>I move</i>
contineō,	<i>I keep</i>
prohibeō,	<i>I prevent or cut off</i>

¹ Infinitive to express purpose. Do not render by the Latin infinitive.

149. Notice carefully the endings of the *present subjunctive* in the *first* conjugation and those of the *present indicative* in the *second* conjugation. Note the loss of a syllable in the second person singular of *dēleō*: not *dē-le-ēs*, but *dē-lēs*.

First conjugation—present subjunctive. **Second conjugation—present indicative.**

Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-em	-ēmus
-ēs	-ētis
-et	-ent

Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-eō	-ēmus
-ēs	-ētis
-et	-ent

150. Thus if a verb ends in *et* or *ent*, for instance, it is *present subjunctive* when the verb is of the *first* conjugation; *present indicative* when the verb is of the *second* conjugation.

Conjugate the *present subjunctive* of *postulō* and *imperō*; *present indicative* of *habeō*, *moveō*, and *teneō*.

151.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Lēgātus Rōmānus, quod hostium profectiōnem videt, cum legiōne prīmā ad collem in quō*¹ *Galbae castra sunt mātūrat.* 2. *Nostri Germānōrum profectiōnem prohibent, ut Caesarī obsidēs novōs impetrent.* 3. *Peditēs Caesaris gladiīs et pīlīs mūnītiōnēs quās Sēquani praesidī causā aedificāvērunt facile dēlent.* 4. *Quod Belgae ferī*² *in Galliā fīnēs lātōs*² *habent, Caesar castra movet et in Galliam mātūrat, ut agrōs vāstet.* 5. *Cum hostēs trāns flūmen impedīmenta portārent, Galba in colle proximō flūminī cōpiās conlocāvit et Caesaris imperāta exspectāvit.*

II.—1. The soldiers of the second legion easily routed

¹ *on which.*

² Explain agreement of *ferī* and *lātōs*.

the enemy's infantry and obtained the baggage which the enemy had concealed in their fortifications. 2. Because Caesar sees the enemy's forces on the hill in front of the town whose walls he is preparing to attack, he keeps his infantry and cavalry in camp. 3. Galba commands the cavalry and infantry to hasten across the river and await the departure of the enemy.

LESSON XXIX.

SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

152. Imperfect indicative of *dēleō*. Future indicative. Present subjunctive.

was destroying. *shall destroy.* *may destroy.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. dēlēbam	dēlēbāmus	dēlēbō	dēlēbimus	dēleam	dēleāmus
2. dēlēbās	dēlēbātis	dēlēbis	dēlēbitis	dēleās	dēleātis
3. dēlēbat	dēlēbant	dēlēbit	dēlēbunt	dēleat	dēleant

153. The stem in the above tenses is **dēlē** (147). The endings of the *imperfect* and *future* indicative are the same as in *portō*. Compare the endings of the *present subjunctive* of *dēleō* with the *present indicative* endings of *portō* (11). Therefore when the verb ends in *at* or *ant*, it is *present indicative* if it belongs to the *first conjugation*; *present subjunctive* if it belongs to the *second conjugation*.

154.

VOCABULARY.

<i>habeō</i>	<i>habēre</i>	<i>to have</i>
<i>prohibeō</i>	<i>prohibēre</i>	<i>to prevent</i>
<i>valeō</i>	<i>valēre</i>	<i>to be strong</i>
<i>distineō</i>	<i>distinēre</i>	<i>to divide</i>
<i>sustineō</i>	<i>sustinēre</i>	<i>to withstand</i>
<i>iubeō</i>	<i>iubēre</i>	<i>to order</i>

155. Use of *iubeō*, *I order*.—*Iubeō* is followed by the *accusative (subject) + infinitive*; as,

Caesar mīlitēs hostium profec- *Caesar will order his soldiers to*
tiōnem prohibēre iubēbit, *prevent the enemies' departure*

In this sentence *militēs* is in the *accusative case, subject* of the infinitive *prohibēre*, which, being a transitive verb, takes its *direct object, profectiōnem*, in the *accusative also*.

156.

EXERCISES.

In the following sentences distinguish carefully the verb-forms in *et, at; ent, ant*.

I.—1. Quod cīvitās auctōritātē et numerō mīlitum valēbat, Caesar lēgātī ut obsidēs multōs postulārent imperāvit. 2. Lēgātī nostrī peditēs distinēbunt, ut in Galliā populī Rōmānī imperium amplifacent et hostium cōpiās superent. 3. Galba mīlitēs integrōs trāns flūmen ad collem in quō hostēs mūnītiōnēs novās aedificant proprāre iubēbit. 4. Lēgātus peditum numerum amplificat et fīnitimōs in castra frūmentum portāre iubet, ut in Galliā hiemet et hostium profectiōnem prohibeat. 5. Galli turrēs novās quās nostrī ad oppidum oppūgnandum aedificāvērunt īgnī dēlēbunt.

II.—1. Our infantry will obtain corn and arms from many states which are preparing to give hostages to Caesar,

so that they may have peace. 2. While the states next to the Roman province were preparing a plan of surrender, Caesar was keeping his new legions in camp. 3. Galba commands¹ his soldiers to place the baggage in camp and with javelins and swords to withstand the infantry of the enemy. 4. Write sentence (3) "again, substituting 'orders' for 'commands': Galba *orders*² his soldiers, etc.

LESSON XXX.

SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

157. Imperfect subjunctive of *dēleō*, might destroy.

SINGULAR.

- 1. dēlērem
- 2. dēlērēs
- 3. dēlēret

PLURAL.

- dēlērēmus
- dēlērētis
- dēlērent

Imperative.

SINGULAR.

- 1. [wanting] dēlē, *destroy thou*
- 2. { dēlētō, *thou shalt destroy*
- 3. dēlētō, *he shall destroy*

PLURAL.

- [wanting] { dēlēte, *destroy ye*
- { dēlētōte, *ye shall destroy*
- dēlēntō, *they shall destroy*

Present participle.

dēlēns, *destroying*

Gerund.

Gen. dēlēndī

Present infinitive.

dēlēre, *to destroy*

Dat. dēlēndō

Acc. dēlēndūm

Abl. dēlēndō

158. This completes the *present system* of forms belonging to the *present stem*, *dēlē*, as is seen in the following synopsis:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------|
| 1. Present indicative | dēleō |
| 2. Imperfect indicative | dēlēbam |

¹ Use **imperō**.

² Use **iubeō**.

3. <i>Future indicative</i>	dēlēbō
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	dēleam
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlērem
6. <i>Imperative</i>	dēlē
7. <i>Present participle</i>	dēlēns
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	dēlēre
9. <i>Gerund</i>	dēlēndī

159.

VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
frāter	-tris, mas.	brother
imperātor	-tōris, mas.	commander
lēx	lēgis, fem.	law
nox	noctis, fem.	night
virtūs	-tūtis, fem.	courage
compleō	-plēre, second conj.	to fill
obtineō	-nēre, " "	to hold

160. Principal parts of second-conjugation verbs.—Only a few verbs of the second conjugation have the *perfect indicative* in *vī*; *dēleō* is given for better comparison with *portō*. Most verbs of this conjugation have *uī* in the *perfect*.

The ending of the *present infinitive* is *ēre* (147).

dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum
compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētum
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum
valeō	valēre	valuī	valitum
sustineō	sustinēre	sustinuī	sustentum

161. Review of subordinate clause—order of words.

Cum nostrī prō oppidō fossās complērent, hostium cōpiae in mūrō pīla et lapidēs conlocābant,

While our men were filling the ditches in front of the town, the enemies' forces were placing javelins and stones upon the wall

The *cum* clause, ending with *complērent*, modifies and marks the *time* of the action in the principal verb, *conlocābant*; *prō oppidō*, adverbial phrase (*within the cum clause*), modifies *complērent*; in the principal clause *hostium* (*genitive*) limits the subject, *cōpiæ*; in *mūrō* modifies *conlocābant* and denotes *place where*; the direct objects precede their verbs.

162.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar imperātōrī legiōnis p̄imae ut vigiliā secundā castra moveat imperat. 2. Galba partem legiōnis oppidum subitō oppūgnāre et partem profectiōnem hostium prohibēre iubet. 3. Caesar mīlitibus quōs in hībernīs in prōvinciā conlocāvit imperābit ut castra moveant et in Galliā praesidia et mūnitōnēs aedificant. 4. Cum Galba cōpiās distinēret et mūrōs prō oppidō expūgnāre parāret, oppidānī ex oppidō properāvērunt et māgnā virtūte nostrōs fugāvērunt.

II.—1. Galba directed the commanders of the new legions to renew the battle with great courage. 2. The enemy build many fortifications, so that they may overcome the great multitude of our men. 3. Our commanders divide their forces in the first watch, that they may storm the enemy's redoubts in many places. 4. Galba demands the surrender of many hostages, because the Gauls have great influence and hold command in many states.

LESSON XXXI.

SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

163. *Dēleō* in the *perfect system*; stem *dēlēv*.

Perfect indicative.	Pluperfect indicative.	Future-perfect indicative.	Perfect subjunctive.
<i>destroyed.</i>	<i>had destroyed.</i>	<i>shall have destroyed.</i>	<i>may have destroyed.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR,
1. <i>dēlēvī</i>	<i>dēlēveram</i>	<i>dēlēverō</i>	<i>dēlēverim</i>
2. <i>dēlēvistī</i>	<i>dēlēverās</i>	<i>dēlēveris</i>	<i>dēlēveris</i>
3. <i>dēlēvit</i>	<i>dēlēverat</i>	<i>dēlēverit</i>	<i>dēlēverit</i>
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. <i>dēlēvimus</i>	<i>dēlēverāmus</i>	<i>dēlēverimus</i>	<i>dēlēverimus</i>
2. <i>dēlēvistis</i>	<i>dēlēverātis</i>	<i>dēlēveritis</i>	<i>dēlēveritis</i>
3. <i>dēlēvērunt</i> (<i>ēre</i>)	<i>dēlēverant</i>	<i>dēlēverint</i>	<i>dēlēverint</i>

Pluperfect subjunctive.

might have destroyed.

SINGULAR.

1. *dēlēvissem*

2. *dēlēvissēs*

3. *dēlēvisset*

PLURAL.

1. *dēlēvissēmus*

2. *dēlēvissētis*

3. *dēlēvissent*

Perfect infinitive.

dēlēvisse, to have destroyed

Synopsis of the *perfect system*:

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>dēlēvī</i> | 4. <i>dēlēverim</i> |
| 2. <i>dēlēveram</i> | 5. <i>dēlēvissem</i> |
| 3. <i>dēlēverō</i> | 6. <i>dēlēvisse</i> |

164. Compare the personal endings of the following:

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Present indicative.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>portō</i> | <i>portāmus</i> |
| 2. <i>portās</i> | <i>portātis</i> |
| 3. <i>portat</i> | <i>portant</i> |

Present subjunctive.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>portem</i> | <i>portēmus</i> |
| 2. <i>portēs</i> | <i>portētis</i> |
| 3. <i>portet</i> | <i>portent</i> |

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Present indicative.

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. <i>dēleō</i> | <i>dēlēmus</i> |
| 2. <i>dēlēs</i> | <i>dēlētis</i> |
| 3. <i>dēlet</i> | <i>dēlent</i> |

Present subjunctive.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>dēleam</i> | <i>dēlēamus</i> |
| 2. <i>dēlēas</i> | <i>dēlēatis</i> |
| 3. <i>dēleat</i> | <i>dēleant</i> |

165.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 1–10 (449).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
nōmen	-minis, neut.	name
prīnceps	-cipis, mas.	chief
cohors	-hortis, fem.	cohort
altitūdō	-dinis, fem.	height
ibi, adv.		there
salūs	-ūtis, fem.	safety

166. Points to remember.

1. Ut, so that, introduces a purpose clause with the verb in the subjunctive. This ut + subjunctive is often translated by the infinitive.
2. Cum, while, takes the imperfect subjunctive, translated like the imperfect indicative.
3. Quod, because, introduces a causal clause whose verb is often in the indicative.
4. The relative qui, etc., usually follows its antecedent and stands first in its clause, the verb of which is often in the indicative.
5. Imperō and mandō take the dative and an ut clause; the verb in the ut clause is in the subjunctive.
6. Iubeō is used with the accusative + infinitive.

167.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Quod cīvitās auctōritāte¹ māgnā est, Caesar Belgīs ut imperātōribus Rōmānīs līberōs prīcipum ob-sidēs dent mandat. 2. Hostēs qui nostrōrum virtūtem et multitūdinem māgnam vidēbant (*saw*) cum līberīs et finitimīs trāns flūmen in Galliam properāvērunt et ibi castra conlocāvērunt. 3. Cum cohortēs legiōnis prīmae

¹ auctōritāte māgnā = of great influence; 'ablative of quality' (376). Translate, 'because their state is one of great influence,' etc.

in castris essent, cohortes reliquae ut mūrōs oppūgnārent māgnac altitūdinis turrīs (*acc.*) altās aedificābant. 4. Quod hostēs in castris mīlītēs continēbant et nostrīs facultātem pūgnandī nōn dabant, Caesar mīlitibus ut agrōs hostium vāstārent imperāvit.

II.—1. On account of the great courage of our men the enemy did not attack the town in which the Roman legions were wintering. 2. Caesar will hasten out of camp with the remaining cohorts to destroy¹ the redoubt which the enemy are building for the sake of safety. 3. Our commanders gave aid to many states of Gaul and called the Gauls friends of the Roman people, because they had many fields and villages and much influence. 4. Caesar commanded Galba to keep¹ his cavalry ready upon the hill and to prevent the flight of the enemy.

LESSON XXXII.

SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

168. Perfect system of *sustineō*; perfect stem *sustinu.*

Principal parts: *sustineō* *sustinēre* *sustinuī* *sustentum*

*From sustinuī is derived the stem *sustinu.**

1. <i>sustinuī</i>	4. <i>sustinuerim</i>
2. <i>sustinueram</i>	5. <i>sustinuissem</i>
3. <i>sustinuerō</i>	6. <i>sustinuisse</i>

169. Supine system of *dēleō* (*four forms*).

Supine, dēlētum; supine stem, dēlēt.

First supine dēlētum, to destroy

Second supine dēlētū, to destroy

Future participle dēlētūrus, -a, -um, being about to destroy

*Future infinitive dēlētūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to
destroy*

¹ Be careful about choice of tense—⁴ rule of sequence¹ (135).

170. The ending of the *future participle* is ūrus, -a, -um; that of the *future infinitive* ūrum, -am, -um esse. To form these, strike off um from the *supine* and annex the above endings; as, parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum; *supine stem*, parāt; *future participle*, parātūrus; *future infinitive*, parātūrum esse. videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum; *supine stem*, vīs; *future participle*, vīsūrus; *future infinitive*, vīsūrum esse.

171.**VOCABULARY.****Verbs 11–22 (449).**

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
tempus	-poris, neut.	time
eōdem tempore, adverbial phrase		at the same time
explorātor	-tōris, mas.	scout
pēs	pedis, mas.	foot
pōns	pontis, mas.	bridge
undique, adv.		from (on) all sides
tum, adv.		then

172. Repeat the rule of sequence. What adjectives govern the dative? What is the *case* of the *predicate word* with sum, etc.? Give rules for the agreement of *adjective* and *relative*. Name four kinds of *ablatives*. Decline the nouns of the first, second, and third declensions (453, 454, 458, 459), and *altus* and *crēber* (466).

173.**EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Caesar Gallis ut in castra Rōmāna liberōs principum obsidēs portārent imperāvit. 2. Quod Caesar explorātōrēs pontem dēlēre iusserat, hostēs prīmā vigiliā cum liberīs et impedimentīs trāns flūmen mātūrāvērunt. 3. Nostrī quibus Caesar tēla nova dedit peditēs hostium,

quod virtūte et numerō hominum nōn valēbant, facile prōflīgāvērunt. 4. Mīlitēs legiōnis p̄imae hominēs virtūtis māgnæ erant et nōn fugā sed fortiter dīmicandō salūtem impetrāvērunt. 5. Quod Gallī mūnītiōnēs novās nostrās oppūgnābant, Caesar imperātōrem cūius cōpiae tēla multa et bona habēbant in Galliam properāre, ut Gallōrum castella et vällum dēlērent, iussit.

II.—1. Caesar ordered the infantry of the second legion to attack the town whose walls were not high. 2. With great swiftness and courage our cavalry hastened out of the redoubts and easily routed the enemy's lines. 3. Galba commanded scouts to destroy the new bridge and prevent the departure of the Belgians who had not given hostages to Caesar. 4. While the Belgians were awaiting the aid of their neighbours, Caesar suddenly attacked their town on all sides with his infantry¹ and destroyed the new fortifications.

LESSON XXXIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

174. Present indicative of *pōnō*, *I place*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>pōnō</i>	<i>pōnimus</i>
2. <i>pōnis</i>	<i>pōnit̄is</i>
3. <i>pōnit̄</i>	<i>pōnunt̄</i>

Personal endings.

-ō	-imus
-is	-itis
-it	-unt

¹ 'Ablative of means' (43 b).

Like *pōnō*, conjugate *mittō*, *to send*, *dūcō*, *to lead*, and *cōgō*, *to collect*.

175.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 23–32 (449).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
fertilitās	-tātis, fem.	<i>fertility</i>
ab latere, adverbial phrase		<i>on the flank</i>
ac, conj.		<i>and</i>
parātus -a, -um, adj.		<i>prepared</i>
inīquus -a, -um, adj.		<i>unfavourable</i>
inter, prep. with the acc.		<i>among or between</i>
cis, “ “ “ “		<i>on this side of</i>
tam, adv.		<i>so</i>

176. **Order of words.**—Though the *subject* usually tends to stand first and the *verb* last in the Latin sentence, this arrangement of words is frequently greatly varied. Often the *most prominent* word in the speaker's mind comes *first* and other words follow in order of prominence. For position of forms of *sum*, for example, see the first line in "*Caesar's Gallic War*," Book II, Chapter I: "*cum esset Caesar in Galliā*"; again in Chapter IX: "*palūs erat nōn māgna*." Then we find the *verb first* in the sentence, as in Chapter II, third paragraph: "*dat negōtium Senonibus*," *he employs the Senones*; and in Chapter XVII, line 12: "*adiuvābat etiam . . . cōnsilium*," *it was of advantage, too, to the plan*.

177. Review the entire verb *sum* (484), and *all* of the active voice of *amō* and *moneō* (474, 476).

178.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar incūsāvit imperātōrem cui sīgnūm dedit, quod ad mūrum oppidi turrēs nōn prōmōvit. 2. Eōdem

tempore hostēs in multīs Galliae cīvitātibus cōpiās māgnās cōgunt ut legiōnēs Rōmānās superent. 3. Imperātor Rōmānus, quod profectiōnem hostium videt, trāns flūmen ad collem in quō sunt Galbae castra peditēs prīmae legiōnis mittit ut fugam prohibeant. 4. Lēgātī hostium, quod virtūtem ac numerum nostrōrum peditum vidēbant, in castrīs cōpiās continēbant neque¹ nostrīs facultātem pūgnandī dabant. 5. Galba nōmine populī Rōmānī obsidēs multōs cōgit (*collects*) et in hībernīs inter cīvitātēs quārum auctōritās est nōn māgna legiōnēs novās pōnit.

II.—1. Caesar places (*pōnō*) in winter-quarters among the Remi the new cavalry which Galba is collecting from all sides. 2. Because the courage of the Roman legions is so great, the enemy send to Galba the children of their chiefs as hostages. 3. Caesar leads his new legions into the boundaries of farthest Gaul and commands the Gauls,² who are unfriendly to the Roman people, to prepare³ winter-quarters for our men and to carry corn into our camp.

LESSON XXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED. FOURTH DECLENSION.

179. Imperfect indicative of *pōnō*. Future indicative.

was placing.

shall place.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

1. *pōnēbam* *pōnēbāmus*

pōnam *pōnēmus*

2. *pōnēbās* *pōnēbātis*

pōnēs *pōnētis*

3. *pōnēbat* *pōnēbant*

pōnet *pōnent*

180. The *present stem* (*verb-stem*), *pōnē*, ending in *short e*, is found by dropping *re* from the *present infinitive active* (57). The stem vowel *ē* is lost before *ō*, is changed to *u* before *nt*,

¹ *neque* = *et . . . nōn*; see vocab. (202).

² Case after *imperō*?

³ Mood with *imperō*?

to ī before the other endings of the *indicative* and *imperative*; in the *imperfect* and *future indicative* it becomes ē, and in the *present subjunctive* ā.

181.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 33–42 (449).

exercitus	-ūs	<i>mas.</i>	<i>army</i>
incendō ,		<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>to burn</i>
relinquō ,	"	"	<i>to leave</i>
cōnscrībō ,	"	"	<i>to enroll</i>
expellō ,	"	"	<i>to drive out</i>
incolō ,	"	"	<i>to inhabit</i>
permittō ,	"	"	<i>to entrust</i>

Verbs of the third conjugation have *short e* in the *penult* of the *present infinitive*, the accent falling upon the *antepenult*: pōnō, pónērē; mittō, míttērē.

182. Fourth declension.

Cāsus, *fate*, *mas.* **Cornū**, *horn or wing*, *neut.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> cāsus	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i> cāsūs	cāsuūm	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i> cāsuī(ū)	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i> cāsum	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Voc.</i> cāsus	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i> cāsū	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus

The stem ends in u. Nouns in us are *masculine* with a few *feminine* exceptions; those in ū are *neuter*.

183. Comparison of tenses having similar endings.

Present	Present	Future
subjunctive.	indicative.	indicative.

(First conjugation.) (Second conjugation.) (Third conjugation.)

1. portem	portēmus	dēleō	dēlēmus	pōnam	pōnēmus
2. portēs	portētis	dēlēs	dēlētis	pōnēs	pōnētis
3. portet	portent	dēlet	dēlēnt	pōnet	pōnēnt

Thus it is seen that a verb ending in *et* or *ent* is *present subjunctive* if *first conjugation*; *present indicative* if *second conjugation*; *future indicative* if *third conjugation*.

184.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Imperātōrēs Rōmānī extrēmā in Galliā ut pote-stātem amplificent legiōnēs novās cōnscribent. 2. Lē-gātus quī māgnam hostium multitūdinem videt trāns flūmen Rhēnum mīlētēs nōn dūcet. 3. Caesar in fīnibus Germānōrum exercitum māgnum relinquet ut nōmen et auctōritātem populī Rōmānī amplificet. 4. Cīvitātēs Galliae quae virtūte et auctōritāte et numerō hominum valent nōn facile ē fīnibus Galliae legiōnēs nostrās expellent. 5. Nostrī in cīvitātibus proximīs Galliae (*dative*) māgnās cōpiās cōgent ac peditēs eōdem tempore cōnscribent ut hostēs superent.

II.—1. The townsmen will burn their towns and carry their children and baggage into the boundaries of their neighbours. 2. The Gauls place their states under the power¹ of the Roman army and drive out the Germans who are in arms and are not friendly to Caesar. 3. The Roman commander leaves the cavalry among the Sequani, because they inhabit places next to our province, and hastens across the river with his infantry. 4. In the second watch our men will burn the bridge which the enemy built and will prevent their departure.

¹ Place under the power of, **permittō in + accusative.**

LESSON XXXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED ADJECTIVES
OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

185. Present subjunctive of *pōnō*. *Imperfect subjunctive.*
may place. *might place.*

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. <i>pōnam</i>	<i>pōnerem</i>
2. <i>pōnās</i>	<i>pōnerēs</i>
3. <i>pōnat</i>	<i>pōneret</i>
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. <i>pōnāmus</i>	<i>pōnerēmus</i>
2. <i>pōnātis</i>	<i>pōnerētis</i>
3. <i>pōnant</i>	<i>pōnerent</i>

186. As in the *second conjugation*, the *present subjunctive* ends in *am*, *ās*, *at*, etc. If a verb ends in *at*, for example, it is *present indicative* in the *first conjugation*, *present subjunctive* in *any other conjugation*. Conjugate *incendō* and *expellō* in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present and imperfect subjunctive.

187.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 1–6 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
dux	ducis, mas.	<i>leader</i>
adventus	-ūs, mas.	<i>arrival</i>
equitātus	-ūs, mas.	<i>cavalry</i>
impetus	-ūs, mas.	<i>attack</i>
omnis -nis, -ne, adj.		<i>all</i>
facilis -lis, -le, adj.		<i>easy</i>

188. Adjective of the third declension.

Fortis, brave.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	fortis	-is	-e	fortēs	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	fortis	-is	-is	fortium	-ium	ium
Dat.	fortī	-ī	-ī	fortibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	fortem	-em	-e	fortēs (-īs)	-ēs (-īs)	-ia
Voc.	fortis	-is	-e	fortēs	-ēs	-ia
Abl.	fortī	-ī	-ī	fortibus	-ibus	-ibus

Fortis, stem *forti* (vowel-stem in *i*), has one form for both *masculine* and *feminine*, and one for the *neuter* (*e*). Adjectives of two terminations, being *i-stems*, have *i* in the *ablative singular*, *ia* in the *nominative, accusative*, and *vocative neuter plural*, *ium* in the *genitive plural*, and *is* often in the *accusative plural masculine and feminine*.

189. Use of *suus*, 'his,' 'hers,' or 'theirs.'—*Suus, sua, suum* is a possessive *reflexive pronoun* of the third person, denoting *possession* and referring to the *subject* of a sentence or clause (214). It is declined like *altus, -a, -um*, and *agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun limited*, that is, the *thing possessed, not the possessor*. It means *his, hers, or theirs* according to the *number* of the possessor.

<i>Caesar ē castrīs suōs mīlitēs dūcit,</i>	<i>Caesar leads his soldiers out of camp</i>
<i>Hostēs suum oppidum incendunt,</i>	<i>The enemy burn their town</i>

190.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Caesar, cum in prōvinciā legiōnēs reliquās cōscrīberet, ducibus equitātūs imperāvit ut hostium oppidum in quō erant multa impedimenta incenderent.* 2. *Caesar undique exercitum cōget ut Germānōs quī inter multās cīvitātēs valent ac multa oppida incolunt ē fīnibus Gallōrum expellat.* 3. *Caesar, ut Sēquanōs quī nostrīs sunt*

inimicī expellat et ad fortēs Rēmōs auxilium portet, in Galliam sine morā suās cōpiās dūcet. 4. Quod imperātor hostium ē castrīs ad proelium exercitum nōn dūcēbat, Galba ut castra hostium expūgnāret mīlitēs aedificāre turrīs (*accus.*) altitudinis māgnae iussit. 5. Quod explōrātōrēs adventum Caesaris exercitūs nūntiāvērunt, Belgae trāns Rhēnum sua castra movēbunt et cum Germānīs coniūrābunt ut mīlitūm nostrōrum (*adj.*) impetum sustineant.

II.—1. On account of the enemy's arrival Caesar will leave his infantry in winter-quarters among the Remi and will enroll new legions. 2. With the aid of the soldiers whom he will enroll in farthest Gaul Caesar will overcome and drive out the remaining enemy. 3. Galba directs his commanders to lead the cavalry of the second legion into the territories next to the Roman province and to attack the new fortifications of the enemy.

LESSON XXXVI.

THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED

191. Imperative of *pōnō*, *place (thou)*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2.	{ pōne { pōnitō	{ pōnite { pōnitōte
3.	pōnitō	pōnuntō

Present participle.

pōnēns, *placing*

Present infinitive.

pōnēre, *to place*

Gerund.

of placing, etc.

Gen. *pōnēndī*

Acc. *pōnēndūm*

Dat. *pōnēndō*

Abl. *pōnēndō*

This completes the *nine* forms composing the *present system* of *pōnō*, based upon the *present stem* *pōne*.

192. Synopsis—present system—of *pōnō*.

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	<i>pōnō</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	<i>pōnēbam</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	<i>pōnam (-ēs)</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	<i>pōnam (-ās)</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>pōnerem</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	<i>pōne</i>
7. <i>Present participle</i>	<i>pōnēns</i>
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	<i>pōnere</i>
9. <i>Gerund</i>	<i>pōnendī</i>

Give synopsis in the *present system* of *mittō* and *relinquō*. Conjugate the *present subjunctive* of *dubitō*, *present indicative* of *habeō*, *future indicative* of *dūcō*.

193.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 7–14 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<i>aditus</i>	-ūs, mas.	access or approach
<i>commeātus</i>	-ūs, mas.	supplies
<i>mōns</i>	montis, mas.	mountain
<i>statim</i> , adv.		at once
<i>manus</i>	-ūs, fem.	band (hand)

194. Decline *duplex* and *equester* (467). Observe that *equester* has *three* terminations in the *nominative*: *ter*, *tris*, *tre*; being a vowel-stem in *i* (ri), it takes *i* in the *ablative*, etc., as in *fortis*. *Duplex*, increasing the number of syllables in the *genitive*, is a consonant-stem (*duplic*), and takes the form of *i*-stems in the cases pointed out in (188), except that the *ablative* (*singular*) often ends in *e*.

195.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar prō oppidō cūius mūrī sunt nōn altī castra pōnet, quod aditum facilem habet. 2. Adventū equitātū Caesar ē castrī omnēs cōpiās dūcit et ab latere inīquō in locō hostium agmen exagitāre parat. 3. Germānī quī trāns Rhēnum agrōs multōs habent et māgna oppida in-

colunt ex hibernis omnēs nostrōs militēs expellent. 4. Eōdem tempore Galba in extrēmōs Galliae fīnīs (*acc. plur.*) lēgātōs mittit ut legiōnēs novās cōscrībant et frūmentum et commeātūs impetrent. 5. Caesar in hostium fīnēs, ut agrōs vāstent et mūnītiōnēs dēleant et exercituī Rōmānō commeātūs cōgant, fortēs lēgātōs mittet.

II.—1. Because the brave messengers had announced the approach of the enemy's cavalry, Galba ordered his commanders to prepare all the forces for renewing the battle. 2. Caesar commands the brave forces to collect an abundance of corn for the army whose camp he will place (*pōnō*) in Gaul. 3. While Galba was enrolling infantry and cavalry for the sake of overcoming the Gauls, ambassadors from a large part of Gaul hastened to Caesar's winter-quarters to give hostages and obtain peace. 4. Because the town has an easy access, Caesar at once prepares to lead all the forces out of camp and storm the walls from all sides.

LESSON XXXVII.

THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

196. Perfect system of *pōnō*.—*Perfect stem posu.*

Perfect indicative.	Pluperfect indicative.	Perfect subjunctive.
<i>placed.</i>	<i>had placed.</i>	<i>may have placed.</i>
SINGULAR.	posueram	posuerim
1. posuī	posuerās, etc.	posueris, etc.
2. posuistī		
3. posuit	Future-perfect indicative.	Pluperfect subjunctive.
PLURAL.	<i>shall have placed.</i>	<i>might have placed.</i>
1. posuimus	posuerō	posuissem
2. posuistis	posueris, etc.	posuissēs, etc.
3. posuērunt (-ēre)		

Perfect infinitive.
posuisse, to have placed

197. *Supine system of pōnō (four forms); supine stem posit.*

1. *First supine* positum, *to place*
2. *Second supine* positū, *to place*
3. *Future participle* positūrus, -a, -um, *being about to place*
4. *Future infinitive* positūrum, -am, -um esse, *to be about to place*

198.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 15–18 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
mōs	mōris, mas.	custom or habit
servitūs	-tūtis, fem.	slavery
dēdō		{ to surrender
ēdūcō	(see principal parts in	{ to lead out
petō	the general vocabulary)	{ to seek or ask for
timeō		to fear
novissimum agmen,	neut.	the rear

Petō, with the meaning ‘ask for,’ takes a direct object, not the dative; as, pācem petunt, they ask for peace.

199. Decline pūgnāns (467). Give full synopsis, entire active voice, by stems, of imperō, iubeō, and cōgō. First repeat the principal parts of the verb and point out the three stems, stating the number of forms derived from each stem. Give the name of the form, next the form itself, and then the meaning.

200.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar in (upon) altum collem suās cōpiās dūxit et ibi castella ac mūnītiōnēs posuit ut prīmum hostium impetum sustinēret. 2. Dux Rōmānus in castrīs mīlitēs continuit, quod hostēs līberōs prīncipum obsidēs dēdiderant ac potestātī Caesaris oppida omnia permīserant. 3. Cum ducēs quōs Caesar in Galliam lēgātōs mīserat ut exercituī

Rōmānō commeātum cōgerent frūmentum postulārent, Sēquani castra nostra oppūgnāvērunt et incendērunt. 4. Quod explōrātōrēs quōs trāns Rhēnum commeātūs causā mīserat hostium adventum nūntiāvērunt, Caesar fortibus lēgātīs ut statim in proximum montem omnem equitātum dūcerent mandāvit.

II.—1. While the cohorts of the first legion with great courage were withstanding the enemy's brave attack, Galba directed the cavalry to await his commands upon the nearest hill. 2. Upon the arrival of the Roman infantry which Caesar had trained in many battles, the townsmen will send into our camp suitable men so that they may surrender hostages and ask for peace. 3. Caesar hastened at once with his armed infantry into the farthest boundaries of Gaul, and many states that feared the power of our army sought peace.

LESSON XXXVIII.

THE IRREGULAR VERB **POSSUM**, *I AM ABLE.*

201. Learn the indicative mood of *possum* (485).—Principal parts, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*—no supine.

Decline altior (467) and the fourth-declension nouns (461).

202.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 19–23 (450).

<i>tantus</i> , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>so great</i>
<i>ubi</i> , <i>conj.</i>	<i>when</i>
<i>dē</i> , <i>prep. with the abl.</i>	<i>with respect to, about</i>
<i>discēdō</i>	<i>to depart</i>
<i>redigō</i>	<i>to reduce</i>
<i>nec (neque)</i>	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> { <div style="flex-grow: 1; text-align: center;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <i>conjunction, used in</i> <i>the second of two</i> </div> <i>connected ideas</i> </div> } </div> <i>and . . . not</i>

203. Use of *cum* and *ubi*.—*Cum*, *when*, is used with the imperfect subjunctive to denote contemporaneous action

(when in the sense of ‘while’); with the *pluperfect subjunctive* to denote antecedent action (when in the sense of ‘after’). This is called *Historical cum* and describes the circumstances under which an action took place.

Ubi, when, commonly takes the *perfect indicative*, or the *Historical present indicative* (*the present as a vivid representation of the past*). The *ubi* clause defines the time during which an action took place. When to use *cum* or *ubi*, in writing English in Latin, is often difficult to determine.

204. Analysis of a complex sentence.

Cum mīlitēs quōs Caesar in Galliam ut exercituī Rōmānō commeātūs cōgerent mīserat frūmentum postulārent, Sēquani castra nostra incendērunt,

While the soldiers whom Caesar had sent into Gaul to collect supplies for the Roman army were demanding corn, the Sequani set fire to our camp

A complex declarative sentence, of which *Sēquani . . . incendērunt* is the *main clause*. Since the *subject*, *Sēquani*, is unmodified, the remainder of the sentence limits the *predicate incendērunt*. Hence it is seen that the *subordinate part of the sentence, cum . . . postulārent*, has *three component parts*, viz., a *cum*, a *relative*, and an *ut clause*.

Begin with *cum*: looking for the verb introduced by *cum*, there appears a *relative clause* which is in turn divided in two by an intermediate *ut clause*, and the *latter* standing undivided ends with *cōgerent*. Since the *ut . . . cōgerent* clause stands within the *relative clause*, the *next verb* in order should complete the *relative clause*, beginning with *quōs* and ending with *mīserat*; here bear in mind that *ut . . . cōgerent* shows *affirmative purpose of*, and gets its *sequence from*, *mīserat*, and that *quōs . . . miserat* describes *mīlitēs*. Thus it is seen that *cum* introduces

postulārent, and that this entire clause modifies the *principal verb incendērunt*, describing the *circumstances* of the action of the latter and denoting *time contemporaneous*.

205.

EXERCISE.

1. Caesar ubi tantam hostium multitūdinem vīdit, ē castrīs omnēs legiōnēs ēdūxit et mandāvit mīlitibus ut impetum hostium exspectārent. 2. Quod mīlitum nostrōrum impetum sustinēre nōn poterant, oppidānī proximīs cūm fīnitimīs in extrēmōs Galliae fīnēs discessērunt. 3. Quod Gallī nōn possunt contrā legiōnēs fortēs nostrās sustentāre, Caesar in servitūtem omnēs cīvitātēs quae arma et obsidēs nōn dēdidērunt rediget. 4. Hostēs reliquī qui armīs ac hominū numerō nōn valēbant ad Caesarem pīncipēs cīvitātum lēgātōs ut pācem peterent mīsērunt. 5. Adventū hostium Galba suō mōre in castrīs partem equitū reliquit, partem in montē dūxit. 6. Castra Caesaris quae hostēs expūgnāre non potuerant proxima erant collī altō nec aditum facilem habēbant.

LESSON XXXIX.

POSSUM, CONTINUED. PERSONAL PRONOUN.

206. Learn the subjunctive and infinitive moods of *possum* (485).

Decline all the nouns of the third declension (458, 459).

207. Personal pronoun, first person.

Ego, I.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. ego, I	nōs, we
Gen. meī, of me	{ nostrum, { of us nostrī,
Dat. mihi, to or for me	nōbīs, to or for us
Acc. mē, me	nōs, us
Abl. mē, { with, from, by me, etc.	{ nōbīs, from us, etc.

208. Demonstrative pronoun (sometimes used for the personal pronoun, *third person*).

is, ea, id, *this or that, he, etc.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī or iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	ēarum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eūm	eām	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs

209.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 24–33 (450).

nōndum, *adv.*

not yet

nē, *conj.*

in order that . . . not

trādō

to hand over

circumdō

to surround

Nē in negative commands, prohibitions, etc., will be given later.

210. How cause and manner are expressed.—Cause is expressed by the simple ablative.

Virtūte nostrōrum hostēs sus- *On account of (because of) the*
tentāre nōn poterant, *courage of our men the ene-*
my could not hold out

The *manner* of an action is expressed by the ablative usually with *cum*, unless a limiting adjective accompanies the noun. But even with the adjective *cum* may be used. Sometimes it is almost impossible to distinguish *means* and *manner*.

Hostēs cum celeritāte disces- *The enemy departed with speed*
sērunt,

211. Use of nē.—Nē, *in order that . . . not*, introduces a subordinate clause of *negative purpose* with the verb in the *subjunctive*, the choice of *tense* being determined by the *rule of sequence*.

Dant obsidēs nē Caesar oppi- *They give hostages in order that*
 dum dēleat, *Caesar may not destroy their*
town

212.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar māgnō equitātūs numerō oppidum circum-
 dedit nē hostēs noctū¹ discēderent. 2. Hostēs quī mīlitum
 nostrōrum impetum sustinēre possunt ad Caesarem dē
 pāce lēgātōs nōn mittent. 3. Rēmī quī proximī Belgīs
 et hominēs virtūtis māgnae erant ex suīs fīnibus Germānōs
 facile expulērunt. 4. Ubi trāns flūmen hostium agmen
 vīdit, Caesar in collem proximum cōpiās omnēs suās ēdūxit
 ac mīlitibus fortibus ut proelī sīgnū exspectārent imperāvit.
 5. Rēmī quī Caesaris exercitūs adventum timent
 Belgās reliquōs, quod populō Rōmānō obsidēs trādiderant
 et pācem petīverant, incūsant.

II.—1. Because they were not able to overcome the Roman infantry, the Sequani burned all their towns and departed out of Gaul. 2. Upon the arrival of the cavalry (*singular of equitātus*) which our leaders had collected from (*ex*) many states the Gauls sent ambassadors to Caesar with respect to a surrender. 3. While our men were preparing to storm the walls of the town with weapons and stones, the townsmen suddenly departed and placed (*pōnō*) safety in flight. 4. When the enemy saw upon the hill our cavalry whose approach (*adventus*) scouts had announced, they did not await an attack but² departed at once into the nearest (*proximus*) villages.

¹ An old ablative used adverbially, *by night*.

² Use *ac*.

LESSON XL.

THE Iō VERB OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. Learn *capiō*,¹ *I take*, in the entire active voice (480).—Principal parts, *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captum*.

214. Reflexive (personal) pronoun of the third person.—*Sūi*, *of himself, herself, themselves*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> —	—
<i>Gen.</i> <i>sūi</i> , <i>of himself</i>	<i>sūi</i> , <i>of themselves</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>sibi</i> , <i>to or for himself</i>	<i>sibi</i> , <i>to or for themselves</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>sē</i> , <i>himself</i>	<i>sē</i> , <i>themselves</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>sē</i> , <i>from, etc., himself</i>	<i>sē</i> , <i>from, etc., themselves</i>

The reflexive (personal) pronoun *sē*, etc., like its corresponding possessive *suus*, etc., (189), refers to the *subject of the sentence or clause*: hence it is distinguished by the term ‘reflexive’ (from *reflectō*, *bend or turn back*).

<i>Cum Caesar in Galliā esset,</i>	<i>While Caesar was in Gaul, am-</i>
<i>lēgātī ad eum</i> (not reflexive)	<i>bassadors came to him</i>
<i>vēnērunt,</i>	
<i>Caesar lēgātōs ad sē</i> (reflexive)	<i>Caesar ordered ambassadors to</i>
<i>venīre iussit,</i>	<i>come to him</i>

215.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 34–41 (450).

ā or ab ,	<i>prep. with the abl.</i>	<i>from</i>
āriter ,	<i>adv.</i>	<i>fiercely</i>
faciō ,		<i>to do or make</i>
impetum faciō ,		<i>to make an attack</i>
acciō ,		<i>to receive</i>
que , <i>conj.</i>		<i>and</i>

¹ Verbs in *iō* retain *i* in all the tenses formed from the present stem, except the *imperfect subjunctive*.

Que is always enclitic, being attached to the second of two words connected: **ferrō ignique**, *with fire and sword*. When que joins clauses, it is attached to the first word of the second clause.

**Caesar vīcōs incendit agrōsque
vāstāvit.** *Caesar burnt the villages and
laid waste the fields*

216. Use of *impetum facere*.—*Impetum facere*, to make an attack, usually takes in + accusative.

Hostēs in nostrōs impetum *The enemy made a fierce attack*
ācriter fēcērunt. *upon our men*

An *adverb* is often used in *Latin* where the English makes use of an *adjective*, as with **acriter** in the above sentence.

217. Review of important points.—Define *meaning* and *use* of **suus** (189); distinguish **cum** and **ubi** clauses (203); explain use of **ut** and **quod**, and of **imperō** and **iubeō** (166); **nē + subjunctive** (211); predicate nominative with **sum**, etc.; position and agreement of the *relative*; rule of sequence; name *six* kinds of ablatives.

218.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Dux noster in deditiōnem Rēmōs accipiet et cōpiis omnibus in Sēquanōrum fīnēs, ut in hostēs impetum āriter faciat, mātūrābit. 2. Caesar imperat Galbae ut cōpiis quās ab Rēmīs, fīnitimīs, accēperat in oppidānōs impetum faciat. 3. Adventū equitātū nostrī Caesar commeātibus hostēs prohibuit et māgnā hominum multitūdine oppidum circumdedit, nē oppidānī fugā salūtem peterent. 4. Caesar mūnītiōnibus mūrīsque altīs ea castra in quibus omnēs suās legiōnēs posuerat circumdedit ut exercitus noster ad hiemandum salūtis locum habēret. 5. Tum Rēmī ac Belgae qui cīvitātēs Galliae proximae prōvinciae sunt ad Caesaris castra dē deditiōne hominēs idōnēos mīsērunt.

II.—1. While our infantry in an unfavourable place were

withstanding the javelins of the enemy with courage, Caesar directed his commanders to lead out the cavalry and make an attack upon the enemy's rear. 2. Because Caesar ordered the Remi to inhabit a part of the territories which he had received from (ab) the Gauls, many states next to Gaul blamed Caesar and prepared to attack our camp. 3. While the cavalry were making an attack upon the Gauls, Caesar ordered his scouts to destroy the bridge, which the enemy had built, in order that they might not be able to depart out of Gaul without a surrender.

219. REVIEW VOCABULARY.

LESSONS XXII—XL.

1. *possum, posse, potuī*, [no supine], *to be able*
2. *cōpia, cōpiae* (fem.), *abundance*
3. *aditus, aditūs* (mas.), *access*
4. *omnis, omnis, omne* (adj.), *all*
5. *inter* (prep. with the *acc.*), *among*
6. *ac* (conj.), *and*
7. *nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum*, *announce*
8. *adventus, adventūs* (mas.), *approach*
9. *armō, armāre, armāvī, armātum*, *arm*
10. *arma, armōrum* (neut.), *arms*
11. *exercitus, exercitūs* (mas.), *army*
12. *petō, petere, petīvī, petītum*, *ask for or seek*
13. *impetus, impetūs* (mas.), *attack*
14. *eōdem tempore*, *at the same time*
15. *statim* (adv.), *at once*
16. *exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātum*, *await*
17. *manus, manūs* (fem.), *band*
18. *corpus, corporis* (neut.), *body*
19. *fīnis, fīnis* (mas.), *end*, (plural) *boundary or territories*
20. *fortis, fortis, forte* (adj.), *brave*
21. *fortiter* (adv.), *bravely*
22. *pōns, pontis* (mas.), *bridge*

23. **frāter**, **frātris** (mas.), *brother*
24. **incendō**, **incendere**, **incendī**, **incēnsum**, *burn*
25. **Caesar**, **Caesaris** (mas.), *Caesar*
26. **calamitās**, **calamitātis** (fem.), *calamity*
27. **eques**, **equitis** (mas.), *horseman*, (plur.) *Roman cavalry*
28. **equitātus**, **equitātūs** (mas.), *cavalry*
29. **prīnceps**, **prīcipis** (mas.), *chief*
30. **cohors**, **cohortis** (fem.), *cohort*
31. **cōgō**, **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum**, *collect*
32. **imperātor**, **imperātōris** (mas.), *commander*
33. **contendō**, **contendere**, **contendī**, **contentum**, *contend*
34. **virtūs**, **virtūtis** (fem.), *courage*
35. **mōs**, **mōris** (mas.), *custom or habit*
36. **pellō**, **pellere**, **peplū**, **pulsum**, *defeat*
37. **postulō**, **postulāre**, **postulāvī**, **postulātum**, *demand*
38. **discēdō**, **discēdere**, **discessī**, **discessum**, *depart*
39. **profectiō**, **profectiōnis** (fem.), *departure*
40. **dēlēō**, **dēlēre**, **dēlēvī**, **dēlētum**, *destroy*
41. **distineō**, **distinēre**, **distinuī**, **distentum**, *divide*
42. **faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factum**, *do or make*
43. **expellō**, **expellere**, **expulī**, **expulsum**, *drive out*
44. **facilis**, **facilis**, **facile** (adj.), *easy*
45. **hostis**, **hostis** (mas.), *enemy*
46. **cōnscribō**, **cōnscribere**, **cōnscripsī**, **cōnscriptum**, *enroll*
47. **permittō**, **permittere**, **permīsī**, **permīssum**, *entrust*
48. **pater**, **patris** (mas.), *father*
49. **fertilitās**, **fertilitātis** (fem.), *fertility*
50. **timeō**, **timēre**, **timuī**, [no supine], *fear*
51. **levitās**, **levitātis** (fem.), *fickleness*
52. **ācriter** (adv.), *fiercely*
53. **compleō**, **complēre**, **complēvī**, **complētum**, *fill*
54. **īgnis**, **īgnis** (mas.), *fire*
55. **pēs**, **pedis** (mas.), *foot*
56. **mūnitiō**, **mūnitiōnis** (fem.), *fortification*
57. **undique** (adv.), *from or on all sides*
58. **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum** (adj.), *good*
59. **trādō**, **trādere**, **trādidi**, **trāditum**, *hand over*
60. **habeō**, **habēre**, **habuī**, **habitum**, *have*

61. **altitūdō**, *altitūdinis* (fem.), *height*
62. **collis**, *collis* (mas.), *hill*
63. **suus**, *sua*, *suum* (possessive adj. pron.), *his or their*
64. **teneō**, *tenēre*, *tenuī*, *tentum*, *hold*
65. **cornū**, *cornūs* (neut.), *horn*
66. **obses**, *obsidis* (mas.), *hostage*
67. **amplificō**, *amplificāre*, *amplificāvī*, *amplificātum*, *increase*
68. **pedes**, *peditis* (mas.), *footman*, (plur.) *infantry*
69. **auctōritās**, *auctōritātis* (fem.), *influence*
70. **incolō**, *incolere*, *incoluī*, [no supine], *inhabit*
71. **nē** (conj.), *in order that . . . not*
72. **contineō**, *continēre*, *continuī*, *contentum*, *keep*
73. **rēx**, *rēgis* (mas.), *king*
74. **lēx**, *lēgis* (fem.), *law*
75. **dūcō**, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *ductum*, *lead*
76. **dux**, *ducis* (mas.), *leader*
77. **ēdūcō**, *ēdūcere*, *ēdūxī*, *ēductum*, *lead out*
78. **relinquō**, *relinquere*, *reliquī*, *relictum*, *leave*
79. **legiō**, *legiōnis* (fem.), *legion*
80. **agmen**, *agminis* (neut.), *line of march* (marching column)
81. **homō**, *hominis* (mas.), *man*
82. **impetum facere**, *make an attack*
83. **mōns**, *montis* (mas.), *mountain*
84. **moveō**, *movēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtum*, *move*
85. **multitūdō**, *multitūdinis* (fem.), *multitude*
86. **nōmen**, *nōminis* (neut.), *name*
87. **nox**, *noctis* (fem.), *night*
88. **nōndum** (adv.), *not yet*
89. **ab latere**, *on the flank*
90. **facultās**, *facultātis* (fem.), *opportunity*
91. **iubeō**, *iubēre*, *iussī*, *iussum*, *order*
92. **pars**, *partis* (fem.), *part*
93. **pāx**, *pācis* (fem.), *peace*
94. **pōnō**, *pōnere*, *posuī*, *positum*, *place*
95. **potestās**, *potestātis* (fem.), *power*
96. **parātus**, *parāta*, *parātum* (adj.), *prepared or ready*
97. **prohibeō**, *prohibēre*, *prohibuī*, *prohibitum*, *prevent*

98. novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis (neut.), *rear*
 99. accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum, *receive*
 100. redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctum, *reduce*
 101. rūmor, rūmōris (mas.), *report*
 102. flūmen, flūminis (neut.), *river*
 103. salūs, salūtis (fem.), *safety*
 104. explōrātor, explōrātōris (mas.), *scout*
 105. videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*
 106. mittō, mittere, mīsī, mīssum, *send*
 107. Sēquanī, Sēquanōrum (mas.), *Sequani*
 108. gravis, gravis, *grave* (adj.), *severe*
 109. latus, lateris (neut.), *side or flank*
 110. servitūs, servitūtis (fem.), *slavery*
 111. tam (adv.), *so*
 112. tantus, tanta, tantum (adj.), *so great*
 113. mīles, mīlitis (mas.), *soldier*
 114. ḫrātiō, ḫrātiōnis (fem.), *speech*
 115. cīvitās, cīvitātis (fem.), *state*
 116. lapis, lapidis (mas.), *stone*
 117. valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum, *to be strong*
 118. subitō (adv.), *suddenly*
 119. aestās, aestātis (fem.), *summer*
 120. commeātus, commeātūs (mas.), *supplies*
 121. dēditiō, dēditiōnis (fem.), *surrender*
 122. dēdō, dēdere, dēdīdī, dēditum, *surrender*
 123. circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum, *sur-round*
 124. celeritās, celeritātis (fem.), *swiftness*
 125. tum, inde (adverbs), *then*
 126. ibi (adv.), *there*
 127. cis (prep. with the *acc.*), *on this side of*
 128. tempus, temporis (neut.), *time*
 129. turris, turris (fem.), *tower*
 130. inīquus, inīqua, inīquum (adj.), *unfavourable*
 131. inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum (adj.), *unfriendly*
 132. bellum, bellī (neut.), *war*
 133. vigilia, vigiliae (fem.), *watch* (division of the night)
 134. ubi (adv.), *when*

135. *cum* (conj.), *while*
 136. *quī, quae, quod* (rel. pron.), *who, which, what, that*
 137. *sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentum, withstand*
 138. *dē* (prep. with the *abl.*), *with respect to*

LESSON XLI.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

220. *Rēs, thing, fem.**Diēs, day, mas.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
<i>Gen.</i> reī	rērum	diēī	diērum
<i>Dat.</i> reī	rēbus	diēī	diēbus
<i>Acc.</i> rem	rēs	diem	diēs
<i>Voc.</i> rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
<i>Abl.</i> rē	rēbus	diē	diēbus

The stem of nouns in the fifth declension ends in ē. Nouns of the fifth declension are *feminine*, except *diēs*, which is generally *masculine*.

Rēs and *diēs* alone have the entire plural; others occur usually in the nominative and accusative plural—many have no plural.

221. **Ablative of separation.**—Separation is expressed by the ablative with or without a preposition; as,

Caesar armīs hostēs dēspoliat, *Caesar deprives the enemy of their arms*

222.

VOCABULARY.

<i>spēs</i>	<i>speī, fem.</i>	<i>hope</i>
<i>fidēs</i>	<i>fideī, fem.</i>	<i>confidence</i>
<i>propīnquitās</i>	<i>-tātis, fem.</i>	<i>nearness</i>
<i>exiguitās</i>	<i>-tātis, fem.</i>	<i>shortness</i>
<i>vulnus</i>	<i>-neris, neut.</i>	<i>wound</i>
<i>summus -a -um, adj.</i>		<i>top of</i>
<i>in summō colle'</i>		<i>on the top of the hill</i>
<i>sī, conj.</i>		<i>if</i>
<i>nisi, conj.</i>		<i>unless</i>
<i>proelium committō</i>		<i>to begin battle</i>
<i>fugiō</i>		<i>to flee</i>

223. Use of *sī* and *nisi* in conditions (335).—*Sī* and *nisi* introduce conditional sentences. In a conditional sentence the *dependent clause*, *containing the condition*, is called the *protasis*; the clause containing the *conclusion* is called the *apodosis*.

The more vivid future condition.—(a) In the *more vivid future condition* the *future indicative* is used in both *protasis* and *apodosis*; as,

**Caesar pācem faciet, sī hostēs
obsidēs dēdent,** *Caesar will make peace, if the
enemy surrender hostages*

(b) If the conditional act is considered as *completed* before that of the *apodosis*, the *future perfect* is used in the *protasis*; as,

**Nisi hostēs omnia arma trādi-
derint, Galba proelium com-
mittet,** *Unless the enemy hand over all
their arms, Galba will begin
battle*

('Hand over' = *shall have handed over*, representing action *completed* in the *future*, before another *future action* begins.)

224.

EXERCISE.

1. Caesar in servitūtem eās cīvitātēs quae cum nostrīs peditibus in Rēmōrum fīnibus proelium commisērunt facile redēgit.
2. Mīlitēs quī commeātūs petendī causā ē castrīs discesserant adventum hostium nōn cōnspēxērunt.
3. Nostrī propter propīnquitātem celeritātemque hostium capere oppidum in quō erant commeātūs et multa arma nōn potuērunt.
4. Cum Caesar in colle adventum hostium exspectāret, ducibus equitum mandāvit ut statim ē castrīs omnēs cōpiās ēdūcerent et ad proelium committendum parārent.
5. Noster imperātor in suam fidem¹ Rēmōs fīnitimōsque accipiet, sī eae cīvitātēs quae sine causā in

¹ *In suam fidem* = *under his protection*.

nostrōs impetum fēcērunt ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne lēgātōs mīserint. 6. Caesar in Belgās omnibus cōpiis impetum faciet, nisi Belgae lēgātōs mīserint ut obsidēs dēdant pācemque petant. 7. Peditēs Rōmānī propter temporis exiguitātem celeritātemque hostium imperātum Caesaris nōn exspectāvērunt sed in hostēs impetum āriter fēcērunt, nē pūgnandī facultātem āmitterent.

LESSON XLII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

225. Mūniō, I fortify. Principal parts mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītūm. The present system is as follows. The present stem, mūnī, is found by striking off re from the present infinitive active, mūnīre.

Present indicative.	Imperfect indicative.	Present subjunctive.
<i>I fortify.</i>	<i>was fortifying.</i>	<i>may fortify.</i>
SINGULAR.		
1. mūniō	mūniēbam	mūniām
2. mūnīs	mūniēbās, etc.	mūniās, etc.
3. mūnīt		
PLURAL.		
1. mūnīmus	Future indicative. <i>shall fortify.</i>	Imperfect subjunctive. <i>might fortify.</i>
2. mūnītis	mūniām	mūnīrem
3. mūnīunt	mūniēs, etc.	mūnīrēs, etc.

Imperative.	Present participle.
mūnī, <i>fortify thou</i>	mūniēns, <i>fortifying</i>
mūnīte, <i>fortify ye, etc.</i>	

Present infinitive.	Gerund.
mūnīre, <i>to fortify</i>	mūniendī, <i>of fortifying</i>

226.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 1-9 (451).

<i>audiō</i>	<i>to hear</i>
<i>impediō</i>	<i>to hinder</i>
<i>veniō</i>	<i>to come</i>
<i>cōsentīō</i>	<i>to conspire</i>
<i>quis</i> , <i>interrogative pronoun</i>	<i>who?</i>
<i>aliquis</i> , <i>indefinite pronoun</i> ,	<i>any one, some one</i>
<i>quis</i> is used for <i>aliquis</i> after <i>sī</i> , <i>nisi</i> , <i>nē</i> , <i>num</i> .	

227. Demonstrative pronoun *hīc*, *this*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>hīc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

228. Use of *nē* (*not*) in negative commands.—*Imperō*, *mandō*, and many verbs of *commanding* take *ut* + *subjunctive* in *affirmative commands*, and *nē* + *subjunctive* in *negative commands*.

Caesar imperat mīlitibus nē Caesar commands his soldiers
oppidum incendant, not to burn the town

229.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. *Hīs in locīs sunt nōn multa oppida idōnea tantae hominum multitūdinī.* 2. *Germānī spē expūgnandī opida multa trāns Rhēnum in Galliam suās cōpiās dūxerant.* 3. *Belgae omnibus cōpiīs in prōvinciam nostram ut in fidem populī Rōmānī līberōs obsidēs trādant veniunt.* 4. *Nisi Caesar in hās cīvitātēs quās Galba proeliis multis in servitūtem redēgit contenderit, hostēs manūs novās cōgent ut mūnītiōnēs Rōmānās incendant.* 5. *Sēquānī*

cum Belgīs, finitimīs, cōsentient et oppida sua fossīs mūrīsque mūniunt nē Caesar in potestātem populi Rōmānī cīvitātēs redigat.

II.—1. Because the enemy fear the approach of the Roman legions, they will depart out of these fortifications and leave in camp a large part of their baggage. 2. While Caesar's soldiers were fortifying that town which the Sequani had left, the Belgians made an attack upon Galba's infantry who were coming towards the town with all the baggage. 3. When Caesar saw the large number of ambassadors whom the enemy had sent into our camp, he commanded his leaders not to make (*nē + imperf. subj.*) an attack upon the enemies' forces. 4. Unless the chiefs of these states which are strong in courage and in number of men come¹ into our camp and ask for¹ peace, Caesar will lead out his infantry and lay waste their towns and fields.

LESSON XLIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

230. Perfect system of *mūniō*.—*Stem mūnīv.*

Perfect indicative.	Pluperfect indicative.	Perfect subjunctive.
<i>I fortified.</i>	<i>had fortified.</i>	<i>may have fortified.</i>
SINGULAR.	<i>mūnīveram,</i> <i>mūnīverās, etc.</i>	<i>mūnīverim, etc.</i>
1. <i>mūnīvī</i>		
2. <i>mūnīvistī</i>		
3. <i>mūnīvit</i>		
PLURAL.		
1. <i>mūnīvimus</i>	Future-perfect indicative.	Pluperfect subjunctive.
2. <i>mūnīvistis</i>	<i>shall have fortified.</i>	<i>might have fortified.</i>
3. <i>mūnīvērunt (-ēre)</i>	<i>mūnīverō</i> <i>mūnīveris, etc.</i>	<i>mūnīvissem, etc.</i>
		Perfect infinitive.
		<i>to have fortified.</i>
		<i>mūnīvisse</i>

¹ Future or future-perfect indicative.

Give synopsis, by stems, in entire active voice of **audiō** and **cōsentīō**.

Give synopsis in active voice of **mūniō**, by moods, etc., in the order given in (482).

231. Supine system of *mūniō*.—*Stem mūnīt-*

1. *First supine* **mūnītum**, *to fortify*
2. *Second supine* **mūnītū**, *to fortify*
3. *Future participle* **mūnītūrus -a, -um**, *being about to fortify*
4. *Future infinitive* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{mūnītūrum,} \\ \text{-am, -um esse,} \end{array} \right\}$ *to be about to fortify*

232.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 10–19 (451).

233. Demonstrative pronoun *ille*, *that*, *he*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i> illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i> illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i> illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i> illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

234.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Nisi illae cīvitātēs reliquīs cum Belgīs cōsentient ac suīs amīcīs auxilium dabunt, Gallī Caesaris exercitūs adventum impedīre nōn poterunt. 2. Exercitus noster vīcōs omnēs incendit (*perf.*) et agrōs per quōs vēnerant vāstāvit, nē hostēs illa loca incolere possent. 3. Cum Rēmī in castra sua cum impedimentīs exercitūs venirent, nostrī in novissimum agmen impetum fēcērunt et mīlitēs perturbāvērunt. 4. Caesar hōc proeliō in servitūtem omnēs eās cīvitātēs quārum pīncipēs cum Germānīs cōsēnserant et obsidēs nōn dederant redēgit. 5. Quod hostēs, in castrīs suās manūs retinendō, nostrīs facultātem pūgnandī nōr

dedērunt, Caesar ducibus p̄imae legiōnis ut omnibus cum cohortibus ēius legiōnis ē castrīs contenderent et in mūrum oppidī impetum facerent imperāvit.

II.—1. When the enemy had lost hope with respect to withstanding the attack of our infantry, Caesar directed their chiefs to bring (*addūcō*) hostages into his camp and to surrender the town without delay. 2. At the same time ambassadors come to Caesar from all sides and bring corn and (*que*) supplies for our men, because Caesar had announced the approach of his army. 3. While the enemy were fortifying their (*omit*) camp on the top of the hill, our commanders surrounded the hill with infantry and (*que*) cavalry and began battle on all sides. 4. The Sequani into whose territories Caesar is preparing to lead a large army will ask for (*petō*) peace, in order that the Roman legions may not lay waste their fields, destroy their fortifications, and burn their towns.

LESSON XLIV.

FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE.

235. Present indicative passive of *portō*.

SINGULAR.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. portor, <i>I am (being) carried</i> | 1. portāmūr, <i>we are carried</i> |
| 2. portāris (-re), <i>you are carried</i> | 2. portāmīnī, <i>you are carried</i> |
| 3. portātūr, <i>he is carried</i> | 3. portantūr, <i>they are carried</i> |

PLURAL.

The present stem is *portā* as in the active, to which are annexed the following endings.

Table of endings.

SINGULAR.

- or
- ris (-re)
- tur

PLURAL.

- mūr
- mīnī
- ntūr

Conjugate **postulō** and **cōservō** in the *present indicative passive*.

236.

VOCABULARY.

Review verbs 1–19 (451).

Decline **īdem**, *the same* (464).

237. Personal agent—how expressed.—The agent or doer with a passive verb is put in the *ablative with ā or ab*. Distinguish carefully *means* or *instrument* from *agent*; thus,

(a) **Gallī ā Rōmānīs superantur**, *the Gauls are overcome by the Romans*: *by the Romans* = *persons* by whom, hence **ā** or **ab** + *ablative*, to denote *personal agent*.

(b) **agrī ignī vāstantur**, *the fields are laid waste by fire*: *by fire* = *thing* by which, hence *ablative of means or instrument* without a preposition.

238.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Eae cīvitātēs quae arma commētūsque trādīdērunt ā nostrīs cōservantur. 2. Proelium in summō colle ab imperātōre fortī redintegrātur. 3. Fīnēs per quōs Caesar suum exercitum dūxit ā peditibus nostrīs vāstantur. 4. Dēditiō omnium armōrum ā Caesare postulātur, quod Sēquanī in Rēmōs, fīnitimōs amīcōsque populi Rōmānī, impetum āriter fēcerant. 5. Hostēs ad Caesarem liberōs prīncipum obsidēs mīsērunt nē facultātem faciendī pācem āmitterent.

II.—1. New fortifications are being built by those soldiers whom Caesar placed in camp. 2. Those states into which the Roman commanders came to enroll new legions are spared by Caesar. 3. The number of soldiers is being increased by the Roman commanders in order that the enemy may not be able to defeat our army. 4. Unless

Caesar surrounds¹ the town on all sides, the enemy will depart by night² and seek safety in flight. 5. The enemies' forces which made an attack upon Caesar's infantry while they were fortifying their camp, are easily routed by Galba's soldiers.

LESSON XLV.

FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, CONTINUED.

239. *Portō* continued in the indicative passive.

Imperfect indicative.

was (being) carried.

SINGULAR.

- 1. portābar
- 2. portābāris (-re)
- 3. portābātūr

PLURAL.

- 1. portābāmūr
- 2. portābāmīnī
- 3. portābāntūr

Future indicative.

shall be carried.

SINGULAR.

- portābor
- portāberis (-re)
- portābitūr

PLURAL.

- portābimūr
- portābimīnī
- portābuntūr

Table of endings.

SINGULAR.

-bar

-bāris (-re)

-bātūr

PLURAL.

-bāmūr

-bāmīnī

-bāntūr

SINGULAR.

-bor

-beris (-re)

-bitūr

PLURAL.

-bimūr

-bimīnī

-buntūr

240. Use of *ā* or *ab*.—Ā or ab means *from* (denoting origin or source) when the adverbial phrase (*preposition + noun*) limits a verb in the *active voice*; but if the phrase limits a passive verb it may mean either *from* or *by* according as the verb which it modifies signifies origin or agency:

1. **Arma ā mūrīs portāta sunt,** *Arms were brought from the walls*
2. **Hostēs ab Gallīs auxilium accipiunt,** *The enemy receive aid from the Gauls*
3. **Auxilium hostibus (dat.) ab Gallīs datur,** *Aid is given to the enemy by the Gauls*

¹ Fut. perf. indic.; see (223 b).

² noctū.

241.

VOCABULARY.

Review words 1–46 in the ‘review vocabulary’ (219).

<i>auxilia -ōrum, neut.</i>	<i>auxiliaries</i>
<i>medius -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>middle of</i>
<i>dē mediā nocte</i>	<i>about the middle of the night</i>
<i>eō, adv.</i>	<i>thither</i>
<i>ad eum, ad eōs</i>	<i>to him, to them</i>

242. Decline *quis, who?* (465).

Sometimes *is*, *ea*, *id*, *he*, *she*, *it*, is used as the personal pronoun of the third person; thus,

1. *Cum Caesar esset in Galliā, lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt,* *While Caesar was in Gaul, ambassadors came to him*
2. *Nisi Belgae pācem petent (petiverint), Caesar statim in eōs impetum faciet,* *Unless the Belgians ask for peace, Caesar will make an attack upon them at once*

243.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Causa coniūrandī erat haec, quod multīs in locīs oppida Gallōrum ā militibus nostrīs vāstābantur.* 2. *Sīgnūm ad proelium committendum ab imperātōre cūius cōpiae in silvīs cēlantur¹ subitō dabitur hostēsque ā legiōnibus fortibus prōfligābuntur.* 3. *Cum exercitus noster in extrēmā Galliā esset, obsidēs nōmine populī Rōmānī ā ducibus nostrīs postulābantur et in castra Rōmāna sine morā ab hostibus portābantur.* 4. *Potestās populī Rōmānī inter eās cīvitātēs quārum virtūs māgna est ā Caesare amplificābitur, nē hostēs commeātibus nostrōs prohibeant.* 5. *Eōdem tempore oppida Sēquanōrum ab hīs cōpiis quibus Galba tēla nova dedit occupantur, quod ad Caesarem de pāce lēgātōs nōn mīserunt.*

II.—1. The enemy fled with all their baggage out of the territories through which our men were coming, because

¹ The present indicative passive denotes the *continuance of an action in the present*; *cēlantur* = ‘are being concealed.’

they feared the power of our army. 2. The brave soldiers of the second legion were overcome by many wounds, which they received when they made an attack upon the Germans. 3. While Caesar was wintering among the Remi whose fields are next to the Roman province, corn and supplies were carried to him by many states. 4, When the enemy saw the high towers which were being built by our men so that they might storm the walls of the town, they at once surrendered to Caesar the children of their chiefs as hostages and asked for peace.

LESSON XLVI.

FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, CONTINUED.

244. *Portō* continued in the present system passive.

Present subjunctive.

may be carried.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. porter	portēmūr	portārēr	portārēmūr
2. portēris (-re)	portēminī	portārēris (-re)	portārēminī
3. portētur	portentur	portārētūr	portārentur

Imperative.

SINGULAR.

- 2. { portāre, *be thou carried*
- { portātor, *thou shalt be carried*
- 3. portātor, *he shall be carried*

PLURAL.

- 2. portāminī, *be ye carried*
- 3. portantor, *they shall be carried*

Present infinitive.

Gerundive.

portārī, *to be carried* portandus, -a, -um, (*worthy*) *to be carried*

245. This completes the *eight* forms in the *passive*, based upon the *present stem* *portā*. The *present stem* *portā* undergoes a change in the *present subjunctive* where final ā

becomes ē. Compare the *ending* of the *present infinitive active* (āre) with that of the *present infinitive passive* (ārī).

246. Synopsis of portō in the present system passive.—*Stem portā.*

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	portor,	<i>I am being carried</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	portābar,	<i>I was being carried</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	portābor,	<i>I shall be carried</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	porter,	<i>I may be carried</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	portārer,	<i>I might be carried</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	portāre,	<i>be thou carried</i>
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	portārī,	<i>to be carried</i>
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	portandus -a -um, (<i>worthy</i>)	<i>to be carried</i>

247.

VOCABULARY.

Review words 47–92, in ‘review vocabulary’ (219).

vadum, -ī, neut.	<i>ford</i>
concilium, -ī, neut.	<i>council of war</i>
post, prep. with the acc.	<i>behind or after</i>
prōtinus, adv.	<i>immediately</i>
atque, conj.	<i>and also</i>

248.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Proximō diē Caesar fortibus equitātūs ducibus ut in Sēquanōrum fīnēs cōpiās omnēs dūcerent imperāvit. nē auxilia ā Sēquānis ad Aeduōs portārentur. 2. Belgae, quod nostrī exercitūs quem timēbant adventum audīverant (*had heard of*), ad Germānōs, fīnitimōs, lēgātōs mīsērunt ut ab eīs cīvitātibus quae populō Rōmānō sē nōndum dēdiderant auxilia impetrārent. 3. Nisi Galba suōs mīlītēs in novissimum agmen Belgārum impetum facere iusserit commeātibusque eōs prohibuerit, Belgae ex Ītaliā contendent et cum Germānīs coniūrābunt. 4. Cum Caesar castra mūnīret, lēgātī ex māgnā parte Galliae ad eum vēnērunt atque ut in dēditionē eōs acciperet petīvērunt.

II.—1. Because the Belgians burned our fortifications in the territories of Gaul, a large number of hostages was demanded by Caesar according to his custom. 2. Galba will enroll new legions and hasten (*properō*) into the boundaries of the Gauls whose fields are being laid waste by the Germans; so that aid may be given to his friends¹ and the enemy may be overcome. 3. A camp will be placed (*conlocō*) on the top of the hill and the battle will be renewed by those commanders whose brave forces have defeated (*pellō*) the enemy in many battles.

LESSON XLVII.

FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, PERFECT SYSTEM.

249. Principal parts of *portō* in the passive:

Present indicative. **Present infinitive.** **Perfect indicative.**

portor	portārī	portātus sum
---------------	----------------	---------------------

The perfect stem *portāv* does not occur in the passive voice.

The remaining *eight forms* of the passive are based upon the *supine stem portāt* which is seen in the *perfect passive participle*, *portātus*; these compose the *perfect system* of the passive.

250. Perfect system of *portō* in the passive.—*Stem portāt.*

Perfect indicative.	Perfect subjunctive.
----------------------------	-----------------------------

<i>have been—was carried.</i>	<i>may have been carried.</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------------

SINGULAR.

1.	<i>portātus, -a, -um sum</i>
2.	" " " es
3.	" " " est

SINGULAR.

<i>portātus, -a, -um sim</i>
" " " sis
" " " sit

PLURAL.

1.	<i>portātī, -ae, -a sumus</i>
2.	" " " estis
3.	" " " sunt

PLURAL.

<i>portātī, -ae, -a sīmus</i>
" " " sītis
" " " sint

¹ *Suis amīcīs.*

Pluperfect indicative.*had been carried.*

SINGULAR.

1. portātus, -a, -um eram
2. " " " erās
3. " " " erat

PLURAL.

1. portātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2. " " " erātis
3. " " " erant

Future-perfect indicative.*shall have been carried.*

SINGULAR.

1. portātus, -a, -um erō
2. " " " eris
3. " " " erit

PLURAL.

1. portātī, -ae, -a erimus
2. " " " eritis
3. " " " erunt

Pluperfect subjunctive.*might have been carried.*

SINGULAR.

- portātus, -a, -um essem
- " " " essēs
- " " " esset

PLURAL.

- portātī, -ae, -a essēmus
- " " " essētis
- " " " essent

Perfect infinitive.*portātum, -am, -um esse
to have been carried.***Future infinitive.***portātum īrī
to be about to be carried***Perfect participle.***portātus, -a, -um
having been carried.*

251. The above compound tenses are formed by annexing parts of the verb **sum** to the perfect passive participle, **portātus, -a, -um**.

The participial parts of these tenses, such as **portātus, -a, -um**, **portātī, -ae, -a**, **portātum, -am, -um**, etc., are made to agree in *gender, number, and case* with the *subject* of the verb.

252.**VOCABULARY.**

Review words 93–138 in ‘review vocabulary’ (219).

253. The gerundive construction.—Instead of the accusative-object with the gerund (noun), put the *object* in the *case* in which the gerund would stand (*were it used*), and place the *gerundive* (adjective) in agreement with this noun in the *same gender, number, and case*. When the verb is followed by an object, the gerundive rather than the gerund is almost always used.

1. By drawing up a line of battle: the gerund construction is *īnstruendō aciem*; change *aciem* to the *ablative aciē* (the case indicated by *īnstruendō*); place the gerundive *īnstruendus* in the *ablative, singular, feminine* to agree with *aciē* and the phrase is correctly written *aciē īnstruendā*.

2. By destroying the fortifications: the gerund construction is *dēlendō mūnītiōnēs*; gerundive, *mūnītiōnibus dēlendis*.

254. Commit to memory the following :

1. **Imperātor amātus est,** *The commander has been or was loved*
2. **Virtus amāta est,** *Courage has been or was loved*
3. **Nōmen amātum est,** *The name was loved*
4. **Militēs amātī sunt,** *The soldiers were loved*
5. **Cīvitātēs amātae sunt,** *The states were loved*
6. **Castra amāta sunt,** *The camp has been loved*

LESSON XLVIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES.

255. Synopsis of the passive—first conjugation—by stems.

Present system, stem portā.

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	portor
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	portābar
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	portābor
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	porter
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	portārer
6. <i>Imperative</i>	portāre
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	portāri
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	portandus

Perfect system, stem portāt.

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	portātus -a, -um sum ¹
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	portātus -a. -um eram

¹ The perfect indicative passive (*indefinite perfect*) represents the action as *past*, without reference to its *duration*, merely as *something ended*.

3. Future-perfect indicative	portātus, -a, -um erō
4. Perfect subjunctive	portātus, -a, -um sim
5. Pluperfect subjunctive	portātus, -a, -um essem
6. Perfect infinitive	portātum, -am, -um esse
7. Future infinitive	portātum īrī
8. Perfect participle	portātus, -a, -um

Conjugate the entire verb *amō*, *active* and *passive*, as given in (474, 475).

256.

VOCABULARY.

Review verbs 1–41 (450).

257. Perfect passive participle.—The perfect passive participle (p. p. p.) is found by changing final *m* of the *first supine* to *s*: *moveō*, *movēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtum*; supine *mōtum*, p. p. p. *mōtus*, -a, -um, *having been moved*. *cōgnōscō*, *cōgnōscere*, *cōgnōvī*, *cōgnitum*; supine *cōgnitum*, p. p. p. *cōgnitus*, *having been found out*.

258. Adjectives used as substantives.—The *adjective* in the *masculine plural* is often used as a noun, meaning *men*, *soldiers*, *friends*, etc.; as, *ad eōs*, *to those (men)*; *prīmōrum*, *of the foremost (men)*; *reliquī*, *the rest*; *ad suōs*, *to his or their own (friends)*;—so *noster* in the masculine plural: *nostri*, *our men*.

The *adjective* in the *neuter plural*, as a substantive, means *things* or *possessions*; as, *ea*, *those (things)*; *haec*, *these (things)*; *sua omnia*, *all his or their (possessions)*.

259.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Multa Gallōrum castella ā ncstrīs quī conlocatī erant in hībernīs in Galliā occupāta sunt. 2. Proelium ab eīs quōs Caesar in Sēquanōrum fīnīs mīsit redintegrātum est. 3. Lēgatī Rōmānī in extrēmās Galliae partēs vēnērunt ut ea quae hostēs facerent¹ cōgnōserent.

¹ were doing : for mood of *facerent* see (276)—‘ subjunctive by attraction.’

4. Omnia quae erant idōnea bellō ā Belgīs comparāta erant, quod adventum nostrī exercitūs exspectābant.
 5. Eī quibus Galba loca in Galliā ad hiemandum dedit ā Gallīs fortibus facile prōturbātī sunt. 6. Gallī spē¹ pācis faciendaē obsidēs dēdēnt.

II.—1. All who handed over arms and (*que*) gave hostages were spared by our leaders and called friends of the Roman people. 2. About the middle of the night Caesar will send scouts into those territories, in which the camp of the Germans has been placed, to find out those things which the enemy are doing.² 3. The rest of the Gauls (*nom.*) from whom Caesar had received hostages were incited by the enemies of the Roman people. 4. When (*ubi*) the ambassador of the Belgians came into our camp, Caesar ordered him to surrender to the Roman people all the fields on this side of the river Rhine. 5. The Gauls surround their towns with high walls that they may not be overcome by the Romans.

LESSON XLIX.

SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF DĒLEŌ.

260. The present system of *dēleō* continued in the passive.

Present indicative.	Imperfect indicative.	Future indicative.
<i>am being destroyed.</i>	<i>was being destroyed.</i>	<i>shall be destroyed.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. <i>dēleor</i>	<i>dēlēbar</i>	<i>dēlēbor</i>
2. <i>dēlēris (-re)</i>	<i>dēlēbāris (-re)</i>	<i>dēlēberis (-re)</i>
3. <i>dēlētur</i>	<i>dēlēbātur</i>	<i>dēlēbitur</i>
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. <i>dēlēmur</i>	<i>dēlēbāmūr</i>	<i>dēlēbimūr</i>
2. <i>dēlēminī</i>	<i>dēlēbāminī</i>	<i>dēlēbimīnī</i>
3. <i>dēlēntur</i>	<i>dēlēbāntur</i>	<i>dēlēbuntur</i>

¹ Abl. of cause: *because of their hope.*

² *Faciant*; see (276).

The present stem is *dēlē*, as in the *active*. The *personal endings* are the *same* as in the *corresponding* tenses of the *first-conjugation verb*. Avoid putting in an extra syllable in the second person singular, present indicative; it is *dē-lē-ris*, not *dē-lē-e-ris*.

261. Compare carefully the following tenses:

**First conjugation,
present subjunctive.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. porter	portēmur
2. portēris (-re)	portēminī
3. portētur	portentur

**Second conjugation,
present indicative.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
dēleor	dēlēmur
dēleris (-re)	dēlēminī
dēletur	dēlentur

When the verb ends in *ētur*, *entur*, etc., it is *present subjunctive* in the *first conjugation*, *present indicative* in the *second conjugation*.

262.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 42–48 (450).

sagittārius, sagittārī, <i>mas.</i>	bowman
funditor, funditōris, <i>mas.</i>	slinger
quīnque, <i>indecl. num. adj.</i>	five
circiter, <i>adv.</i>	about
cum, <i>conj.</i>	after
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum,	to lead across
perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, peruentum,	to arrive at
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,	to drive
tum, <i>adv.</i>	then

263. Cum + pluperfect subjunctive (203, 359).—Cum, when, in the sense of ‘after,’ takes the pluperfect subjunctive, translated like the pluperfect indicative; as,

Cum Caesar in Galliam iter fēcisset, multae cīvitātēs ad eum lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt, After Caesar had marched into Gaul, many states sent ambassadors to him with respect to peace

264.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Exercitus noster in Galliā distinētūr, nē rēgnūm ā Caesari hostibūs occupētūr. 2. Fossae quae oppidūm

circumdant corporibus eōrum quī peditum Rōmānōrum impetum nōn sustinuērunt complentur. 3. Cū Caesar eō vēnisset, Rēmī quōrum cīvitātēs proximae Belgīs sunt ad eum prīcipēs lēgātōs, ut eī¹ sua omnia trādant, mittunt. 4. Caesar māgnō numerō cōpiārum fortium collem in quō hostēs sua castra mūniēbant circumdedit lēgātīsque, ut in eōs māgnā cum virtūte impetum āriter facerent, imperāvit.

II.—1. Unless Caesar leads² the bowmen and (que) slingers across the bridge and prevents² the departure of the enemy, he will not receive the hostages which he had demanded. 2. That state, from (ā) which auxiliaries came so that they might aid our army, will not be attacked by the Roman soldiers. 3. Because the Remi are ready to give hostages and receive him in their towns, Caesar will command the Belgians not to lead the army through that state. 4. After the Remi had surrendered all their (possessions), Caesar ordered them to inhabit that part of Gaul from which he had driven (expellō) the bands of the enemy.

LESSON L.

SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF DĒLEŌ, CONTINUED.

265. The present system of *dēleō* completed in the passive.

Decline *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* (468).

Present subjunctive.

may be destroyed.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. dēlear	dēlēamur	dēlērer	dēlērēmur
2. dēlēaris (-re)	dēlēamīnī	dēlērēris (-re)	dēlērēminī
3. dēlēātur	dēlēantur	dēlērētūr	dēlērentur

Imperfect subjunctive.

might be destroyed.

¹ Dative.

² Future or future-perfect indicative.

Imperative.*be thou destroyed, etc.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. { dēlēre	dēlēminī
dēlētor	
3. dēlētor	dēlentor

Present infinitive.*dēlērī, to be destroyed***Gerundive.***dēlēndus, -a, -um, (worthy) to
be destroyed*

The *stem* is **dēlē**: this completes the *present system* of eight forms based upon **dēlē**.

266. Compare carefully the following tenses :

First conjugation, present indicative, stem **portā**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portor	portāmūr
2. portāris (-re)	portāmīnī
3. portātūr	portantur

Second conjugation, present subjunctive, stem **dēlē**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
dēlear	dēleāmūr
dēlēāris (-re)	dēlēāmīnī
dēlēātūr	dēleantur

Thus when a verb ends in **ātūr**, **antūr**, etc., it is *present indicative* in the *first conjugation*, *present subjunctive* in the *second conjugation*.

267.**VOCABULARY.****Verbs 49–55 (450).**

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>num.</i> <i>adj.</i>	<i>one</i>
quantus, quanta, quantum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>how great</i>
neque . . . neque, <i>conj.</i>	<i>neither . . . nor</i>
celeriter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>quickly</i>
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, <i>emphatic pron.</i>	<i>he, self</i>
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaeſitūm,	<i>to inquire</i>
palūs, palūdīs, <i>fem.</i>	<i>swamp</i>
coniungo, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctūm,	<i>to join</i>

268.**EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Omnes reliquī Belgae in armis sunt Germāni que
quī cis Rhēnum incolunt sē cum hīs coniūnxērunt, nē sua
oppida ā nostrīs dēleantur. 2. Cum Germānī suās cōpiās
trāns Rhēnum trādūxissent, ibi cōnsēdērunt Gallōsque quī
ea loca incolēbant armis expulērunt. 3. Cum ab hīs

Caesar quaereret quantae cīvitātēs in armīs essent¹ atque quantum exercitum hostēs cōgere possent,² haec reperiēbat. 4. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum et hostēs trāns hanc suās cōpiās trādūcere parābant. 5. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est contendērunt.

II.—1. Caesar leads out all the army and prepares to storm the walls so that the town may be destroyed and many weapons may be seized. 2. After Caesar had come into those parts in which he had placed (*pōnō*) his camp, many states joined themselves with our army so that their children might not be carried into slavery. 3. While Caesar was inquiring of (*ab*) the scouts with respect to the number of the enemy, ambassadors of the Germans came into our camp and surrendered themselves and (*que*) all their (possessions) to Caesar (*dative*). 4. After Caesar had driven the enemy out of these boundaries and had received a suitable number of hostages, he led his soldiers back into camp.

LESSON LI.

SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF DĒLEŌ, CONTINUED.

269. Principal parts of *dēleō* in the passive: *dēleor*, *dēlērī*, *dēlētus sum*.

For the tense names of these forms, see (249).

Perfect system of *dēleō* in the passive.—*Stem dēlēt.*

Perfect indicative.

have been—was—destroyed.

SINGULAR.

1. *dēlētus*, -a, -um sum

2. " " " es

3. " " " est

PLURAL.

dēlētī. ae, -a sunus

" " " estis

" " " sunt

¹ were.

² were able; for mood in both, see (313), ‘indirect question.’

Pluperfect indicative.

had been destroyed.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	dēlētūs, -a, -um	erām	dēlētī, -ae, -a	erāmus	
2.	" " "	erās	" " "	erātis	
3.	" " "	erat	" " "	erant	

Future-perfect indicative.

shall have been destroyed.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	dēlētūs, -a, -um	erō	dēlētī, -ae, -a	erimus	
2.	" " "	eris	" " "	eritis	
3.	" " "	erit	" " "	erunt	

Perfect subjunctive.

may have been destroyed.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	dēlētūs, -a, -um	sim	dēlētī, -ae, -a	sīmus	
2.	" " "	sīs	" " "	sītis	
3.	" " "	sit	" " "	sint	

Pluperfect subjunctive.

might have been destroyed.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	dēlētūs, -a, -um	essem	dēlētī, -ae, -a	essēmus	
2.	" " "	essēs	" " "	essētis	
3.	" " "	esset	" " "	essent	

Perfect infinitive.

dēlētūm, -am, -um esse, *to have been destroyed*

Future infinitive.

dēlētūm īrī, *to be about to be destroyed*

Perfect participle.

dēlētūs, -a, -um, *having been destroyed*

270. *Synopsis, present system, passive.—Present stem dēlē.*

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	dēleor
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	dēlēbar
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	dēlēbor
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	dēlear
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlērer
6. <i>Imperative</i>	dēlēre
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	dēlēri
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	dēlēndus

Perfect system, passive.—Stem dēlēt, seen in the perfect participle, dēlētus.

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um sum
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um eram
3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um erō
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um sim
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um essem
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	dēlētum, -am, -um esse
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	dēlētum irī
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um

271.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 56–64 (450).

272.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cīvitātēs multae, quod cōpiae superātæ erant atque sua oppida ā nostrīs occupāta et dēlēta erant, in fidem Caesaris sē suaque omnia permīsērunt. 2. Caesar, ubi eae cōpiae quās Germānī trāns Rhēnum trādūxerant in summō monte ā nostrīs vīsae sunt, mīlitibus legiōnis prīmae ut in eās impetum facerent imperāvit. 3. Nisi legiōnēs novae comparābuntur¹ ac castra nostra ex eō locō movēbuntur,² imperātōrēs Rōmānī neque in Galliā agrōs lātōs possidēre neque nōmen populī Rōmānī amplificāre poterunt. 4. Caesar suīs peditibus nē inīquō locō proelium

¹ comparābuntur or comparātæ erunt; see (223 a, b).

² What other form may be used?

committant mandat. 5. Galba in servitūtem Belgās quōrum oppida frūmentō commeātibusque complentur rediget.

II.—1. While Caesar was emolling a new legion in that state which had been overcome, the Germans were preparing to make an attack upon him with a large army. 2. After the Aedui had entrusted themselves and (*que*) all their (possessions) to (*in + acc.*) the power and protection of the Roman people, Caesar ordered them to settle in farthest Gaul. 3. By preparing¹ a large army and surrounding¹ their towns with new ramparts the enemy were able to cut off (*prohibeō*) our men from² their supplies and withstand the attacks of the Roman legions. 4. Caesar directs his commanders to separate their forces and drive the enemy out of the boundaries of Gaul. 5. When (*ubi*) the first baggage of our army was seen by those who were concealed in the forests, the leaders of the enemy ordered all their forces to rush forth.

LESSON LII.

THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ.

273. The present system of *pōnō* in the passive.

Decline *vīs*, *mīlia*, and *īnsīgne* (458, 459).

Present indicative. Imperfect indicative. Future indicative.
am being placed. *was being placed.* *shall be placed.*

SINGULAR.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>pōnor</i> | <i>pōnēbar</i> | <i>pōnar</i> |
| 2. <i>pōneris</i> (-re) | <i>pōnēbāris</i> (-re) | <i>pōnērīs</i> (-re) |
| 3. <i>pōnitur</i> | <i>pōnēbātur</i> | <i>pōnētūr</i> |

PLURAL.

- | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>pōnimur</i> | <i>pōnēbāmūr</i> | <i>pōnēmūr</i> |
| 2. <i>pōnimīnī</i> | <i>pōnēbāmīnī</i> | <i>pōnēmīnī</i> |
| 3. <i>pōnuntur</i> | <i>pōnēbāntur</i> | <i>pōnēntūr</i> |

SINGULAR.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| <i>pōnēbar</i> | <i>pōnēbāris</i> (-re) | <i>pōnētūr</i> |
| <i>pōnēbātur</i> | | |

PLURAL.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| <i>pōnar</i> | <i>pōnērīs</i> (-re) | <i>pōnēmūr</i> |
| <i>pōnētūr</i> | | |
| <i>pōnēmūr</i> | | |
| <i>pōnēmīnī</i> | | |
| <i>pōnēntūr</i> | | |

¹ 'Gerundive construction'; see (253).

² Abl. without prep. to denote separation; see (221).

Conjugate **mittō**, **cōgō**, and **expellō** in the above tenses.
The *present stem* is **pōne**; for change in *stem-vowel*, see (180).

274. Table of endings.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		FUTURE INDICATIVE.	
-or	-imur	-ar	-ēmur
-eris (-re)	-iminī	-ēris (-re)	-ēminī
-itur	-untur	-ētur	-entur

A verb ending in **ētur**, **entur**, etc., is *present subjunctive* in the *first conjugation*, *present indicative* in the *second conjugation*, *future indicative* in the *third conjugation*.

275.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 65-70 (450).

iter <i>facere</i> ,	<i>to march</i>
sēcum = (<i>cum sē</i>),	<i>with himself or themselves</i>
poscō (see vocab. for princ. parts),	<i>to demand</i>
repellō “ “ “ “ “	<i>to drive back</i>
aut , <i>conj.</i>	<i>or</i>

276. Intermediate clauses—mood.—**Qui** clause: a simple *relative clause*, introducing only a descriptive fact, has its verb in the *indicative*. **Quod** clause: *causal clauses* introduced by **quod**, **quia**, and **quoniam** have the verb in the *indicative*, when the reason given is vouched for by the writer or speaker; *subjunctive*, when the reason is given on the authority of another. These clauses take the verb in the *subjunctive by attraction*, when they form a necessary part of a *subjunctive clause* upon which they depend.

Example of a *relative clause* the verb of which is in the *subjunctive by attraction*:

Nostrī in Galliam contendunt
ut oppidum quod commēā-
tibus armīsque compleātūr
oppūgnent,

Our men hasten into Gaul to
attack a town which is being
filled with arms and sup-
plies

Here the *verb* in the *relative clause*, *quod . . . compleātur*, which is within an *ut clause* and forms an essential part of it, is *drawn into the subjunctive*.

277.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Sī obsidēs Caesarī dabuntur (datī erunt) ā Gallīs, omnēs Germānī ex fīnibus Galliae expellentur.* 2. *Germānī, cum in prōvinciam nostram et Ītaliā iter facerent, ea impedīmenta quae sēcum nōn portāre poterant cis Rhēnum flūmen relīquerunt.* 3. *Caesar Sēquanīs fīnitimīsque imperābit nē Rēmōs ā quibus auxilium multum accēperit¹ exagitent.* 4. *Belgæ, ā quibus proelium redintegrātum est cum nostrī sua castra mūnirent, facile celeriterque ab equitātū fugātī sunt.* 5. *Spē imperī dēlendī populī Rōmānī, māgnus exercitus ab eis cīvitātibus quae adventū legiōnum Rōmānarū perterritæ sunt cōgitur.*

II.—1. Caesar will make peace with those from whom he has received corn and supplies. 2. Because of the courage² of our infantry the enemy were alarmed and fled into the nearest fortifications. 3. The Aedui whose forces joined themselves with the rest of the enemy will be quickly defeated (*prōturbō*) and reduced to³ subjection by Caesar's brave generals. 4. Scouts will be sent forward by Caesar to find out those (things) which are being prepared⁴ in the enemy's camp.

¹ Subjunctive by attraction (276); perfect by 'rule of sequence' (135).

² Because of the courage: *virtūte, abl. of cause.*

³ in + acc.

⁴ Why subjunctive? What tense?

LESSON LIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ, CONTINUED.

278. The present system of *pōnō* completed in the passive.—*Stem pōne.*

Present subjunctive.*may be placed.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. pōnar	pōnāmur	pōnerer	pōnerēmur
2. pōnāris (-re)	pōnāminī	pōnerēris (-re)	pōnerēminī
3. pōnātur	pōnantur	pōnerētur	pōnerentur

Imperative.*be thou placed, etc.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. { pōnere pōnitor	pōniminī
3. pōnitor	pōnuntor

Present infinitive.*pōnī, to be placed***Gerundive.***pōnendus, (worthy) to be placed*

279. To form the *present infinitive passive* of a verb of the *third conjugation*, change *ere* of the present infinitive active to *ī*. *cōgō*: present infinitive active *cōgere*, present infinitive passive *cōgī*. *mittō*: present infinitive active *mittere*, present infinitive passive *mittī*. *gerō*: present infinitive active *gerere*, present infinitive passive *gerī*. When a verb ends in *ātur*, *antur*, etc., it is *present indicative* in the *first conjugation*, *present subjunctive* in the *other conjugations*.

280.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 71–75 (450).

dexter, dextra, dextrum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>right</i>
ā dextrō cornū,	<i>on the right wing</i>
paene, <i>adv.</i>	<i>almost</i>
aut . . . aut, <i>conj.</i>	<i>either . . . or</i>
tōtus, tōta, tōtum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>entire</i> [to retreat
sē recipere,	<i>to betake one's self or</i>

281. Synopsis of the present system, passive, of pōnō.—
Present stem pōne.

1. Present indicative	pōnor
2. Imperfect indicative	pōnēbar
3. Future indicative	pōnar
4. Present subjunctive	pōnar
5. Imperfect subjunctive	pōnerer
6. Imperative	pōnere
7. Present infinitive	pōnī
8. Gerundive	pōnendus

Give synopsis, present system, passive, of dūcō, mittō, dēdō, and incendō.

282. Comparative table of endings.

First and second conjugations.

FUTURE INDICATIVE.

Active.

Passive.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. -bō	-bimus	-bor	-bimur
2. -bis	-bitis	-beris (-re)	-bimini
3. -bit	-bunt	-bitur	-buntur

Third and fourth conjugations.

FUTURE INDICATIVE.

Active.

Passive.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. -am	-ēmus	-ar	-ēmur
2. -ēs	-ētis	-ēris (-re)	-ēminī
3. -et	-ent	-ētur	-entur

283.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cum Caesar hōc bellum cōnfēcisset, inter eās cīvitātēs quās pepulerat (*pellō*) in hibernīs omnīs cohortēs prīmae atque secundae legiōnis posuit. 2. Cum imperātōrēs hostiū aut vulnerātī aut superātī essent, omnēs mīlitēs perterritī sunt et ad Germānōs, fīnitimōs, sē recēpērunt. 3. Caesar cum omnibus cōpiīs in Belgārum fīnīs iter facit ut hostēs expellantur aut in servitūtem redigan-
tur; adventū hōrum hostēs in oppidum māgnum quod mūrō altō mūnīverant sē recipiunt. 4. Mūnītiōnēs multae ā Gallīs in suīs fīnībus exstruentur nē sua castella aedifi-
ciaque adventū (*upon the arrival*) exercitūs nostrī incen-
dantur.

II.—1. After all the cavalry had been summoned out of camp, Caesar's forces surrounded the enemy's winter-quarters on all sides in order that they might not be able to depart in the night. 2. Brave soldiers are placed (*pōnō*) in the foremost line,¹ because the enemy have a great multitude of men and will make a fierce² attack upon our men. 3. While Caesar was marching thither, scouts were sent forward by the Gauls to find out the plans of our commanders and to cut off our men from supplies.

LESSON LIV.

PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ, CONTINUED. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

284. Principal parts of *pōnō*.

Active, pōnō pōnere posuī positum
Passive, pōnor pōnī positus sum

¹ in prīmā aciē.² Adverb.

Synopsis of the perfect system, passive, of *pōnō*.—*Stem posit*, seen in the perfect passive participle, *positus*.

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	<i>positus, -a, -um sum</i>
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	<i>positus, -a, -um eram</i>
3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	<i>positus, -a, -um erō</i>
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	<i>positus, -a, -um sim</i>
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>positus, -a, -um essem</i>
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	<i>positum, -am, -um esse</i>
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	<i>positum iri</i>
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	<i>positus, -a, -um</i>

Conjugate the entire verb *pōnō* in both voices, as given in (478, 479).

285.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 76–86 (450).

<i>inde, adv.</i>	<i>thence or then</i>
<i>nam, conj.</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>proximē, adv.</i>	<i>lately</i>
<i>expeditus, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>light-armed</i>
<i>cōsuētūdō, -dinus, fem.</i>	<i>custom or habit</i>

286. Adjectives with the genitive in *iūs* and the dative in *i*.—The following adjectives (o-stems) have the genitive singular in *iūs* and the dative in *i*:

<i>ūnus, one</i>	<i>alius, other or another</i>
<i>ūllus, any</i>	<i>uter, which (of two)</i>
<i>nūllus, no, none</i>	<i>neuter, neither</i>
<i>sōlus, alone, only</i>	<i>alter, the other (of two)</i>
<i>tōtus, whole, entire</i>	

These words are declined regularly in the plural, like *altus*. The vocative is lacking in all save *sōlus* and *ūnus*.

The *i* of the genitive singular ending *iūs* is long except in *alterius*.

Tōtus is thus declined in the singular:

	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtūm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>tōtīus</i>	<i>tōtīus</i>	<i>tōtīus</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tōtūm</i>	<i>tōtām</i>	<i>tōtūm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tōtō</i>	<i>tōtā</i>	<i>tōtō</i>

287. Ablative absolute.—A noun or pronoun in the *ablative* may be used with a *participle* in agreement to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action; such a phrase is called an *ablative absolute* and serves in the place of a *subordinate clause*.

Examples of the ablative absolute:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Pâce factâ, | <i>Peace having been made</i> |
| 2. Obsidibus datîs, | <i>Hostages having been given</i> |
| 3. Obsidibus acceptîs Caesar
suum exercitum ex hos-
tium fînibus êdûxit, | <i>Hostages having been received,
Caesar led his army out of
the enemies' territories</i> |

288. The noun and participle in the *ablative absolute* may each have one or more modifiers; as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tôtô exercitû in aciē ïnstrûc-
tô, Caesar sîgnum proeliî
dedit, | <i>The whole army having been
drawn up in line of battle,
Caesar gave the signal for
battle</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Tôtô, the adjective, limits **exercitû** in the *ablative singular masculine*; the adverbial phrase *in aciē* modifies *ïnstrûctô*; the ablative absolute **tôtô . . . ïnstrûctô** represents a subordinate clause *defining the time of the action of the verb dedit*.

In the above *ablative absolute exercitû*, the *basis* or *principal word*, takes the participle *ïnstrûctô* into agreement with it; in rendering the *ablative absolute* by a *subordinate clause* the *basis* (noun or pronoun in the ablative) becomes the *subject*, and the *participle* a *finite verb*; thus, **exercitû ïnstrûctô**, *when or after the army had been or was drawn up*.

289.

EXERCISE.

1. Caesar necessâriîs rêbus imperâtîs ad cohortandôs
militês dêcucurrit et ad legiônem decimam dêvénit. 2.
Nostrî propter propînquitâtēm et celeritâtēm hostium nihil

¹That is, *after, when, because* hostages had been received.

iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē¹ quae² vidēbantur administrābant. 3. Temporis brevitās et successus hostium māgnam hārum rērum partem impediēbat; sed nostrī, quod superiōribus (*former*) proeliis exercitātī erant, nōn minus (*less*) commodē sibi³ praescribere quam (*than*) ab aliīs docērī poterant.

LESSON LV.

THIRD CONJUGATION PASSIVE, THE 'IŌ' VERB— ACCIPIO.

290. Principal parts of *accipiō* in the passive: *accipior*, *accipī*, *acceptus sum*.

Passive voice of *accipiō*, *I receive*.—The present stem *accipe* is found by dropping *re* from the present infinitive active, *accipere*. The perfect stem *accēp* is not used in the passive. In the passive of *accipiō* eight forms are based upon the present stem *accipe*, eight upon the supine stem *accept* (*seen in the perfect passive participle, acceptus*). For the occurrence and omission of *i* in the 'iō' verbs, see (213) and foot-note.

The second person singular of the present indicative is pronounced, *not ac-ci-pi-e-ris*, but *ac-ci'-pe-ris*.

291. Present system, passive, of *accipiō*.—*Stem accipe*.

Present indicative.

am being received.

SINGULAR.

1. *accipior*

2. *acciperis (-re)*

3. *accipitur*

PLURAL.

accipimur

accipiminī

accipiuntur

Imperfect indicative.

was being received.

SINGULAR.

accipiēbar

accipiēbāris (-re)

accipiēbātur, etc.

¹ Of themselves.

² Nominative plural neuter, subject of *vidēbantur*, seemed best; the antecedent of *quae* = *ea*, understood object of *administrābant*.

³ Dative with the compound verb *praescribere*; see (337).

Future indicative.*shall be received.*

SINGULAR.

1. accipiar
2. accipiēris (-re)
3. accipiētur, etc.

Present subjunctive.*may be received.*

SINGULAR.

- accipiar
- accipiāris (-re)
- accipiātur, etc.

Imperfect subjunctive.*might be received.*

SINGULAR.

1. acciperer
2. acciperēris (-re)
3. acciperētur, etc.

Imperative.*be thou received, etc.*

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 2. { accipere | accipimini |
| accipitor | |
| 3. accipitor | acciunctor |

Present infinitive.*accipi, to be received***Gerundive.***acciendus, -a, -um, (worthy) to be received*

292. Synopsis of the perfect system.—*Stem accept, seen in the perfect passive participle, acceptus.*

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. acceptus, -a, -um sum | 5. acceptus, -a, -um essem |
| 2. acceptus, -a, -um eram | 6. acceptum, -am, -um esse |
| 3. acceptus, -a, -um erō | 7. acceptum īrī |
| 4. acceptus, -a, -um sim | 8. acceptus, -a, -um |

293.**VOCABULARY.****Verbs 87–96 (450).***ubi, adv.**where**aciēs, aciēī, fem.**line of battle, army**sub, prep. with abl. and acc.**under**sub monte,**at the foot of the mountain**equester, equestris, equestre, adj.**of cavalry**proeliō equestrī,**in a cavalry skirmish**summus mōns,**the top of the mountain*

294.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hōc bellō factō hostēs castra prōmōvērunt ac sub monte in Rēmōrum fīnibus cis Rhēnum cōnsēdērunt (*encamped*, from *consido*). 2. Omnibus aedificiīs vīcīsque in Galliā incēnsīs Caesar trāns flūmen contendit ut hostium cōpiās frūmentō commeātibusque prohibēret. 3. Fortēs peditēs legiōnis pīmae in Galliam ā Caesare mīssī sunt ut exercitum cōgerent et castra in eīs cīvītātibus quae Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdidissent pōnerent. 4. Cohortibus reliquīs ē castrīs ēductīs Galba suīs ducibus ut aciem triplicem īstruerent atque ā dextrō cornū in hostēs impetum facerent, imperāvit. 5. Triplīcī aciē factā imperātōrēs nostrī ē castrīs suōs peditēs ēdūxērunt atque at eum locum, ubi hostium explōrātōrēs vīderant, properāvērunt. 6. Quod hostēs in castrīs quae sub monte salūtis causā posuerant sē continēbant neque peditēs ad proelium ēdūcēbant, Caesar Galbae ut in aciē equitātum omnem īstrueret mandāvit et ipse suō mōre ad portās hostium castrōrum peditēs fortīs dūxit.

II.—1. After their fields had been laid waste,¹ the enemy sent ambāssadōrs to Caesar to ask for peace. 2. When the camp had been surrounded² on all sides, Caesar commanded the Remi to give his (men) corn and supplies. 3. If the enemy surrender³ hostages, Caesar will command his leaders not to destroy the town into which they carried⁴ all their arms.

¹ Two ways : by *ablatīve absolute* and by a *cum clause*.

² By *ablatīve absolute* and the *ubi clause*.

³ See (223).

⁴ Mood ? (276), ‘*intermediate clauses*.’ Tense ? (135).

LESSON LVI.

FOURTH CONJUGATION PASSIVE. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

295. Principal parts of *mūniō*, *I fortify*.

<i>Active,</i>	<i>mūniō</i>	<i>mūnīre</i>	<i>mūnīvī</i>	<i>mūnītum</i>
<i>Passive,</i>	<i>mūnīor</i>	<i>mūnīrī</i>	<i>mūnītus</i>	<i>sum</i>

In the *passive* two stems are used: *mūnī* and *mūnīt*, upon each of which eight forms are based.

Present system of *mūniō* in the passive.—Present stem *mūnī*. For the tense forms complete, see (483).

Present indicative.

am being fortified.

SINGULAR.

1. *mūnīor*2. *mūnīris (-re)*3. *mūnītūr*

PLURAL.

*mūnīmūr**mūnīmīnī**mūnīuntūr***Present subjunctive.**

may be fortified.

SINGULAR.

*mūnīar**mūnīāris (-re)**mūnīātūr, etc.***Imperfect indicative.**

was being fortified.

SINGULAR.

1. *mūnīēbar*2. *mūnīēbāris (-re), etc.***Imperfect subjunctive.**

might be fortified.

SINGULAR.

*mūnīrer**mūnīrēris (-re), etc.***Future indicative.**

shall be fortified.

SINGULAR.

1. *mūnīar*2. *mūnīēris (-re)*3. *mūnīētūr, etc.***Imperative.**

*mūnīre, be thou fortified
mūnītūr, thou shalt be fortified,
etc.*

Present infinitive.

mūnīrī, to be fortified

Gerundive.

mūniendus, -a, -um, (worthy) to be fortified

296. Synopsis of the perfect system, passive.—*Stem mūnīt.*

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um sum</i>
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um eram</i>
3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um erō</i>
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um sim</i>
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um essem</i>
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	<i>mūnītum, -am, -um esse</i>
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	<i>mūnītum irī</i>
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um</i>

Conjugate each tense of *cōsentīō* in both voices; repeat *mūniō* entire as given in (482, 483).

297.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 97–106 (450).

<i>tumultus, -ūs, mas.</i>	<i>uproar</i>
<i>īnsidiae, -ārum, fem.</i>	<i>ambush</i>
<i>lūx, lūcis, fem.</i>	<i>light</i>
<i>prīmā lūce,</i>	<i>at early dawn</i>
<i>lēgātus, -ī, mas.</i>	<i>lieutenant</i>
<i>prīmō, adv.</i>	<i>at first</i>

298. Comparison of adjectives.—There are three degrees of comparison: the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*. The *comparative* is regularly formed by adding *ior* (*mascu-line* and *feminine*) and *ius* (*neuter*) to the *stem* of the *positive*, which loses its final vowel; the *superlative* is formed by adding *issimus, -a, -um*, to the *stem* of the *positive*. Adjectives of the *first* and *second* declensions, like nouns, form the *stem* in *o* or *a*. For the *stem* of *altus*, *altum* (*alto*), see (18); for the *stem* of *alta* (*alta*), see (2). Third-declension adjectives, like nouns, are *vowel* or *consonant stems*; *fortis* (*stem fortī*), see *collis* (131); *potēns* (*stem potent*), see *miles* (113) and *pūgnāns* (467).

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altus, -a, -um	altior, -ior, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -is, -e	fortior, -ior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
potēns, -ēns, -ēns	potentior, -ior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um

The meanings of the above are:

altus, tall	altior, taller	altissimus, tallest or very tall
fortis, brave	fortior, braver	fortissimus, bravest or very brave
potēns, powerful	potentior, more powerful	potentissimus, most or very powerful

299.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Eā rē cōnstitūtā hostēs secundā vigiliā tumultū māgnō ē castrīs contendērunt et in extrēmās Galliae partēs, ubi exercitūs nostrī adventum nōn timuērunt, fūgērunt. 2. Hāc rē ab explōrātōribus cōgnitā Caesar prīmā lūce equitātum omnem ut in novissimum agmen hostium impetum faceret praemīsit. 3. Quod vīcī omnēs ā nostrīs incēnsī erant, Sēquanī in Aeduōrum fīnīs sē recēpērunt, ubi in amīcitiam acceptī sunt agrōsque multōs possēdērunt. 4. Castra sub monte ab hostibus posita sunt ac prō mūnītiōnibus aciēs īstrūcta est, nē nostrī in eōs impetum facere possent, cum fīnitimōrum lēgātōs accipe-rent. 5. Caesar, ubi hostium fugam audīvit (*heard of*), in castra peditēs equitātumque redūxit et, quod īnsidiās timēbat, iussit suōs nōn eō diē hostēs subsequī.

II.—1. The enemy at first fought (contendō) in a cavalry skirmish; then (inde), after our cavalry had been driven back, they suddenly led out their infantry which had been concealed in the forests next to the river. 2. After Caesar had determined (cōnstituō) to spare the rest of the enemy, towns were given to them in Gaul and their neighbours were ordered not to make an attack upon them. 3. A triple line of battle having been drawn up, Caesar directs his lieutenants to begin battle on the

right wing and to fight bravely for the sake of their commander.

LESSON LVII.

ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA, OR INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

300. Irregular verb *eō*, *I go*. Principal parts: *eō*, *īre*, *īvī* (*iī*), *itum*.

Learn the indicative mood of eō (six tenses), (486).

301. Direct and indirect discourse.—In *direct discourse* (Ōrātiō rēcta) the exact words of the speaker or writer are given. In *indirect discourse* (Ōrātiō oblīqua) certain forms of words may be altered to suit the point of view of the new speaker, viz.: moods, tenses, persons. The more regular of such changes will be stated. *Indirect discourse* depends upon some verb of *saying*, *knowing*, *thinking*, *perceiving*, etc., the verb of the *main (declarative)* clause being put in the *infinitive* with its *subject* in the *accusative*, the verb of the *subordinate* clause becoming *subjunctive*.

302. Statement in indirect discourse.—In the following sentences, this much of the principle of ‘*indirect discourse*’ is employed, viz.: *verbs of saying, thinking, etc.*, are followed by the *accusative + infinitive*, to describe a *fact*. [See (392), ‘*mood in indirect discourse*.’]

The *infinitive* in *indirect discourse*, though representing a *finite verb* of *direct discourse*, does not admit of *number* and *person*.

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. Caesar dīcit lēgātūm dis- | <i>Caesar says that the ambassador</i> |
| cēdere, | <i>is departing [the ambassador</i> |
| | <i>to depart]</i> |
| 2. Labiēnus exīstimat hostīs | <i>Labienus thinks that the enemy</i> |
| discēdere, | <i>are departing [the enemy to</i> |
| | <i>depart]</i> |

The infinitive *discēdere*, with no form to distinguish *number*, has a *singular subject* in (1) and a *plural subject* in (2): before the accusative and infinitive supply (in translation) ‘*that*,’ for which the Latin *has no word* in the sense of the English idiom, and change the *accusative subject* to the *nominative*, making the *infinitive* a *finite (declarative)* verb.

3. Caesar vīdit lēgātōs pācēm *Caesar saw that the ambassadors were seeking peace*

Were seeking = petere, present infinitive. The time of the action of the verb *petere* is *present relative* to the *time* of the action of the verb *vīdit*; that is, the action (of seeking) was *going on* at the *time* when Caesar *saw* the ambassadors, hence the *present infinitive petere* represents time *relatively present* with respect to the *time* of the verb of seeing (*vīdit*) upon which it depends.

303.

VOCABULARY.

<i>opus, operis, neut.</i>	<i>work</i>
<i>interim, adv.</i>	<i>meanwhile</i>
<i>item, adv.</i>	<i>likewise</i>
<i>cursus, -ūs, mas.</i>	<i>speed</i>
<i>inter sē,</i>	<i>to one another</i>
<i>inter sē dare,</i>	<i>to exchange</i>
<i>opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>convenient</i>
<i>Labiēnus, -ī, mas.</i>	<i>Labienus</i>
<i>citerior, -ior, -ius, adj.</i>	<i>hither, nearer</i>
<i>superior, -ior, -ius, adj.</i>	<i>former, higher</i>
<i>ex superiōre locō,</i>	<i>from a higher place</i>

304.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Prīmā legiōne quam proximē cōnscripserat in castrīs relictā Caesar prō castrīs in aciē quīnque legiōnēs reliquās īstrūxit. 2. Caesar Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare audit. 3. Caesar, ubi hostēs in legiōnem prīmam impetum facere vīdit, ex castrīs exercitum omnem ēdūxit. 4. Galba, cum Belgās in fidem potestātemque populī Rōmānī sē suaque

omnia permettere vīdisset, iussit Gallōs (*accusative subject*) frūmentō commeātibusque Belgās iuvāre et in Ītaliā exercitum tōtūm redūxit. 5. Caesar sub monte altissimō proeliō locum dēlēgit, nē hostēs, cum aciem suam īstrūxisset, ab latere in legiōnēs Rōmānās impetum facere possent.

II.—1. The commander sees that the enemy are collecting all their bands into one place and are fortifying a camp. 2. When Caesar saw that the Germans were joining (*present*) themselves with these and were cutting off Galba's soldiers from supplies, he himself at once led his army thither. 3. While Caesar was collecting corn and supplies for the entire army, he saw that the Germans were leading (*present*) cavalry across the river. 4. When peace had been made, Caesar placed the legions in winter-quarters among the Belgians who were the bravest of all the Gauls.

LESSON LVIII.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE, CONTINUED.

305. Learn the remainder of the verb *eō* (486).

The perfect infinitive in indirect discourse.—The *perfect infinitive* shows time *absolutely past*, that is, time *completed* in the past.

The *present infinitive* denotes time *contemporaneous*, the *perfect infinitive* time *antecedent*.

1. Caesar cōgnōscit lēgātūm Caesār finds out that the ambassador has gone (action finished before he finds it out)
iiisse,

2. Caesar cōgnōvit hostīs dis-
cessisse, Caesar found out that the
enemy had departed (action
completed before he found it
out)

306. Subordinate clause in indirect discourse.—After verbs of *saying, thinking, hearing, etc.*, the verb of the principal clause is put in the infinitive, *that of the subordinate clause in the subjunctive.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Caesar intellegit Germānōs
exagitāre Belgās quī cis
Rhēnum incolant, | Caesar learns that the Germans
are harassing the Belgians
who live on this side of the
Rhine |
| 2. Explorātōrēs nūntiāvērunt
Sēquanōs quōs nostri
pepulissent cum omnibus
impedimentis discēdere, | Scouts announced that the
Sequani whom our men had
defeated were departing with
all their baggage |

In (1) **incolant** is present subjunctive, denoting time *contemporaneous relative to the time (tense) of intellegit*; see ‘rule of sequence’ (135). In (2) **pepulissent** (from *pellō*), the pluperfect, denotes time *antecedent (completed) with reference to the time (tense) of nūntiāvērunt*.

307.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 107–116 (450).

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj.	left
ab sinistrā parte;	on the left side
ipse, -a, -um, emphatic pron.	he, self
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum,	to cross
senātus, -ūs, mas.	senate
septimus, -a, -um, num. adj.	seventh

- 308. Adjectives ending in er.**—Adjectives in **er** form the *superlative* by adding **rimus** to the nominative singular masculine of the *positive*. The comparative is *regular*.

miser, -era, -erum,	miserior, -ior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
wretched		
ācer, ācris, ācre,	ācrior, -ior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
sharp		

309.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hostēs, ubi nostrōs proeliō equestrī ā dextrō cornū contendere vident, celeritāte māgnā in oppidum sē recipiunt atque oppidō undique mūnitō ad¹ impetum nostrōrum sustinendum parant. 2. Hīs rēbus ab explōrātōribus cōgnitīs aciēs triplex prō castrīs īstrūcta est et omnēs cōpiae nostrae ēductae sunt; sed, quod hostēs flūmen trānsire et in suōs fīnīs revertī (*were returning*) vīdit, Caesar in eōs impetum nōn fēcit ac cōpiās in castra redūxit. 3. Legiōne novā in citeriōre Galliā cōscriptā locō idōneō castrīs dēlēctō Caesar ipse cum secundā legiōne per agrōs Aeduōrum contendit et prō oppidō hostium cōpiās triplicē aciē īstrūxit.

II.—1. The chiefs of the Aedui will go into the territories of the Sequani to exchange hostages and cut off our men from supplies which² are being sent into our camp by the Remi. 2. After Caesar had seen (that) the enemy were leading a part of their forces across the bridge and were leaving a part on this side of the river, he determined to attack that part which had not yet crossed the river. 3. On account of the large number and the courage of the enemy the bravest soldiers are drawn up in the foremost (**prīmus**) line of battle by Caesar, in order that the enemy may not surround and take (**capiō**) our camp.

¹ Ad + gerundive, ‘to withstand.’

² Intermediate clause, subjunctive by *attraction*; see (276).

LESSON LIX.

RELATIVE OF PURPOSE. INDIRECT QUESTION.

310. Learn the entire passive of *faciō*, *I do or make* (493).

Principal parts :

<i>Active,</i>	<i>faciō</i>	<i>facere</i>	<i>fēcī</i>	<i>factum</i>
<i>Passive,</i>	<i>fīō</i>	<i>fieri</i>		<i>factus sum</i>

311. Relative clause of purpose.—When *qui* = *ut* is (*so that he*, etc.) or *ut eī* (*so that they*, etc.), the verb in the relative clause is put in the *subjunctive* to denote *affirmative purpose*. The antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the main clause.

1. *Mittunt lēgātūm qui pācem petat*,¹ *They send an ambassador to ask for peace*
2. *Lēgātī vēnērunt qui obsidēs dēderent*, *Ambassadors came to surrender hostages*

Apply ‘rule of sequence’ (135).

312.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 117–124 (450).

<i>cōspectus, -ūs, mas.</i>	<i>sight</i>
<i>littera, -ae, fem.</i>	<i>letter (of the alphabet)</i>
<i>litterae, -ārum, fem.</i>	<i>a letter, an epistle</i>
<i>tribūnus, -ī, mas.</i>	<i>tribune</i>
<i>dīversus, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>different, separate</i>
<i>commūnis, -is, -e, adj.</i>	<i>common</i>
<i>et . . . et, conj.</i>	<i>both . . . and</i>
<i>interior, -ior, -ius, adj.</i>	<i>interior</i>

¹ Who may—so that he may—ask for peace.

313. Indirect question.—See declension of *quis* (465). A *direct question* takes the *indicative*; as,

Quid (quae) hostēs gerunt? *What are the enemy doing?*

An *indirect question*, giving the interrogative (inquiry) in a dependent form, takes the *subjunctive*; as,

Caesar reperit quid (quae)	<i>Caesar finds out what the enemy hostēs gerant (sequence),</i>	<i>are doing</i>
Caesar repperit quid (quae)	<i>Caesar found out what the enemy hostēs gererent (sequence),</i>	<i>enemy were doing</i>
Caesar reperiet quid (quae)	<i>Caesar will find out what the enemy hostēs gesserint (sequence),</i>	<i>enemy did (have done)</i>
Caesar repperit quid (quae)	<i>Caesar found out what the enemy hostēs gessissent (sequence),</i>	<i>enemy did (had done)</i>

314. Adjectives in *ilis*.—Six adjectives in *ilis* form the *superlative* by adding **limus** to the stem stripped of its final vowel; they are: **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *hard*; **similis** and **dissimilis**, *like* and *unlike*; **gracilis**, *slender*; **humilis**, *low*. **Facilis** is thus compared:

facilis, -is, -e facilior, -ior, -ius facillimus, -a, -um

315.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Caesar hīs litterīs nūntiīsque commōtus est et in ceteriōre Galliā legiōnēs duās novās cōnscripsit atque Pedium lēgātūm, quī eās dēdūceret in interiōrem Galliam, mīsit. 2. Cum Caesar eō vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Belgīs sunt ad eum lēgātōs prīmōs cīvitātis mīsērunt, quī sē suaque omnia in fidem populī Rōmānī trādere ¹ dīcerent. 3. Lēgātī in nostra castra vēnērunt, quī sē cum Belgīs reliquīs nōn cōnsēnsisse parātōsque esse obsidēs dare et Caesaris imperāta facere dīcerent. 4. Caesar, cum per

¹ In the sense of future time, *would hand over*.

Rēmōrum fīnēs iter faceret, omnēs reliquōs Gallōs in armīs esse Germānōsque cum hīs coniūrāvisse audīvit.

II.—1. An attack will be made upon the Germans in the sight of Caesar and the entire army, unless they surrender¹ themselves and all their (possessions) to our commanders. 2. The baggage having been left in camp, Caesar at early dawn sent forward scouts to find out those (things) which were being done² in the enemies' camp. 3. When the scouts returned and announced that the enemy had moved their camp and were hastening out of Gaul, Caesar commanded the tribunes of the soldiers not to lead their (men) out of camp.

LESSON LX.

AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE.

316. Use and agreement of the perfect passive participle (p. p. p.).—A common Latin construction is the *perfect passive participle*, which is used in preference to *relative clauses* or *conjunctions + indicative* or *subjunctive*. The perfect passive participle often modifies the *subject* or *object*, agreeing with the same in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Dux commōtus discessit,
2. Nostrī hostēs circumventōs
 undique interfēcērunt, | <i>Having been alarmed (=because he was alarmed), the general withdrew</i>
<i>Our men killed the enemy surrounded (= who were surrounded or after they were surrounded) on all sides</i> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¹ Write in two *different* tenses, explaining the *time-relation*; see (223).

² *Intermediate clause*; see (276).

3. Caesār in aciē suās cōpiās
ē castrīs ēductās īstrū-
xit,
4. Hostēs (*nom.*) omnibūs hīs
rēbus adductī (*nom.*) ad
Caesarem lēgātōs mīsē-
runt,
- Caesar drew up in line of battle
his forces (who were, after
they were) led out of camp*
*Influenced (=because they were
influenced) by all these things,
the enemy sent ambassadors
to Caesar*

317.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 125–135 (450).

gēns, gentis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>tribe</i>
aestuārium, -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>marsh</i>
puerī, -ōrum, <i>mas.</i>	<i>children</i>
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>some</i>
frūmentārius, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> of corn	<i>of corn</i>
rēs frūmentāria,	<i>supply of corn</i>

318. Tenses of the infinitive mood in indirect discourse.
For further treatment of such infinitives, see (301, 302,
305).

1. Explōrātōrēs nūntiant hos-
tēs ad nostra castra iter
facere,
2. Caesar intellēxit Germānōs
Rhēnum trānsiisse,
3. Caesar crēdit legiōnēs suās
Gallōs victūrās esse,
4. Galba audīvit hostīs prīmā
lūce castra mōtūrōs esse,
- Scouts announce that the enemy
are marching towards our
camp*
*Caesar learned that the Germans
had crossed the Rhine*
*Caesar believes that his legions
will conquer the Gauls*
*Galba heard that the enemy
would break camp at early
dawn*

In (1) *iter facere* denotes action *going on at the time* of the action in *nūntiant*; in (2) *trānsiisse* denotes action *completed before the time* of the action in *intellēxit*; in (3) and (4) *victūrās* and *mōtūrōs esse* denote action *which is to occur in the future at a time subsequent to the time of the action in crēdit and audīvit*.

319.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānī trāns Rhēnum trāductī in interiōre Galliā cōnsēdērunt et agrōs lātissimōs possidēbant. 2. Hostēs Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdere iūssī,¹ quod sē nostrum exercitum sustinēre nōn posse vīdērunt, ex oppidō statim tēla armaque omnia trādidērunt. 3. Prīcipēs ad Caesarem ab cīvitāte mīssī² suam cīvitātem cum reliquīs Gallīs nōn cōnsēnsisse atque parātam³ esse et (*both*) obsidēs dare et in oppidīs eum accipere dīxērunt. 4. Hōc proeliō factō Caesar intellegit multās cīvitātēs liberōs prīcipūm obsidēs mīssūrās esse et exercituī nostrō frūmentum com-mētūsque datūrās esse. 5. Hīs rēbus commōtus Caesar cum parte septimae legiōnis eīsque cōpiīs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant in summum montem Labiēnum lēgātūm, quī hostium adventum exspectāret, praemīsit. 6. Caesar, cum vīdisset hostēs aciem īstruere nostrāsque mūnītiōnēs sine morā oppūgnātūrōs esse, lēgātōs legiōnēs distinēre, ut in hostēs undique impetum ūnō tempore facerent, iussit.

II.—1. Influenced by the power of Caesar, those states into whose boundaries the Roman army was preparing to march determined to seek peace and do the commands of the senate. 2. Alarmed by Caesar's arrival, the Belgians send ambassadors to say⁴ (that) they have collected corn and (que) supplies for our army and will surrender hostages. 3. When Caesar found out (that) the enemy had collected large forces and were marching into Italy, he immediately led all his legions out of camp.

¹ p. p. p. modifies **hostēs**, the *subject* of the sentence.

² Modifies the *subject* **prīcipēs**.

³ *Predicate adjective* limiting **cīvitātem**.

⁴ *Not infinitive* in Latin; note the *sequence*.

LESSON LXI.

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES.

320. Affirmative and negative purpose.—As previously stated, clauses denoting *affirmative purpose* take *ut + subjunctive*; clauses of *negative purpose*, *nē + subjunctive*.

1. Caesar *legiōnēs cōscrībit*, *Caesar enrolls the legions to ut Galliam vincat* (*affirmative purpose*), *conquer Gaul*
2. *Gallī māgnās cōpiās coēgē-* *The Gauls gathered large forces,* *runt, nē ā Caesare pelle-* *that they might not (lest they* *rentur* (*negative purpose*), *should) be defeated by Caesar*

The relative clause may denote *affirmative purpose* (311).

321. Affirmative and negative result.—Affirmative result is expressed by *ut + subjunctive*, negative result by *ut . . . nōn + subjunctive*.

1. *Nostrī tam fortiter pū-* *Our men fight so bravely that gnant, ut Gallōs expellant* (*affirmative result*), *(as a result) they drive out the Gauls*
2. *Nostrī in hostīs impetum tam āriter fēcērunt, ut sustinēre diūtius nōn pos-* *Our men made so fierce an at-* *tack upon the enemy, that they could not withstand any sent* (*negative result—note longer* the sequence),

322.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 136–146 (450).

<i>spīritus, -ūs, mas.</i>	<i>breath, (plur.) arrogance</i>
<i>etiam, adv.</i>	<i>even</i>
<i>māximē, adv.</i>	<i>especially or very much</i>
<i>memoria, -ae, fem.</i>	<i>memory</i>
<i>lātitūdō, -dinis, fem.</i>	<i>width</i>

323. Distinguish ablative absolute from participle agreeing with the subject or object.—1. The enemy, *defeated* in many battles, surrendered hostages. In this sentence taken literally, *defeated*, the *past participle passive*, modifying the *subject*, *enemy*, becomes *pulsī* (*p. p. p.*), *nominative plural*, agreeing with the *subject* *hostēs*, and the sentence is written: *Hostēs multīs proeliīs pulsī obsidēs dēdidērunt*. By converting the participle into a *relative clause*, ‘*who had been defeated*,’ it is seen that *defeated* limits and describes the *subject*, *enemy*. Change the sentence to this form: 2. The enemy having been defeated, Caesar demanded hostages. The phrase ‘*the enemy having been defeated*’ contains an idea equivalent to that expressed by a subordinate clause, such as, ‘*after* or *because* the enemy had been defeated,’ but the *noun* in such a phrase cannot be the *same* as the *subject* or *object* of the main sentence, is placed in the *ablative case* with the participle *in agreement with it*, and such a phrase, called the *Ablative Absolute*, modifies the verb.

324.**EXERCISE.**

1. Aeduī sibi tantōs spīritūs sūmēbant ut Caesar contrā eōs suum exercitum dūcere cōnstitueret. 2. Imperātōrēs nostrī tam multās cīvitātēs pepulērunt ut in Galliā māximē imperium Rōmānum amplificārent. 3. Germānī ā potentiōribus Rōmānīs multīs proeliīs repulsī sē ex Galliā cōpiās omnīs mīssisse nūntiāvērunt. 4. Omnibus suīs agrīs vāstātīs oppidīsque incēnsīs ut commeātibus exercitum nostrum prohibērent, hostēs in extrēmās Galliae partēs sē recēpērunt. 5. Turrēs tantae altitūdinis prō mūrīs oppidi ā nostrīs positae sunt ut oppidānī māximē commōtī sē nostrīs ducibus obsidēs datūrōs esse suaque omnia Caesarī trāditūrōs esse nūntiārent. 6. Hōc bellō in Galliā cōflectō omnēs nostraē cōpiae trāns Rhēnum

trāductae sunt atque impetus in rēgem potentissimum ibi ab omnibus legiōnibus factus est, quod etiam nostrā memoriā Rēmōs, populi Rōmānī amicōs, māximē vexāverat et oppida multa incenderat.

LESSON LXII.

DEONENT VERB, FIRST CONJUGATION.

325. The deponent verb *populor*, *I plunder*.—The deponent verb has *passive forms with active meanings*.

Principal parts: *populor populārī populātus sum*

Each tense is conjugated *exactly like* the corresponding tenses of *portō* in the *passive*. For conjugation of forms, see (494).

326. Synopsis of the present system.—*Present stem, populā.*

1. *populor*, *I plunder*
2. *populābar*, *was plundering*
3. *populābor*, *shall plunder*
4. *populer*, *may plunder*
5. *populärer*, *might plunder*
6. *populäre*, *plunder thou*
7. *populārī*, *to plunder*
8. *populandus*, *(worthy) to be plundered*

To these are added the *active forms*:

9. *populāns*, *plundering*
10. *populandī*, *of plundering*

327. Synopsis of the perfect system.—*Supine stem, populāt.*

1. *populātus, -a, -um sum*, *I plundered*
2. *populātus, -a, -um eram*, *had plundered*
3. *populātus, -a, -um erō*, *shall have plundered*
4. *populātus, -a, -um sim*, *may have plundered*
5. *populātus, -a, -um essem*, *might have plundered*
6. *populātum, -am, -um esse*, *to have plundered*
7. *populātus, -a, -um*, *having plundered*

To these are added *four active forms*:

8. *populātūm, to plunder*
9. *populātū, to plunder*
10. *populātūrus, -a, -um, being about to plunder*
11. *populātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to plunder*

328. The *future infinitive* *populātūm īrī*, corresponding to *amātūm īrī*, is not found in the deponent verb; in its place a form like the *future infinitive active* is used (see 11).

The deponent verb has *six active forms*, two based upon the *present stem* (see 9, 10, *present system*); four upon the *supine or perfect-participle stem* (see 8, 9, 10, 11, *perfect system*).

329.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 147–157 (450).

<i>cum prīmūm, conj.</i>	<i>as soon as</i>
<i>pābulum, -ī, neut.</i>	<i>fodder</i>
<i>negōtium, -ī, neut.</i>	<i>business</i>
<i>negōtium dare,</i>	<i>to employ</i>
<i>certus, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>certain</i>
<i>certiōrem facere,</i>	<i>to inform</i>

330. Use of *negōtium dare*, to employ.

Negōtium dare, *to employ*, takes the *indirect object* in the *dative*, denoting the person or persons employed. Like *imperō* and *mandō* it is followed by a *subjunctive clause* to denote what one is employed to do, the *subjunctive verb* being translated by the *present infinitive*; the rule of sequence prevails in the choice of tense.

1. *Explorātōribus negōtium dat, ut hostium cōnsilia cōgnōscant,* *He employs scouts to find out the plans of the enemy*
2. *Gallis negōtium dedit, ut pontem interscinderent,* *He employed the Gauls to cut down the bridge*

331.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. *Castrīs mūnītīs et rē frūmentāriā comparātā Caesar Sēquanīs negōtium dedit, ut in Belgārum fīnēs īrent atque ea*

quae hostēs facerent cōgnōserent. 2. Caesar, cum cōpiās in triplicī aciē prō castrīs īstrūxisset, omnēs suōs ut āriter in hostēs impetum faciant cohortātur et ipse sīgnō datō ā dextrō cornū proelium committit. 3. Hāc rē statim ab explōrātōribus cōgnitā omnibus cohortibus p̄mā lūce ēductis ac prō castrīs īstrūctis Caesar omnem equitātum, quī in novissimum agmen hostium impetum faceret, praemīsit, atque T. Labiēnum cum quīnque cohortibus subsequī iussit. 4. Proelium ā dextrō cornū tam āriter gestum est, ut equitātus¹ hostium sub monte īstrūctus p̄mō nostrōrum impetū² fugā salūtem peteret. 5. Cīvitātēs Rēmōrum et Aeduōrum multīs proeliīs repulsae³ ad Caesarem suōs p̄mōs, quī sibi pācem salūtemque peterent, mīsērunt.

II.—1. When this war was finished, Caesar ordered the remaining states to give a supply of corn to those forces for which he had chosen winter-quarters in Gaul. 2. Because the royal power (*plural of rēgnūm*) in Gaul was seized by the more powerful, who had many opportunities for inciting (*ad + gerundive*) men, Caesar led the army thither and ordered hostages to be sent to him. 3. Those whom Caesar employed to plunder the enemies' camp returned in about five days and announced (that) they had not been able to take the redoubts. 4. When scouts announced (that) the enemy were fortifying⁴ a camp and would not surrender⁵ hostages, Caesar directed his commanders to surround the camp on all sides.

¹ Nominative. ² At the first attack. ³ p. p. limiting cīvitātēs.

⁴ For mood and tense, see (318), 1.

⁵ See (318), 4.

332.

REVIEW VOCABULARY.

LESSONS XLI-LXII.

1. circiter (adv.), *about*
2. dē mediā nocte, *about midnight*
3. cum (conj.), *while or after*
4. post (prep. with the acc.), *after or behind*
5. paene (adv.), *almost*
6. īnsidiae, īnsidiārum, *ambush*
7. que, atque (conj.), *and*
8. aciēs, aciēī (fem.), *army or line of battle*
9. adventus, adventūs (mas.), *arrival*
10. perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, peruentum, *arrive (at)*
11. spīritus, spīritūs (mas.), *breath; (in the plur.) arrogance*
12. prīmā lūce, *at early dawn*
13. prīmō (adv.), *at first*
14. sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain*
15. auxilia, auxiliōrum (neut.), *auxiliaries*
16. proelium committere, *begin battle*
17. sē recipere, *betake one's self*
18. inter (prep. with the acc.), *between*
19. et . . . et (conj.), *both . . . and*
20. sagittārius, sagittārī (mas.), *bowman*
21. puerī, puerōrum (mas.), *children*
22. veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come*
23. commūnis, commūnis, commūne (adj.), *common*
24. fidēs, fideī (fem.), *confidence*
25. opportūnus, opportūna, opportūnum (adj.), *convenient*
26. concilium, concili (neut.), *council of war*
27. trānseō, trānsīre, trānsīvī or transiī, trānsitum, *cross*
28. cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis (fem.), *custom or habit*
29. diēs, diēī (mas.), *day*
30. pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive or defeat*
31. poscō, poscere, poposcī, [no supine], *demand*

32. *dīversus, dīversa, dīversum* (adj.), *different*
 33. *moneō, monēre, monūī, monitum*, *direct or advise*
 34. *repellō, repellere, repulī, repulsum*, *drive back*
 35. *aut . . . aut* (conj.), *either . . . or*
 36. *tōtus, tōta, tōtum* (adj.), *entire*
 37. *māximē* (adv.), *especially or very much*
 38. *etiam* (conj.), *even*
 39. *inter sē obsidēs dare*, *exchange hostages*
 40. *quīnque* (indeclin. num. adj.), *five*
 41. *longē* (adv.), *far*
 42. *vadum, vadī* (neut.), *ford*
 43. *superior, superior, superius* (adj.), *former or higher*
 44. *mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum*, *fortify*
 45. *ē superiōre locō*, *from a higher place*
 46. *eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum, go*
 47. *dēfēnsiō, dēfēnsiōnis* (fem.), *defence*
 48. *contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum*, *hasten*
 49. *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum*, *hear*
 50. *is, ea, id* (personal pron. third person), *he or that*
 51. *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* (intensive pron.), *he or self*
 52. *sē* (reflexive pron. third person), *himself or themselves*
 53. *impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītum*, *hinder*
 54. *citerior, citerior, citerius* (adj.), *hither*
 55. *spēs, speī* (fem.), *hope*
 56. *quantus, -a, -um* (adj.), *how great or how many*
 57. *prōtinus* (adv.), *immediately*
 58. *(in) proeliō equestrī*, *in a cavalry skirmish*
 59. *interior, interior, interius* (adj.), *interior*
 60. *quaerō, quaerere, quaeſīvī, quaeſītum*, *inquire*
 61. *coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum*, *join*
 62. *Labiēnus, Labiēnī* (mas.), *Labienus*
 63. *proximē* (adv.), *lately*
 64. *trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum*, *lead across*
 65. *sinister, sinistra, sinistrum* (adj.), *left*
 66. *littera, litterae* (fem.), *letter*
 67. *lēgātus, lēgātī* (mas.), *lieutenant*
 68. *lūx, lūcis* (fem.), *light*
 69. *expedītus, expedīta, expedītum* (adj.), *light-armed*

70. *item* (adv.), *likewise*
 71. *vulgō* (abl. as adv.), *commonly* or *generally*
 72. *iter, itineris* (neut.), *march*
 73. *iter facere*, *to march*
 74. *aestuārium, aestuārī* (neut.), *marsh*
 75. *interim* (adv.), *meanwhile*
 76. *memoria, memoriae* (fem.), *memory*
 77. *medius, media, medium* (adj.), *middle of*
 78. *propīnquitās, propīnquitātis* (fem.), *nearness*
 79. *neque . . . neque* (conj.), *neither . . . nor*
 80. *inde* (adv.), *after that, thence or then*
 81. *equester, equestris, equestre* (adj.), *of cavalry*
 82. *frūmentārius, frūmentāria, frūmentārium* (adj.), *of corn or grain*
 83. *ūnus, ūna, ūnum* (num. adj.), *one*
 84. *ā sinistrā parte*, *on the left side*
 85. *ā dextrō cornū*, *on the right wing*
 86. *in summō colle*, *on the top of the hill*
 87. *Pediūs, Pediū* (mas.), *Pediūs*
 88. *populor, populārī, populātus sum*, *plunder*
 89. *potēns, potēns, potēns* (adj.), *powerful*
 90. *celeriter* (adv.), *quickly*
 91. *dexter, dextra, dextrum* (adj.), *right*
 92. *senātus, senātūs* (mas.), *senate*
 93. *septimus, septima, septimum* (num. adj.), *seventh*
 94. *exiguitās, exiguitātis* (fem.), *shortness*
 95. *cōspectus, cōspectūs* (mas.), *sight*
 96. *funditor, funditōris* (mas.), *slinger*
 97. *nōnnūllus, -a, -um* (adj.), *some, (plur. as noun)*
 98. *cursus, cursūs* (mas.), *speed*
 99. *rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāiae* (fem.), *supply of corn or grain*
 100. *palūs, palūdis* (fem.), *swamp*
 101. *suus, sua, suum* (possessive adj. pron. third person),
 his or their, with reflexive force
 102. *tum* (adv.), *then*
 103. *rēs, reī* (fem.), *thing*
 104. *hīc, haec, hōc* (adj.), *this*

105. *eō* (adv.), *thither or there*
106. *ad sē*, *to him, to them* (reflexive)
107. *ad eum, ad eos*, *to him, to them* (not reflexive)
108. *summus, summa, summum* (adj.), *top of, highest*
109. *gēns, gentis* (fem.), *tribe*
110. *tribūnus, tribūnī* (mas.), *tribune*
111. *triplex, triplex, triplex* (adj.), *triple*
112. *duo, duae, duo, two*
113. *sub* (prep. with the *acc.* and *abl.*), *under*
114. *cōsentīō, cōsentīre, cōsēnsī, cōsēnsum, unite*
115. *nisi* (conj.), *unless*
116. *tumultus, tumultūs* (mas.), *uproar*
117. *lātitūdō, lātitūdinis* (fem.), *width*
118. *sēcum, with themselves or himself*
119. *ubi* (adv.), *where*
120. *opus, operis* (neut.), *work*
121. *vulnus, vulneris* (neut.), *wound*
122. *eōrum, eārum* (possessive pron. third person), *their,*
 without reflexive force: compare no. (101)

LESSON LXIII.

THE PHRASE CERTIÖREM FACERE, *TO INFORM.*

333. *Certiōrem, -ēs facere.*—When the verb *facere* (any form) is *active*, the adjective *certior* modifies the *direct object*; as,

1. Lēgātus Galbam certiōrem
facit, *The ambassador informs Galba*
[makes Galba more certain]
2. Caesar nūntiōs certiōrēs
fēcit, *Caesar informed the mes-*
sengers

As a verb of ‘*saying*,’ *certiōrem facere* is followed by the accusative and infinitive to describe a *fact*.

1. Caesar lēgātūm certiōrem
facit sē pācem factūrum
esse *Caesar informs the ambassador
that he will make peace*
2. Hostēs nostrōs tribūnōs cer-
tiōrēs fēcērunt sē suōs
fīnīs dēfēnsūrōs esse *The enemy informed our tri-
bunes that they would defend
their territories*

334.

VOCABULARY.

Review words 1–62 in 'review vocabulary' (332).

dē imprōvīsō	<i>unexpectedly</i>
regiō -ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>region</i>
diūtius, <i>adv.</i>	<i>longer</i>
passus -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	<i>pace</i>
longē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>far</i>
ad, apud, <i>prep.</i> with the <i>acc.</i>	<i>near</i>
paulisper, <i>adv.</i>	<i>for a little while</i>
quantus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>how great, how many</i>

335. **Conditionals. Less vivid future.**—In the *more vivid* future condition (223) the supposition of a future case is *positive* and *distinct*, the *apodosis* stating what *will be* the result; the mood in both clauses is *indicative*. In a *less vivid* future condition the supposition (in the *protasis*) is in suspense and is *less distinct*, the *apodosis* stating what *would be* the result: in both protasis and apodosis the *present* (rarely the *perfect*) *subjunctive* is used. The verb in the *protasis* is usually translated 'should' or 'were to,' that in the *apodosis* 'would.' Example of the *less vivid* future condition:

Caesar cīvitātem cōnservet, sī *Caesar would spare the state, if*
hostēs sē dēdant, *the enemy should surrender*

336.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Sī Germānī vīcōs agrōsque Aeduōrum populentur, Caesar in eōrum fīnīs omnibus cōpiīs iter faciat.

2. Cum Caesar eō dē imprōvisō pervenisset, explorātōrēs eum certiōrem fēcērunt hostēs (*accusative subject*) ē castris discessisse et in (*upon*) proximum montem omnēs cōpiās impedimentaque cōgere. 3. Sēquānī erant sōlī quibus Gallī negōtium dedērunt ut ex hīs regiōnibus cōpiās ēdūcerent atque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrārent. 4. Caesar dīxit sē hostēs cōservātūrum esse neque eōrum oppida dēlētūrum esse, quod prīmōs cīvitātis ad sē lēgātōs, quī peterent pācem, mīssissent (*mīssissent*, why *subjunctive?*). 5. Caesar ubi vīdit quantō in perīculō mīlitēs septimae legiōnis essent,¹ ipse ad eōs cum parte peditum fortissimōrum contendit.

II.—1. Scouts inform our leaders (that) the Aedui will conspire with the rest of the Gauls (*not genitive*) so as to² plunder those towns which have been left³ by our men. 2. Caesar will employ the chiefs of many states to collect fresh cavalry and choose places suitable for winter-quarters. 3. When these facts (*rēs*) had been found out,⁴ Caesar commanded his leaders not to lead their men⁵ out of camp on that day. 4. At early dawn Caesar drew up in line of battle all the legions, after they were led forth⁶ from camp.

LESSON LXIV.

COMPOUND VERBS WITH THE DATIVE.

337. Learn the deponent verb *vereor*, second conjugation (495).

Dative with compound verbs.—Many verbs compounded

¹ Were, see (313), ‘indirect question.’

² ‘So as to,’ etc. = *ut + subjunctive* denoting *affirmative purpose*.

³ Subjunctive by *attraction*, see (276).

⁴ Render clause by the *ablative absolute*.

⁵ ‘Their men’ = *suōs*: see (258).

⁶ ‘After they were led forth’—render by *one word* in Latin (p. p. p.).

with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, and super take the dative of the *indirect object*; if transitive, these verbs may take a *direct object* in the *accusative*.

Titūrius castellō (*dative*) **prae-** *erat* *Titurius was in command of the redoubt*

Praeficiō, *to place (one) in command of*, takes the *person placed in command* in the *accusative*.

Caesar novīs mūnītiōnibus Galbam praeficiet, *Caesar will place Galba in command of the new fortifications*

338. Certior factus, certiōrēs factī (*passive*).—When the form of facere is *passive*, certior agrees with the *subject of the verb*, and is placed in the *nominative*; as,

1. **Caesar per explorātōrēs certior fīebat** (*factus est*), *Caesar was informed by means of scouts*
2. **Lēgātī certiōrēs fīunt Caesarem pācem nōn fac- tūrum esse,** *The ambassadors are informed that Caesar will not make peace*

339.

VOCABULARY.

Review words 63–122 in ‘review vocabulary’ (332).

passus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>outstretched</i>
manus, -ūs, fem.	<i>hand</i>
plūrimum posse, {	<i>to be very powerful, or</i>
plūrimum valēre, {	<i>to have very great influence</i>
mīlle,¹ indeclin. num. adj.	<i>a thousand</i>
octō, indeclin. num. adj.	<i>eight</i>

340. Perfect participle of the deponent.—The Latin has no perfect *active* participle, but the perfect participle of a *deponent verb* has an *active* meaning; as,

¹ **Mīlle**, in the singular is an indeclinable numeral adjective. In the plural it is used and declined as a neuter substantive (459).

1. Caesar veritus īsidiās in castrīs suōs continuit, Having feared—fearing—an ambush, Caesar kept his men in camp
2. Hostēs paulisper ad Caesaris castra morātī sē in suōs fīnīs recēpērunt, Having delayed a little while near Caesar's camp, the enemy retreated into their own boundaries

If the verb is *not* a deponent, the clause containing the perfect active participle may be recast and expressed by the *ablative absolute* or by a *subordinate clause*. See (372).

341.

EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Hīs rēbus per¹ explōrātōrēs cōgnitīs equitātus, cui Caesar Labiēnum praefēcerat, ā dextrō cornū īstrūctus est atque sīgnō datō impetus in hostium aciēs ab omnibus nostrīs āriter factus est. 2. Item cum Caesar ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, hostēs ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre ab Rōmānīs pācēm petīvērunt. 3. Aeduī ab latere nostrōs peditēs fortissimōs circumvenīre cōnātī multīs vulneribus acceptīs pulsī sunt ac sē in cīvitātēs proximās recēpērunt. 4. Rēmī quī auxiliō ad nostra castra veniēbant hāc pūgnā nūntiātā coepērunt revertī in suōs fīnēs ē quibus ā Germānīs expulsī erant. 5. Caesar Sēquanīs nē per nostrām prōvinciam in Galliam iter faciant imperat atque sē eōs, sī cōnentur,² prohibitūrum esse nūntiat.

- II.—1. Scouts are sent forward to find out the plans of the enemy and to inform Caesar with respect to these things. 2. Galba directed the tribunes of the soldiers not to begin battle on the right wing, because he saw (that) the enemy had drawn up their bravest infantry in that place and had³

¹ per = by means of.

² If they try (to do so).

³ Pres. infin.

very great power there. 3. An attack will not be made, unless Caesar places Galba in command of the infantry of the first legion. 4. Having attempted to destroy our new fortifications, the brave forces of the enemy were quickly driven back and some, surrounded by our cavalry, were brought (*addūcō*) to Caesar.

LESSON LXV.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE OR TIME.

342. Learn *ūtor*, *I use*, deponent of the third conjugation (496).

Accusative of extent in space or time.—Extent in space and duration of time are expressed by the *accusative without a preposition*; as,

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Caesar ab oppidō duo mīlia passuum cōsēdit, | <i>Caesar encamped two thousands of paces (two miles) from the town</i> |
| 2. Hostēs cis Rhēnum multōs diēs morābantur, | <i>The enemy delayed many days on this side of the Rhine</i> |

343. **Verbs of fearing.**—Verbs of fearing are followed by a *subjunctive* clause introduced by *nē* = *that* or *lest* and *ut* = *that not*. Note *sequence of tense* in the following:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Hostēs verentur nē Caesar ad eōs suum exercitum addūcat, | <i>The enemy fear that Caesar will lead his army against them</i> |
| 2. Caesar verēbātur ut Aeduī sustinēre Germānōs possent | <i>Caesar feared that the Aedui would not be able to withstand the Germans</i> |

344.

VOCABULARY.

Irregular verbs 1–8 (452).

<i>parvulus</i> , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>slight</i>
<i>excursiō</i> , -ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>sally</i>
<i>crēber</i> , -bra, -brum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>frequent</i>
<i>vadum</i> , -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>ford</i>
<i>tegimentum</i> , -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>covering</i>
<i>necessārius</i> , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>necessary</i>
<i>decimus</i> , -a, -um, <i>num. adj.</i>	<i>tenth</i>
<i>vesper</i> , -peri, <i>mas.</i>	<i>evening</i>
<i>sub vesperum</i>	<i>towards evening</i>
<i>magistrātus</i> , -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	<i>officer</i>

345. Construction with *persuādeō*, *I persuade*.—*Per-*
suādeō takes its object in the *dative* (like *imperō* and
mandō) and is followed by an *ut* or *nē* clause, translated
by an *infinitive*. Note *sequence* in the following:

1. *Belgae Gallīs reliquīs ut coniūrent contrā populum Rōmānum persuādent,* *The Belgians persuade the remaining Gauls to conspire against the Roman people*
2. *Caesar Rēmīs persuāsit nē Senōnibus auxilium darent,* *Caesar persuaded the Remi not to give aid to the Senones*

346.

EXERCISE.

1. Cum Caesar ab potentissimō Rēmōrum oppidō octō mīlia passuum abesset, lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt, quī pācem peterent obsidēsque trāderent. 2. Caesar, cum auxiliis Q. Titūrium praefēcisset, suō mōre ē castrīs expeditōs mīlitēs ēdūxit. 3. Cum prīma legiō pervēnisset ac castra mūnīre coepisset atque legiōnēs reliquae circiter duo mīlia passuum abessent, hostēs triplicī aciē īstrūctā māgnō cum tumultū ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs accessērunt. 4. Aeduī

adventū nostrōrum commōtī māgnō exercitū coāctō mīscērunt ad Caesarem lēgātōs, quī sē neque obsidēs datūrōs neque ab eō (*of him*) pācem petītūrōs esse nūntiārent. 5. Hostēs vadīs ibi repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui Q. Titūrius lēgātus praeerat expūgnārent. 6. Nostrī oppidum expūgnāre cōnātī, quod audīvērunt facilem adītum habēre, ad mūrōs oppidī accēdere propter aestuāria palūdēsque nōn poterant. 7. Caesar amīcitiae causā sē in fidem eōs receptūrum et cōservātūrum esse dīxit; sed quod erat cīvitās māgnā¹ inter Belgās auctōritāte atque multitūdine hominum plūrimū valēbat, multōs obsidēs poposcit: hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidīs collātīs (*from conferō*) Caesar ab eō locō in fīnis Suessiōnum quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt pervēnit.

LESSON LXVI.

VERBS OF COMMANDING. CAUSAL CUM.

347. Learn *potior* (497).

Use of *cohortor*, *I urge, encourage*.—Cohortor takes the accusative of direct object and an *ut or nē clause*; as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Caesar suōs cohortātūr ut
fortiter impetum hostium
sustineant,
2. Caesar suōs cohortātūs nē
animō perturbārentur sī-
gnum proelī dedit, | <i>Caesar encourages his men to
 withstand bravely the enemies'
 attack</i>
<i>Having urged his men not to
 become discouraged at heart,
 Caesar gave the signal for
 battle</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¹ māgnā auctōritāte = *of great influence*; see (376), ‘*ablative of quality*’ and example.

348. Dative with special verbs.—Most verbs signifying to *yield* and *resist*, *bid* and *forbid*, *please* and *displease*, *desire*, *favor*, *trust*, *persuade*, *obey*, *command*, *serve*, *envy*, *harm*, *threaten*, and *pardon*, apparently transitive in English, are *intransitive in Latin* and take an *indirect object in the dative*; so with many phrases having similar meanings.

As previously stated in exercises, *imperō*, *mandō*, and *persuādeō* take the *dative* and an *ut* or a *nē clause*; *iubeō*, the *accusative and infinitive*; *cohortor*, the *accusative and an ut or a nē clause*.

349.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 9–16 (452).

<i>mercātor, -ōris, mas.</i>	<i>merchant</i>
<i>condiciō, -ōnis, fem.</i>	<i>terms</i>
<i>captīvus, -ī, mas.</i>	<i>captive</i>
<i>centuriō, -ōnis, mas.</i>	<i>centurion</i>
<i>complūrēs, -rēs, -r(i)a, adj.</i>	<i>very many</i>
<i>iniūria, -ae, fem.</i>	<i>injury</i>
<i>dēfēnsor, -ōris, mas.</i>	<i>defender</i>
<i>ita . . . utī, adverbs</i>	<i>thus, accordingly . . . as</i>
<i>suprā, adv.</i>	<i>above</i>

350. Causal and concessive *cum*.—*Cum* meaning *since* or *although* takes the *subjunctive*: choice of *tense* is regulated by the *rule of sequence*.

Causal cum:

Caesar *cum hostēs trānsīre flūmen cōnārentur* (*time contemporaneous*), *imperāvit suīs ut pontem interscinderent*,

Since the enemy were attempting to cross the river, Caesar commanded his men to cut down the bridge

Concessive cum:

Cum legiōnēs Rōmānae fortissimae sint, Gallī nōn dubitābunt cum eīs proelium committere,

Although the Roman legions are very brave, the Gauls will not hesitate to begin battle with them

351.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostrī hostēs in flūmine impeditōs (*modifies hostēs*) aggressī māgnūm eōrum numerū interfēcērunt.
 2. Caesar id oppidum quod sine dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat oppūgnāre cōnātus propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinē expūgnāre nōn potuit. 3. Caesar, quod verētur nē cīvitātēs Galliae contrā sē coniūrent, suōs imperātōrēs certiōrēs facit sē pīmā lūce castra mōtūrum et eō iter factūrum esse. 4. Conciliō commūnī convocātō Germānī exercitūs nostrī adventum veritī pontem interscindere cōstituērunt, nē nostrī in suōs fīnīs trādūcerentur. 5. Gallī, cum verērentur nē Caesar in Galliam omnīs legiōnēs dūceret, fīnitimīs persuādēre cōnātī sunt, nē exercituī Rōmānō frūmentum aut commeātūs darent.

II.—1. Our men killed the foremost who had crossed after they had been surrounded¹ by the cavalry. 2. When the matter had been investigated² by means³ of scouts at early dawn, Caesar sent forward all the cavalry to delay⁴ the rear of the enemy. 3. Fearing (having feared) that they could not withstand the attack of our men, the enemy, after burning⁵ all their towns and villages, retreated into the territories next to the Germans. 4. Since his infantry could not approach the enemy's camp on account of swamps, Caesar sent forward scouts to find out the plans of the enemy and to inform him with respect to those matters.

¹ Render the entire clause by one Latin word.

² *Ablative absolute.*

³ *per + acc.*

⁴ *Deponent.*

⁵ Recast in the passive, *having been burned.*

LESSON LXVII.

DOUBLE DATIVE. AFFIRMATIVE PURPOSE.

352. Learn the active voice of *ferō*, *I bear* (490).

Double dative.—A dative of *purpose*, *end*, or *service* often accompanies the dative of the *person* or *thing interested* or *concerned*; as,

1. *Haec ūsuī nostrīs sunt*, *These things are useful (for a use) to our men*

Here *ūsuī* is the *dative of purpose, end, or service*, *nostrīs* the *dative of the persons interested*.

2. *Caesar subsidiō nostrīs de-* *Cæsar sent the tenth legion as a
cimam legiōnem mīsit*, *help (for a help) to our men*

353. Deponent verbs governing the ablative.—The following deponent verbs take the *ablative*: *ūtor*, *to use*; *abūtor*, *misuse*; *fruor*, *enjoy*; *fungor*, *perform*; *potior*, *capture*; *vescor*, *eat*.

*Labiēnus impedimentīs hosti-
um potītus in castra suōs
redūxit*, *Having captured the enemies'
baggage, Labienus led his men
back into camp*

354.**VOCABULARY.**

Verbs 17–26 (452).

<i>deinde</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>then</i>
<i>rūrsus</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>again</i>
<i>nōn modo</i>	<i>not only</i>
<i>sed etiam</i>	<i>but also</i>
<i>īsigne</i> , <i>-is</i> , <i>neut.</i>	<i>badge</i>
<i>minus</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>less</i>
<i>minus facile</i>	<i>less easily</i>
<i>posteā</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>afterwards</i>
<i>ūsus</i> , <i>-ūs</i> , <i>mas.</i>	<i>use</i>

355. How to express affirmative purpose.—1. *Ut + subjunctive.* 2. *Qui + subjunctive.* 3. *Ad + gerundive,* agreeing with a noun in the *accusative.* 4. *First supine,* with verbs of motion.

Example of *ad + gerundive*:

Hostēs ad suōs fīnēs dēfendēn- *The enemy assemble to defend*
dōs conveniunt, *their territories*

First supine:

Caesar vēnit postulātum ob- *Caesar came to demand hos-*
sidēs, *tages*

356.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Duābus legiōnibus praesidiō castrīs (*dat.*) relictīs Caesar reliquās, quae in hostium cōpiās impetum facerent, praemīsit. 2. Temporis fuit tanta brevitās hostiumque animus ad dīmicandum tam parātus, ut nō modo ad īsignia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīisque (*from their shields*) tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus deesset. 3. Caesar mīlitēs (*acc. obj.*) cohortātus ut suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent, quod hostēs nōn longē aberant, proelī committendī sīgnū dedit. 4. In alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus (*from proficīscor*) Caesar intellēxit fortissimōs mīlitēs secundae legiōnis vīribus (*from vīs*) redintegrātīs in prīmā aciē fortiter pūgnāre. 5. Duābus cohortibus in castrīs relictīs praesidiō impedīmentīs Caesar cum equitātū omnī prīmā lūce profectus in fīnēs Aeduōrum quōrum agrōs Germānī populābantur dē imprōvīsō pervēnit.

II.—1. Since¹ the enemy feared (*imperf. subjunc.*) that their infantry might be defeated by our men, they ordered their commanders to close all the gates and restrain their soldiers from battle. 2. Dumnorix employed scouts to go

¹ Order: ‘*the enemy, since,’ etc.*

(imperf. *subjunc.*) to the nearest states and inform the chiefs that Caesar was collecting large bands and would march into their territories on the next day. 3. While our infantry were making an attack upon the enemy's forces on the opposite hill, Caesar ran down to the river with slingers and (*que*) bowmen and drove back those who were trying¹ to cross.

LESSON LXVIII.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION.

357. Learn *ferō* in the passive (491).

Dative of possession.—The *dative* is used with forms of *sum* to denote possession. Instead of saying ‘*the boy has a horse*’ the Romans frequently expressed the idea thus: ‘*a horse is to the boy*,’ *equus est puerō*. The *thing possessed* is put in the *nominative* (*accusative* in *indirect discourse*), and the *possessor* in the *dative*.

Proelium cum hostibus erit Our men will have a battle
nostrīs, with the enemy

Which word denotes the *thing possessed*, which the *possessor*? Observe that the forms of *sum* are translated by the *corresponding tenses of the verb ‘have’*.

358. Temporal clauses with the indicative.—*Ubi* and *postquam*, *when*; *ut*, *when or as*; *ut semel*, *as soon as*; *simulac*, *simulatque*, *as soon as*, usually take the *perfect or historical present in the indicative* (203).

359. Cum clauses.—*Cum temporal*, *when*, takes the *indicative* (like *ubi*, etc.) merely to *define the time of the action*.

Cum historical, *when* (in the sense of ‘*while*’), takes the

¹ Render ‘*who were trying*’ by the *present participle*.

imperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances of the action.

Cum historical, when (in the sense of ‘*after*’), takes the *pluperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances of the action.*

Cum causal, since, takes the *subjunctive, all tenses.*

Cum concessive, although, takes the *subjunctive, all tenses.*

360.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Quod oppidō sunt altissimī mūrī, Caesar ad oppidum multōs diēs morābitur et commeātibus oppidānōs prohibēre cōnābitur. 2. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nūllī (*possession*). 3. Eō (*adverb*) dē mediā nocte Caesar servīs¹ ducibus (*apposition*) ūsus (*participle*) sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō oppidānīs mīsit. 4. Prīmō adventū exercitū nostrī hostēs crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant² parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vallō māgnō crēbrīisque castellīs mūnitī in oppidō sē continēbant. 5. Ibi vadīs repertī partem suārum cōpiārum trāns flūmen trāducere cōnātī, ut castellum cui praeesset³ Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent, omnēs hostēs ā nostrō equitātū circumventī (*participle*) interficiēbantur.

II.—1. Having feared an ambush, Caesar decided to keep all of his infantry⁴ and cavalry in camp. 2. The enemy were informed by scouts that Caesar’s army was advancing towards their camp and was then about five thousand paces distant. 3. Having set out from camp in the second watch, Caesar hastened with the auxiliaries, which were of great use to our men, and cut down the bridge

¹ Ablative object of ūsus; see (353).

² Kept making; [see (101), meanings of the imperfect.]

³ See (276).

⁴ Not genitive.

that the enemy might not be able to cross the river.
 4. Since the Belgians are attempting to drive Galba's men out of winter-quarters, Caesar will command Titurius to march into their borders at once with two new legions.

LESSON LXIX.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

361. Periphrastic conjugation.—Learn the periphrastic conjugation of *amō*, both voices (498, 499).

The *active periphrastic* is formed by annexing parts of *sum* to the *future participle*, and is used to express what is likely—is going—to happen; as,

1. **Caesar hīs in regiōnibus** *Caesar is going to wage war in these regions*
bellum gestūrus est,
2. **Hostēs impetum factūrī** *The enemy were about to make an attack upon our men*
erant in nostrōs,

The *passive periphrastic* is composed of the *gerundive* and parts of *sum*, and implies *obligation* or *necessity*; as,

1. **Karthāgō dēlenda est,** *Carthage must be (has to be, ought to be) destroyed*
2. **Omnia ūnō tempore facienda** *All things had to be done at one time*
erant,

362. Dative of personal agent.—The *dative* is used with the *gerundive* (*periphrastic passive*) to denote the *personal agent*; as, *hōc faciendum est mihi*, (literally) *this must be done by me*; it is better to recast the English sentence in the *active voice*, changing the *personal agent* to the *nominative subject*; thus, ‘I must do this.’ The idea of *necessity*, *duty*, or *obligation*, conveyed usually in English in the *active voice*, is expressed by the Latin *periphrastic passive* with the *agent* in the *dative*.

363. Examples of the periphrastic verb. (See Caesar's text, Book II, Chapter XX.)

1. **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda,** *Caesar had to attend to everything at one time*
2. (Again in line 3:) **Caesarī ab opere revocandī (erant) mīlitēs,** *Caesar had to recall the soldiers from their work*
3. (Chapter XVII, last sentence—see text.) *Since the advance (march) of our column was checked (would be checked) by these circumstances, the Nervii concluded that they (sibi) ought not to disregard the advice [literally, that the advice ought not to be disregarded (**omittendum esse**, indirect discourse) by them]*

364. Ablative absolute.—The *ablative absolute* may be expressed by (1) a *noun* or *pronoun* and the *perfect passive participle*, as given in (287); (2) by a *noun* and an *adjective*; as, **locō idōneō**, *since the place was suitable*; (3) by a *noun* and the *present participle*; as, **nostrīs pūgnāntibus**, *while or although our men were fighting*; (4) by two *nouns*; as, **duce Caesare**, *under Caesar's leadership* (literally, *Caesar being the leader*).

365. Impersonal verbs.—These are so called because they do not have a person for their subject, the word *it* being used as subject in the translation.

Examples of the *impersonal verb* in the *passive, third singular*:

1. **Āriter eō locō pūgnātum est,** *A fierce battle occurred in that place (literally, it was fought fiercely, etc.)*
2. **Hostēs, ad quōs ventum erat, cōstitērunt,** *The enemy, whom we (they) overtook, halted (literally, the enemy to whom it had been come, etc.)*
3. **Eō ex proximīs castellīs celeriter concursum est,** *(Our men) rushed thither quickly from the nearest redoubts (it was rushed thither, etc.)*

366.

EXERCISES.

I.—1. Sēquani, quod Caesarem cum exercitū ad sē iter facere audiēbant, omne frūmentum praeter (*except*) id quod sēcum portātūrī erant incendērunt et ex suīs fīnibus discessērunt. 2. Caesar vult (*wishes*) manūs hostium distinērī nē cum tantā multitūdine sibi ūnō tempore cōfligendum sit (*impersonal*). 3. Ubi neutrī (*nom. plur.*) flūminis trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre' equitum proeliō¹ nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. 4. Oppidum oppūgnārē cōnātus quod vacuum ab defēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucis dēfendantibus² expūgnārē nōn potuit. 5. Caesar equitātū praemīsō omnibus cōpiis subsequēbātur et, quod ad hostēs appropīnquābat, suā cōsuētūdine ipse sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocāvit atque duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praeſidiōque impedimentis erant.

II.—1. Greatly alarmed³ by the approach of our army, the Suessiones sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask for⁴ peace. 2. Caesar placed Galba in command of (those) forces which had been sent⁵ to him by the Aedui and he himself, after encouraging⁶ his men, drew up a triple line of battle. 3. After the enemy's camp had been burned and their army routed, Caesar concluded that he ought⁷ to demand many hostages.

¹ See *ablative absolute*, example (2).

² See *ablative absolute* (3).

³ Modifies the subject.

⁴ See (355), 'how to express purpose.'

⁵ Not *relative clause*, but *p. p. p.*

⁶ = 'having encouraged.'

⁷ See 'dative of agent,' example (3)—literally 'that many hostages ought to be demanded by him.'

LESSON LXX.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AS AN INTRODUCTORY WORD.

367. Learn the verb *volō*, *I wish* (487).

Learn the comparison of ‘irregular adjectives and adverbs’ (472, 473).

Relative as a connective.—Frequently in Latin independent sentences are connected by the *relative*, which is usually translated by a conjunction (*and*, *now*, etc.) + a *demonstrative pronoun*; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Quae omnia ab his dili-
genter ad diem facta
sunt (<i>Caesar</i> , Book II,
chapt. v, line 3), | <i>Now all these things were done
by the latter carefully to the
day</i> |
| 2. Qui cum sē suaque omnia
in oppidum Bratuspan-
tium contulissent (chapt.
xiii, line 4), | <i>Now after they (those) had taken
refuge with all their posses-
sions in the town of Bratus-
pantium</i> |
| 3. Cūius adventū spē illatā
(from īferō) mīlitibus
... paulum hostium im-
petus tardātus est (chapt.
xxv, last sentence), | <i>And hope being inspired in the
soldiers on account of his
arrival (the arrival of that
one), the charge of the enemy
was checked a little</i> |

368. **Relative of cause or concession.**—When *qui* = *cum* *is*, *cum eī* (*since* or *although he, they*), expressing *cause* or *concession*, the verb in the relative clause is in the *subjunctive*; as,

Aduatuci dixérunt: nōn exīsti-
māre Rōmānōs sine ope
dīvīnā bellum gerere, qui
tantās māchinātiōnēs prō-
movēre possent,

*The Aduatuci said they did not
think the Romans waged war
without divine assistance,
since (causal *qui*) they could
move forward such machines
of war*

In the *direct discourse* this relative clause takes the *subjunctive*.

369. Ablative with the comparative.—The comparative degree is followed by the *ablative*, signifying *than*; as,
Rōmānī erant fortiorēs Gallīs, *The Romans were braver than the Gauls*

The comparative may be followed by **quam**, ‘*than*,’ the following noun taking the case required by the context. After **minus**, **amplius**, and the like, **quam** is often omitted without affecting the construction.

370. Verbs of hindering.—Verbs of *hindering*, *preventing*, and the like, *when negated*, are followed by **quīn** or **quōminus** and the *subjunctive*; by **nē** (sometimes **quōminus**) *when not negated*. **Prohibēre** usually has *accusative + infinitive*. **quīn**, etc. + *subjunctive* may be translated by ‘*from*’ and the *gerund* (ending in ‘*ing*’); as,

Nōn poterant dēterrēre Aeduōs *They were not able to prevent quīn cum Belgīs cōsentīrent* *the Aedui from conspiring with the Belgians*

371.

EXERCISE.

- When Caesar learned that all the states had been subdued, he decided to place his men in winter-quarters: [translate *when* by **ubi** or **cum** with attention to mood of *learned*—see (203, 358, 359)—and explain *difference in meaning*.]
- Unless Caesar sends help to the Remi, they will not be able to hold out against the Gauls: [write ‘*sends*’ in *two tenses*, see (223), and explain relation of the *time of its action* to the *time of the action of the principal verb ‘will not be able.’*]
- If the enemy should attempt to cross, our men would attack (*aggredior*) and drive them back: [see (335).]
- The enemy fear that Caesar will not accept hostages. Caesar feared that the enemy would capture (*potior*) Galba’s

camp: ['*verbs of fearing*,' see (343); for case of the *object* of *potior*, see (353).] 5. Since the Roman soldiers excel (*praestō*) all in courage, they will easily conquer many tribes: [*cum*, 'since,' see (350); 'all,' for use and meaning of, see (258); for its *case*, see (337).]

LESSON LXXI.

ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

372. Learn the verb *nōlō*, *I am unwilling* (488).

Substitutions for the perfect active participle.—In place of the *perfect active participle* (lacking in Latin) the *perfect participle of a deponent verb* may be used (340); in case the Latin verb is *not a deponent*, the participial clause must be *recast* in the *passive* and expressed by the *Ablative Absolute*; thus, *having killed a large number of the enemy the cavalry retreated into camp*. Since *interficiō* is *not a deponent*, recast in the *passive*: '*a large number . . . having been killed*,' etc.; *māgnō hostium numerō interfectō nostrī in castra sē recēpērunt*.

The ablative absolute may be translated like a *subordinate clause* introduced by *cum*, *quod*, *ubi*, etc.; as, *cum māgnus hostium numerus interfectus esset, nostri in castra sē recēpērunt*, *when (after) a large number . . . had been killed*, etc.

373. Relative pronoun agreeing with a predicate word.—Sometimes the relative agrees with the *predicate noun in its own clause* instead of its *antecedent*; as,

Rōma quod est caput¹ Italiae, Rome which is the capital of Italy

374. Adverbial accusative.—A neuter pronoun or adjective is often used in the accusative with an adverbial force;

¹ **Caput**, genitive **capitis**, literally 'head,' is a *neuter noun of the third declension*.

as, *quid possum*, *what can I?* *what power or strength do I possess?* *hōc tē moneō*. *I give you this advice.*

375. Perfect participle passive with *habeō* or *teneō*.—The p. p. p. (with *habeō* or *teneō*) modifying a noun in a predicate sense denotes *the continued effect of the action of its verb* and is translated with an *active meaning*; as, **Caesar habuit māgnum exercitum coāctum**, *Caesar had a large army all collected.* Here *habuit coāctum* almost equals *coēgerat*.

376. Ablative of quality.—*Quality* is expressed by the *ablative* accompanied by an adjective; this is often called the ‘*Descriptive Ablative*.’ **Vir, homō**, or some such word is sometimes to be supplied with this ablative: **est māgnā auctōritāte**, *he is (a man) of great influence.*

377.

EXERCISE.

1. The chiefs knew how great a calamity they had brought upon their state: [‘*had brought*’; see (313) for mood of ‘*indirect question*’; see (337) for the case of ‘*state*.’]
2. Caesar informs the Gauls that he will not make war upon those states that give hostages: [‘*informs*, *certiōrem facere*, see (333); ‘*will make*,’ see (318), *example 3*; ‘*give*,’ see (276), ‘*intermediate clauses in indirect discourse*.’]
3. The enemy came to Caesar to excuse (*excūsō*) themselves: [write the purpose clause in *four ways* as given in (355)].
4. Although the Germans were departing from (*ex*) Gaul, Caesar decided that he ought to check (*impediō*) their departure: [‘*although*,’ concessive *cum*, see (350); ‘*that he ought*,’ see (362, 363), ‘*dative of personal agent*,’ and *example (3) of periphrastic verb*.]
5. The Belgians will persuade the Germans to cross the Rhine: [*persuādeō*, see (345).]

LESSON LXXII.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE. ABLATIVE WITH **OPUS**
AND **ŪSUS**.

378. Learn *mālō*, *I prefer* (489).

Partitive genitive.—Words denoting a *part* are followed by a *genitive of the whole* from which the part is taken; as, *nihil vīnī*, *no wine (nothing of wine)*. *Exceptions:* Cardinal numerals (one, two, three, etc.) regularly take ē (*ex*) or dē + ablative instead of the *partitive genitive*; so usually *quidam (certain)*; as, *ūnus ex iīs*, *one of those*; *quidam ex militib⁹s*, *certain (some) of the soldiers*.

379. **Ablative with *opus* and *ūsus*.**—*Opus* and *ūsus*, meaning *need*, take the *ablative* of the *thing needed* or *wanted* and the *dative* of the *person who needs*; as, *mihi est opus virtūte*, *I have need of courage*. *Opus* is sometimes in the *predicate* with the *thing needed* as *nominative subject*: *sī quid opus est*, *if there is any need*.

380. **Persuādeō in the passive construction.**—Intransitive verbs governing the *dative* (see 348) are used *impersonally* in the *passive* and *retain the dative*. The *dative* of the *active* does *not* become the *subject of the passive*; as,

Active:

Hīs (dative) *persuādēre* nōn *They could not persuade these*
poterant, *(people)*

Passive:

Hīs (dative) *persuādērī* (pas- *These (people) could not be per-*
sive) nōn poterat,¹ *suaed*

381. **Perfect participle passive translated as a finite (co-ordinate) verb.**—The p. p. p. limiting and describing a

¹ Literally, *it was not able to be (could not be) persuaded—made sweet—to these.*

noun is often used in Latin, where English would make use of a *co-ordinate verb*; as,

Caesar suās cōpiās ē castrīs ēductās īstrūxit, *Caesar led his forces out of camp and drew them up (in battle array)*

Nostrī hostēs circumventōs interfēcerunt,¹ *Our men surrounded and killed the enemy*

382. Substitution for the future infinitive.—The *future infinitive* in supineless verbs and usually in the *passive voice* of any verb is expressed by the periphrasis *futūrum esse* (or *fore*) *ut + subjunctive*. This periphrasis is sometimes used in the *active voice* of a regular verb. When the sentence *Caesar said that he would demand hostages* is written in Latin, ‘*would demand*’ is placed in the *infinitive* according to the rule of *indirect discourse*, since it depends upon ‘*said*’; but *poscō*, which has no supine, lacks the *future infinitive*. The sentence, therefore, must be turned thus: *Caesar said it would be that he would demand hostages*.

In the following sentences notice carefully *sequence of tenses* in the periphrases:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Caesar dīxit futūrum esse ut obsidēs posceret, | <i>Caesar said it would be that he would demand hostages</i> |
| 2. Caesar exīstimat futūrum esse ut hostēs vincantur, | <i>Caesar thinks the enemy will be conquered</i> |
| 3. Dīxērunt futūrum esse ut reliquae legiōnēs contrā cōsistere nōn audērent, | <i>They declared that the rest of the legions would not dare to stand against them</i> |

383.

EXERCISE.

- Having delayed near the town a few days and (*omit*) having destroyed many fortifications, Caesar decided to lead his army against the Bellovaci: [‘*having delayed*,’ see (340); ‘*having destroyed*,’ see (372).] 2. The Nervii who

¹ See (316), ‘use and agreement of participle,’ example 2.

had been sent as an aid to Caesar could not be deterred by the Gauls from marching into Italy: ['*who had been sent*', render by one Latin word (p. p. p.), see (316); '*as an aid*', = *for an aid*, see (352); '*from marching*', see (370).] 3. Because Caesar kept hearing that the enemy's forces had been collected and were coming towards him, he decided that he ought to begin battle on the next day: [Order: '*Caesar because he kept*', etc.; '*had been collected*', render by the p. p. p., see (381), and omit '*and*'; '*he ought to begin*', recast in the passive, see (362) and (363), example 3.]

LESSON LXXIII.

RELATIVE CLAUSE OF RESULT.

384. Review words 1–42 (399).

The ablative *quō* (= *ut eō*) with the comparative. — The ablative *quō* (*ut eō, so that thereby, by it*) is used to introduce *purpose clauses containing a comparative*; as,

Tenerīs arbōribus incīsīs atque
īflexīs, quō facilius fīnitimōrum
equitātum impedīrent, (see chapt. xvii, line 16,)

Young trees being notched and
bent down so that they could
thereby (by it) more easily
check the cavalry of their
neighbours

Caesar manipulōs laxāre ius-
sit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī
possent, (chapt. xxv, *ad finem*,)

Caesar ordered them to open
out their ranks so as to handle
their swords with better effect

385. How to express 'ought' or 'must.'

I ought to do this may be rendered:

1. By *dēbeō* + *infinitive*: *hōc facere dēbeō*.
2. By *oportet* (*impersonal verb*): (a) With *accusative* + *infinitive*: *mē hōc facere oportet*; ['*it behooves me to do this*.'] (b) With *subjunctive*: *hōc faciam oportet*; [note *sequence*; compare (c) below.]

3. By *gerundive (periphrastic passive)*: *hōc faciendum est mihi*; [what literally? see (362), ‘*dative of personal agent.*’]

Past action of these verbs may be expressed by placing *dēbeō* or *oportet* in the *tense required*, the *infinitive remaining present*; as,

- (a) *Hōc facere dēbui,*
 - (b) *Mē hōc facere oportuit*
 - (c) *Hōc facerem¹ oportuit,*
 - (d) *Hōc mihi faciendum erat,*
- } *I ought to have done this*

386. Place to which (end of motion); place from which.—
The place to which is expressed by *ad* or *in + accusative*; but the names of *towns* or *small islands* together with *domus* (*home*) and *rūs* (*country*) are put in the *accusative without a preposition*; as, *domum revertit*, *he returned home*; *rūs* (*neut.*) *ibit*, *he will go to the country*. The place *from which* is denoted by *ab*, *dē*, or *ex + ablative*; but with the names of *towns* or *small islands*, and also *domus* and *rūs*, the *ablative is used without a preposition*; as, *Romā abiit*, *he went from Rome*; *domō profectī sunt*, *they set out from home*.

387. Relative clauses of result.—*Relative clauses of result* are introduced by the relative *qui* or the adverbs *unde*, *ubi*, *quō*, etc., with the antecedent expressed or implied in the main clause; as,

**Effēcerant ut īinstar mūrī hae
saepēs mūnimenta praebebē-
rent, quō nōn modo nōn in-
trārī sed nē perspicī quidem
posset, (chapt. xvii, *ad finem*),**

*They had caused these hedges to
furnish fortifications like a
wall into which (whither, as
a result) one could not only
not enter, but not even see*

¹ Observe that *facerem* is *imperfect*, depending upon *oportuit*, a verb of *past time*.

388.

EXERCISE.

1. Our men with the cavalry surrounded and killed the foremost (men) who had crossed the river: [‘surrounded,’ render by the p. p. p., see (381), and omit ‘and’; ‘foremost,’ see (258).] 2. If the enemy should not surrender, Caesar would not prevent his (men) from burning their town: [The ‘less vivid future condition,’ see (335); ‘would prevent,’ write in two ways with *impediō* and *prohibeō*; see (370).] 3. If hostages are given to Caesar so that he may know that the enemy will do those (things) which they are promising, he will make peace with them: [‘are given,’ write in two tenses; see (223); what kind of a condition is this? ‘will do,’ future infinitive; ‘those things,’ see (258); ‘are promising,’ subjunctive by attraction; see (276). Observe the *sequence of tenses*.]

LESSON LXXIV.

COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

389. Review words 43–84 (399).

See imperative of nōlō (488).

Commands and exhortations are put in the imperative, negative *nē* (never *nōn*); as,

1. Affirmative command: **Ad Belgās adī et eōs in officiō continē**, *Go to the Belgians and keep them in allegiance.*
2. Negative command: **Nōlī hōc facere**, *Do not do this*, (literally, ‘be unwilling to do this’). **Nōlī + infinitive** is preferred to *nē + present imperative*, *nē* being generally used with the *perfect subjunctive* in a direct address or command; as, *nē hōc fēceris, thou shalt not do this*. When the phrase **nōlī facere**, ‘do not do this,’ is changed to *indirect discourse*, as, *he told him not to do this*, the nega-

tive adverb **nē** must be used in place of **nōlī** (*see following rule*).

390. Commands and exhortations in indirect discourse.—The imperative of the *direct discourse* becomes *subjunctive of the indirect, negative nē*. The application of the *rule of sequence* may be aided by a study of the following tables:

	Indicative mood.		Subjunctive mood.
Tenses not com- pleted	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Present} \\ \text{Future} \\ \text{Future-perfect} \end{array} \right\}$	followed by	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Present (referring to act} \\ \text{not completed)} \\ \text{Perfect (referring to act} \\ \text{completed)} \end{array} \right\}$
Tenses com- pleted	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Imperfect} \\ \text{Perfect} \\ \text{Pluperfect} \end{array} \right\}$	followed by	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Imperfect (referring to} \\ \text{act not completed)} \\ \text{Pluperfect (referring to} \\ \text{act completed)} \end{array} \right\}$

391.**EXAMPLES.**

- (a) *Veniet ut obsidēs postulet,* *He will come to demand hostages (purpose)*
- (b) *Rogat cur vēneris,* *He asks why you came (indirect question)*
- (c) *Cum esset Caesar in Galliā, vēnērunt lēgātī,* *While Caesar was in Gaul, legates came (cum temporal)*
- (d) *Non dubitāvit quin hostēs portiter pugnāvissent* *(quīn clause),* *He didn't doubt that the enemy had fought bravely*

392. Mood in Ōrātiō Oblīqua. [See 301, 302, 305, 306.]—In changing from *direct* to *indirect discourse*, if the main clause contains a *statement (indicative)*, the verb of this clause is turned into an *infinitive*; if the main clause contains an *imperative*, the verb is turned into a *subjunctive*; all subordinate verbs are put in the *subjunctive*; as,

1. (a) Statement in O. R. :

Caesar dīcit: 'In officiō Gallōs continēbō,' *Caesar says: 'I will keep the Gauls in allegiance'*

(b) Statement in O. O.:

Caesar dīcit sē in officiō Gallōs *Caesar says that he will keep, contentūrum esse,* etc.

(c) Statement in O. O.:

Caesar dīxit sē in officiō Gallōs *Caesar said that he would keep, contentūrum esse,* etc.

2. (a) Affirmative command in O. R.:

Caesar respondet : 'Continēte Gallōs in officiō' *Caesar replies : 'Keep the Gauls in allegiance'*

(b) Affirmative command in O. O.:

Caesar respondet in officiō Gallōs contineant, *Caesar replies that they must¹ keep the Gauls in allegiance*

(c) Affirmative command in O. O.:

Caesar respondit in officiō Gallōs continērent, *Caesar replied that they should keep, etc.*

3. (a) Negative command in O. R.:

'Nōlīte īferre quam iniūriam hīs,' *'Do not inflict any harm upon these people'*

(b) Negative command in O. O.:

Caesar dīcit nē hīs quam īiūriam īferant, *Caesar says that they must not inflict, etc.*

(c) Negative command in O. O.:

Caesar dīxit nē hīs quam īiūriam īferrent, *Caesar said that they must not, etc.*

393. Compare (1) *a* and *b*: the *first person*, 'I,' becomes *third person*, 'he'; the *indicative* becomes *infinitive*, time remaining *future*. Compare (2) *a*, *b*, and *c*: when *a* is changed to *b*, the *mood* of the *verb* changes, but the *tense* remains *present*; when *a* becomes *c*, though both *mood* and *tense* are changed, the imperfect *continērent* denotes the *same time* (in its new relation) as is indicated by the *verb keep* in *a*. (See *table* and *rule of sequence*.)

¹ should.

394.

EXERCISE.

1. Caesar says: ‘I cannot (present indicative of *possim*) cross the river because the enemy have destroyed the bridge’: [write again in O. O. *twice*: *first* after ‘Caesar says,’ and *second* after ‘Caesar said.’] 2. ‘Give me a large number of hostages’: [write again in O. O. *two ways*: first, Caesar informs the enemy that they must give *him*, etc.; second, Caesar *informed*, etc.] 3. ‘Do not deprive the Aedui of their arms’ (*ablative* of separation): [put in O. O.: Caesar *tells* and *told* his generals *not to*, etc.]

LESSON LXXV.

HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

395. Hortatory subjunctive.—The simple *subjunctive of exhortation or command*, called the ‘Hortatory Subjunctive’ (from *hortor*, *I urge*), is used in the *present tense* and in the *first* or *third persons*. It is usually translated by ‘*let*’ placed before the meaning of the verb; as, **contendamus**, *let us hasten*; **retineant memoriam virtutis**, *let them retain the memory of (keep in mind) their courage*.

When turned into O. O. (indirect discourse) the hortatory subjunctive *remains subjunctive*, being *present* in form after a verb of saying, etc., whose tense does *not* indicate *past time*, but *imperfect* when the tense of the verb of saying *does* indicate *past time*; as,

‘ Hostēs congregantur! ’	‘ <i>Let the enemy engage!</i> ’
Caesar dicit hostēs congregantur,	<i>Caesar says, let the enemy engage</i>
Caesar dīxit hostēs congrede-rentur,	<i>Caesar said, let the enemy engage</i>

396. Conditions in indirect discourse.—In O. O. all difference in form between the *more vivid* and the *less*

vivid future condition is effaced, the verb of the apodosis in both being rendered by the *future infinitive*, and that of the protasis going into the *subjunctive*.

1. O. R. *If hostages are given to me, I will make peace.* This (the more vivid future) is written in *two ways*: see (223).

(a) **Sī obsidēs mihi dabuntur, pācem faciam;** [dabuntur = future, *unfinished time*.]

(b) **Sī obsidēs mihi datī erunt, pācem faciam;** [datī erunt = future-perfect, time *finished in the future before another future action*.]

When written after *dīcit*, (a) becomes [O. O.]:

(c) **Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi dentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

Written after *dīxit*, (a) becomes [O. O.]:

(d) **Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi darentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

Written after *dīcit*, (b) becomes [O. O.]:

(e) **Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi datī sint, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

Written after *dīxit*, (b) becomes [O. O.]:

(f) **Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi datī essent, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

2. O. R. *If hostages should be given to me, I would make peace* (less vivid future): see (335).

(a) **Sī obsidēs mihi dentur, pācem faciam** (*present subjunctive*).

Written after *dīcit*, it is:

(b) **Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi dentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

Written after *dīxit*, it is:

(c) **Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi darentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

Compare (b) and (c) in the *less vivid* with (c) and (d) in the *more vivid*.

397. Subordinate clauses depending upon *infinitive verbs* in *indirect discourse* get their *sequence* usually from the *main verb of saying, telling, etc.*, rather than from the *infinitive*; as,

Caesar dicit sē fīnitimīs im-
perātūrum nē Aeduīs iniū-
riam īferant (*present*),

Caesar dīxit sē fīnitimīs im-
perātūrum nē Aeduīs iniū-
riam īferrent (*imperfect*),

*Caesar says that he will com-
mand—Caesar said that he
would command—their neigh-
bours not to do violence to the
Aedui*

398.

EXERCISE.

1. If the scouts sent forward during (in) the first watch inform Caesar in what direction the enemy are fleeing, Caesar will pursue without delay with all his forces: [*'sent forward,' p. p. p. agreeing with the subject; 'in-
form,' render by future indicative; 'in what direction,' quam in partem; 'are fleeing,' subjunctive, see (313).*]
2. Write the above sentence after **Caesar dīxit** thus: Caesar said that, if the scouts . . . informed him in what direction . . . were fleeing, *he would pursue . . . , etc.*

399.

REVIEW VOCABULARY.

LESSONS LXIII—LXXV.

1. **suprā** (adv.), *above*
2. **successus, successūs** (mas.), *advance*
3. **posteā** (adv.), *afterwards*
4. **rūrsus** (adv.), *again*
5. **sōlus, sōla, sōlum** (adj.), *alone or only*
6. **in** (prep. with the *abl.*), *among*
7. **diūtius** (adv.), *longer*
8. **ut (utī)** (conj.), *as or so that*
9. **cum prīmum**, *as soon as*
10. **ünō tempore**, *at one and the same time*
11. **īnsīgne, īnsīgnis** (neut.), *badge*
12. **praeſum, praeſesse, praeſuī**, *be in command of*

13. **ferō**, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*, *bear*
14. **coepī**, *coepisse*, *coeptus sum* (defective verb), *begin*
15. **post** (prep. with the *acc.*), *behind* or *after*
16. **audācter** (adv.), *boldly*
17. **addūcō**, *addūcere*, *addūxi*, *adductum*, *bring (to)*
18. **negōtium**, *negōtiī* (neut.), *business*
19. **sed etiam** (conj.), *but also*
20. **captīvus**, *captīvī* (mas.), *captive*
21. **potior**, *potīrī*, *potītus sum*, *capture*
22. **centuriō**, *centuriōnis* (mas.), *centurion*
23. **certus**, *certa*, *certum* (adj.), *certain*
24. **tegimentum**, *tegimentī* (neut.), *covering*
25. **dēfēnsor**, *dēfēnsōris* (mas.), *defender*
26. **dēspērō**, *dēspērāre*, *dēspērāvi*, *dēspērātum*, *despair*,
cease to hope
27. **octō** (indeclin. num. adj.), *eight*
28. **negōtium dare**, *employ*
29. **cohortor**, *cohortārī*, *cohortātus sum* (depon.), *encourage*
30. **hostis**, *hostis* (mas.), *enemy*
31. **longē** (adv.), *far*
32. **vereor**, *verērī*, *veritus sum* (depon.), *fear*
33. **pābulum**, *pābulī* (neut.), *fodder*
34. **nam** (conj.), *for*
35. **vīs**, *vīs* (fem.), *force or vigor*
36. **vadum**, *vadī* (neut.), *ford*
37. **superior**, *superior*, *superius* (adj.), *former*
38. **crēber**, *crēbra*, *crēbrum* (adj.), *frequent*
39. **manus**, *manūs* (fem.), *hand or band*
40. **plūrimum posse**, *plūrimum valēre*, *have very great
power*
41. **prōgressus**, *-a*, *-um* (perf. particip. of *prōgredior*),
having advanced
42. **adortus**, *-a*, *-um* (perf. particip. of *adorior*), *having
attacked*
43. **collātus**, *-a*, *-um* (perf. particip. of *cōferō*), *having
been collected*
44. **subsecūtus**, *-a*, *-um* (perf. particip. of *subsequor*), *having
followed after, having pursued*

45. **impeditus, -a, -um** (perf. particip. of **impediō**), *hindered*
 46. **ego** (personal pron. first person), *I*
 47. **auctōritās, auctōritātis** (fem.), *influence*
 48. **certiōrem facere** (followed by the *acc.* and *infin.*), *inform*
 49. **iniūria, iniūriae** (fem.), *injury*
 50. **ita utī** (adv.), *just as*
 51. **minus** (adv.), *less*
 52. **minus facile** (adv.), *less easily*
 53. **mercātor, mercātōris**, *merchant*
 54. **ad** (prep. with the *acc.*), *near*
 55. **necessārius, necessāria, necessārium** (adj.), *necessary*
 56. **nōn modo** (conj.), *not only*
 57. **magistrātus, magistrātūs** (mas.), *officer*
 58. **adversus, adversa, adversum** (adj.), *opposite*
 59. **passus, passa, passum** (adj.), *outstretched*
 60. **passus, passūs** (mas.), *pace*
 61. **persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, persuade**
 62. **praeficere** (with *acc.* and *dat.*), *place in command over*
 63. **populor, populārī, populātus sum** (depon.), *plunder*
 64. **regiō, regiōnis** (fem.), *region*
 65. **opīniō, opīniōnis** (fem.), *report*
 66. **cēterī, cēterae, cētera** (adj.), *the rest*
 67. **excursiō, excursiōnis** (fem.), *sally*
 68. **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, see**
 69. **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive pron.), *he or self*
 70. **brevitās, brevitātis** (fem.), *shortness*
 71. **cum** (conj.), *since*
 72. **parvulus, parvula, parvulum** (adj.), *slight*
 73. **tam** (adv.), *so, such*
 74. **Suessiōnēs, Suessiōnum** (mas.), *Suessiones*
 75. **decimus, decima, decimum** (num. adj.), *tenth*
 76. **condiciō, condiciōnis** (fem.), *terms*
 77. **tum, inde, deinde** (adverbs), *then*
 78. **mille** (indecl. adj.; noun in plur.), **mīlia, mīlium, thousand**
 79. **sub vesperum, towards evening**
 80. **dē imprōvīsō, unexpectedly**

81. *ūsus, ūsūs* (mas.), *use*
 82. *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum*, *to use*
 83. *complūrēs, complūrēs, complūra (-ia)* (adj.), *very many*
 84. *incrēdibilis, incrēdibilis, incrēdibile* (adj.), *incredible*

SPECIMENS OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

400. O. O. (Caesar, Book II, Chapt. 32.)—Ad haec Caesar respondit: ‘Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īferrent.’

401. O. R.—‘Magis cōnsuētūdine *meā* quam meritō *vestrō* cīvitātem *cōservābō*, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs *attigerit, vōs dēdideritis*; sed dēditiōnis *nūlla est condiciō* nisi armīs trāditīs. Id quod in Nerviīs *fēcī faciam*, fīnitimīsque *imperābō* nē quam dēditiīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īferant.’

402. O. O. (Caesar, Book I, Chapt. 13.)—Is respondit: ‘Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisse: sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod im-prōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī qui flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contendarent quam dolō aut īsidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.’

403. O. R.—‘Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem ībunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs cōnstitueris¹ atque esse volueris: sīn bellō persequī persevērābit, reminiscere (*imperative*) et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum eī quī flūmen trānsierant suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōlī ob eam rem aut tuae māgnopere virtūtī tribuere [*nē tribueris*], aut nōs dēspicere [*dēspexeris*]: nōs ita ā patribus māiōribusque nostrīs didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut īsidiīs nītāmur. Quā rē nōlī committere ut is locus ubi cōstitimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat.’

404. O. O. (Caesar, Book I, Chapt. 35.)—Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad Ariovistum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: (line 7) ‘haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Aeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā laceßeret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiām atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē (..... line 25) Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.’

405. O. R.—‘Haec sunt quae ab eō postulō: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum trādūcat; [*let him not lead across*]—hortatory subjunc.] deinde, obsidēs quōs habeat ab Aeduīs reddat, [*let him*

¹ In the treatment of this passage in direct discourse, we regard Caesar as addressed in person and place the main verbs in the second pers. sing.; thus, ‘Where thou, O Caesar, shalt place us,’ etc. In order to retain the second person of the verb, the form **reminiscere** is given, rather than **reminisceat**.

return,'] Sēquanīsque permittat ut quōs illī habeant voluntātē ēius reddere illīs liceat; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā laccessat, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īferat. Sī id ita fēcerit, mihi populōque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amīcītia cum eō erit; sī nōn impetrābō, Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglegam.'

406. O. O. (Caesar, Book II, Chapt. 14.)—Prō hīs Dīvi-tiācus . . . facit verba: ‘Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcītī cīvitātī Aeduāe fuisse: impulsōs ā suīs pīncipībus, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī pīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegērent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit (perf. subj.) Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.’

407. O. R.—‘Bellovacī omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcītī cīvitātī Aeduāe fuērunt: impulsī ā suīs pīncipībus, quī dīcēbant Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. (Eī) quī ēius cōnsilī pīncipēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt nōn sōlum Bellovacī sed etiam prō hīs Aeduī ut tuā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtāris. Quod sī fēceris (fut. perf. indic.) Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōnsuērunt.’

LESSON LXXVI.

CAESAR, BOOK II, CHAPTER I, ADAPTED AND SIMPLIFIED.

The Belgae conspire against Caesar.

408.—Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia¹ in hibernis,² ita uti³ suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, litteris⁴ Labiēnī certior⁵ fīēbat omnēs Belgās⁶ contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē⁷ dare. Belgae coniūrabant pīmum, quod verēbantur nē⁸ omnī Galliā pācātā⁹ ad¹⁰ eōs exercitūs noster addūcerētur; deinde,¹¹ quod sollicitābantur ab¹² nōnnūllīs Gallīs quī, ut nōluerant¹³ Germānōs¹⁴ diūtius in Galliā versārī, ita¹⁵ exercitūm¹⁶ populī Rōmānī hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant.

409.—After Caesar had come¹ into hither Gaul, Labienus informed² him that all³ the Belgians had been incited⁴ by the Gauls⁵ and had conspired⁶ against the Roman people. Some Gauls who feared that⁷ all Gaul would be subdued⁸ by our army⁹ incited the Belgians with whom¹⁰ they conspired against Caesar.

408.—¹ Adverbial phrases, modifying *esset*. ² *ita uti*, 'just as.' ³ 'Abl. of means'; see (43 b). ⁴ *certior + pass.* (see 338): notice the force of the *imperf.*, 'he was being informed.' ⁵ Acc. subj. (indir. disc.) of *coniurare* and *dare*; see (301, 302, 318). ⁶ *inter se dare*, 'were exchanging.' ⁷ With verb of *fear*; see (343). ⁸ Abl. absol. ⁹ 'against them.' ¹⁰ Mod. *coniurabant*; 'in the second place they *kept conspiring*.' ¹¹ Pers. agent; see (237). ¹² *ut + indic.* = 'as'; note the force of the pluperf., 'as they *had been unwilling*.' ¹³ Acc. subj. of *versari*; 'that the Germans should remain.' ¹⁴ *ita nolabant*; see the force of the *imperf.*, 'were also unwilling.' ¹⁵ Acc. subj. of the two following infinitives, 'that the army of . . . should winter,' etc.

409.—¹ *cum + pluperf. subjunc.*; see (263). ² *certiore + act.*; see (333): why *enī*, not *se?* see (214). ³ Notice that the voice is *pass.*; *indir. disc.*; see (301, 302, 305, 318). ⁴ Pers. agent; see (237). ⁵ The *active* voice, *indir. disc.* ⁶ Verbs of *fear*; see (343). ⁷ Sequence of tense; see (135). ⁸ Abl. of means without a preposition; see (43 b). ⁹ *cum*, 'with,' is post-positive with the *personal*, *reflexive*, and *relative pronouns*; *quibuscum*.

LESSON LXXVII.

CHAPTER I, CONTINUED.

Additional reasons for the conspiracy. Caesar's preparations.

410.—Belgae sollicitabantur partim ab eis qui mobilitate¹ et levitate¹ animi novis imperiis² studebant: partim ab nonnullis etiam, quod³ in Gallia vulgo regna⁴ a potentioribus⁵ atque eis⁶ qui ad condicendos⁶ homines facultates habebant occupabantur. His nuntiis litterisque commotus⁷ Caesar duas legiones novas in citeriore Gallia conscripsit et Pedium legatum qui⁸ inita⁹ aestate eas legiones in interiorem Galliam deducere¹⁰ misit.

411.—Those¹ by² whom the Belgians were incited desired a revolution.³ By hiring⁴ men the more powerful¹ generally seized sovereignty⁵ in Gaul. These messages alarmed Caesar, by² whom two new legions were quickly enrolled. Pedius his lieutenant is sent⁶ to lead⁷ those legions into Gaul.

LESSON LXXVIII.

CHAPTER II.

Caesar leads his army into the country of the Belgae.

412. Ipse [Caesar], cum primum¹ copia publica esse inciperet,² ad exercitum venit. Dat³ negotium Senonibus⁴ reli-

410.—1 Ablatives of cause; see (210); 'on account of fickleness,' etc. **2** Dat. indir. obj. of *studebant*; see 'dat. with special verbs' (348). **3** Goes with *occupabantur*. **4** Neut. plur. subj. of *occupabantur*; 'sovereignty was being seized.' **5** 'Adjs. as substantives'; see (258). **6** 'Gerundive construction'; see (253). **7** See (316): begin the translation with this word, 'alarmed greatly by . . . Caesar enrolled.' **8** 'Rel. clause of purpose'; see (311). **9** From *ineo*, p. p. p. abl. absol. with *aestate*. **10** Sequence? see (135).

411.—1 'Adjectives used as substantives'; see (258). **2** a. **3** *novis imperiis*; see note 2, (410). **4** Gerundive construction; see (253). **5** See note 4, (410).

6 Note the change of tense. **7** 'Rel. clause of purpose'; see (311) and (355).

412.—1 'as soon as.' **2** 'began': *copia* the subj. **3** Historical present. **4** See *negotium do* (330).

quīsque Gallīs quī erant iinitimī⁵ Belgīs, uti⁶ (=ut) ea⁷ quae apud eōs gerantur⁸ cōgnōscant sēque⁹ dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā¹⁰ castra movet diēbusque¹¹ circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

413.—Caesar himself¹ will come to the army because there² is a supply of fodder. He *employed* the Senones to find out³ those things which the Belgians were doing.⁴ Caesar informed his⁵ men that he would obtain⁶ a supply of corn and would break camp within five days.⁷

LESSON LXXIX.

CHAPTER III.

The Remi refuse to enter the league against Caesar.

414.—Eō¹ cum Caesar vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Galliae² ex Belgīs sunt ad eum lēgātōs pīmōs³ cīvitātis mīsērunt, quī dīcerent:⁴ ‘sē⁵ suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere,⁶ neque⁷ sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvisse.’ Lēgātī,⁸ cum pērvēnissent, nūntiāvērunt cīvitātem parātam⁹ esse et¹⁰ obsidēs dare et imperāta

⁵ Nom. predicate. ⁶ uti . . . cognoscant, faciant following dat negotium; see (330); note the sequence. ⁷ Obj. of cognoscant; see (258). ⁸ ‘Intermediate rel. clause, subjunc. by attraction’; see (276). ⁹ Reflexive; refers to the subj. of the main verb dat (negotium); position of que, see (215), page 82.

¹⁰ Abl. absol. ¹¹ Abl. of time within which; see (65).

413.—¹ Intensive pron. ipse. ² Omit. ³ Be careful as to sequence; ‘employed’ is past; see notes 4 and 6, (412). ⁴ Subjunc. by attraction; notice that this verb is in the active voice. ⁵ Omit ‘men’ and use the proper form of suns. ⁶ Fut. infin. act., with subj. se (‘he’); see (318), example 3. ⁷ Abl. of time within which; see (65).

414.—¹ ‘thither.’ ² See ‘dat. with adjs.’; (126). ³ See (258); ‘the foremost men.’ ⁴ Not ‘who said,’ but ‘who should (were to) say’; see (311). ⁵ Acc. obj. of permittere; the subj. of permittere is se understood. ⁶ Equivalent to a fut.; ‘that they would place themselves . . . under the protection,’ etc. ⁷ ‘and not,’ ‘and that they had not united . . . nor (neque) had they conspired.’ ⁸ ‘After (cum) the ambassadors had arrived, they announced.’ ⁹ Acc. pred. after esse. ¹⁰ ‘Both.’

facere et oppidis eum accipere ac frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare.

415.—The foremost¹ men of their state will be sent to Caesar as ambassadors² by the Remi to say³ that they⁴ will receive him⁵ in their towns. Because they had not conspired and were⁶ ready to give up themselves and all their possessions,⁷ the Remi aided Caesar with the corn⁸ which they had brought from⁹ the fields of the Sequani.

LESSON LXXX.

CHAPTER III, CONTINUED.

The Remi inform Caesar concerning the number of the enemies' forces.

416.—Rēmī dixērunt reliquōs¹ omnēs in armīs esse,² Germānōsque³ quī cis Rhēnum incolant⁴ sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque⁵ esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut⁶ nē Suessiōnēs quidem,⁷ frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōsentīrent.⁸ Cum Caesar ab⁹ hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid¹⁰ in bellō possent,¹¹ sīc reperiēbat.

417.—When¹ the Germans united² with the Belgians, the Remi sent ambassadors to Caesar, who said³ that they were

415.—¹ See (258) and note 3, (414). ² Appositive. ³ Affirmative purpose. ⁴ se. ⁵ eum. ⁶ Imperf. indic. ⁷ Omit. ⁸ Abl. of means; see (43 b). ⁹ ex.

416.—¹ Used as a substantive, subj. of esse. ² 'were.' ³ Acc. subj. of coniūnxisse; 'and that the Germans... had united.' ⁴ Subjunc. because a subord. verb in *indir. disc.*: *incolant* in the direct; see (306). ⁵ Connects coniūnxisse and the esse following. ⁶ ut... potuerint, affirmative result; in clauses of result, the *perf. subjunc.* is very often used after *past tenses*: 'that they (the Remi) could not hinder even the Suessions.' ⁷ ne... quidem, 'not even'; emphasize the word *between them*. ⁸ quin + subjunc. (clause of result) following *deterrire*; see (370). ⁹ 'of these.' ¹⁰ essent, possent; subjunctives of *indir. quest.*; see (313): essent = 'were.' ¹¹ quid; adverbial accusative with possent; see (374): quid... possent = 'what they could do,' or 'how much power they had.'

417.—¹ Use ubi; see (203, 358). ² se coniungo. ³ dixerunt.

not able⁴ to prevent their own brothers and kinsmen from conspiring.⁵ Caesar finds out⁶ what and how great states are⁷ under arms and what⁸ they can do⁹ in war.

LESSON LXXXI.

CHAPTER IV.

The origin and power of the Belgae.

418.—Caesar reperiēbat plērōsque¹ Belgās ab Germānīs ortōs esse² Rhēnumque³ antiquitus trāductōs⁴ propter locī fertilitatēm ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōs⁵que⁶ quī ea loca incolerent⁷ expulisse. Caesar reperiēbat Belgās sōlōs⁸ esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnīs ingredi⁹ prohibuerint.¹⁰

419.—The Gauls were driven¹ out of those places which² they were inhabiting by the Belgians³ whose fathers were descended from⁴ the Germans. The Belgians were led across⁵ the Rhine in olden times and⁶ drove out the Gauls who could not prevent⁷ them from seizing⁸ a large part of Gaul.

⁴ 'they were not able' = *se non posse*. ⁵ *quin + impf. subjunc.*; see (370).
⁶ Pres. indic. of *reperio*. ⁷ Indir. quest.: for mood, see (313); for tense, see (135). ⁸ *quid*; see note 11 (416): note the change in the *tense*.

⁴¹⁸ —¹ 'that most of the Belgians.' ² 'were descended.' ³ Connects *ortos* esse and *cōnsēdisse*, with *Belgas* as the subj. ⁴ p. p. p. mod. *Belgas*; see (316).

⁵ Dir. obj. of *expulisse*. ⁶ Connects *cōnsēdisse* and *expulisse*, having *Belgas* as the subj. ⁷ Subord. verb in O. O.; see (306). ⁸ 'were the only ones': after *solutus sum*, even in O. R., the mood of the relative clause is generally *subjunc.*

⁹ 'from entering'; see (370). ¹⁰ *Subjunc.*; subord. clause in indir. disc.: strictly speaking it is a *rel. clause of characteristic*, which takes the *subjunc.*; see note 8. Observe that the *perf. subjunc.* is here used after the *past tense*; see (416), note 6.

419.—¹ Perf. indic. pass. ² For *gend. of the rel.* see (39), foot-note 1. ³ Person. agent; see (237). ⁴ a or ab. ⁵ Change to p. p. p.; see (381), and text above.

⁶ Omit. ⁷ 'could not prevent,' *impedire non poterant*. ⁸ *quin + subjunc.*; see (370) and text.

LESSON LXXXII.

CHAPTER V.

The Remi surrender hostages and give aid to Caesar.

420.—Caesar Rēmōs cohortātūs¹ līberāliterque² ḍrātiōne prōsecūtūs¹ omnem senātūm³ ad sē convenīre pīncipūmque līberōs⁴ obsidēs⁵ ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae⁶ omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse⁷ Dīvitiācum Aeduum māgnopere cohortātūs docet⁸ sē manūs hostiū distentūrum⁹ esse, nē¹⁰ cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōflīgendum sit.¹¹

421.—Caesar urged¹ the Remi to bring² their children as hostages and to do³ all those⁴ things which they had promised.⁵ After⁶ Caesar had addressed the Remi kindly, all their senate was ordered⁶ to gather together before⁷ him. Caesar will not join⁸ in battle, unless the bands of the enemy are kept apart.⁹

420.—¹ Depon. perf. participles mod. Caesar; see (340): *prosecutus* = 'having addressed.' ² Connects *cohortatus* and *prosecutus*. ³ Acc. subj. of *convenire*, clause depending upon *iussit*; 'he ordered their whole senate to assemble before him.' ⁴ Acc. subj. of *adduci*. ⁵ Apposition with *liberos*. ⁶ Relative at the beginning of the sent.; 'now (and) all of these things'; see (367). ⁷ Intensive pron., 'Caesar himself.' ⁸ 'states,' verb of saying or declaring followed by *acc. + infin.* ⁹ Subject is *se*, 'that he will keep apart.' ¹⁰ Neg. purpose clause; see (320). ¹¹ Pres. subjunc. *pass.* of the periphrastic conjugation; see (361); here an *impersonal verb*, see (365): 'so that it may not have to be fought'; more freely, 'that he may not have to fight.'

421.—¹ Perf. indic. of *cohortor*; see (347). ² Be careful as to the sequence; at the *time* he urged them, the *action* implied in 'bringing the children' and 'doing the things' was *incomplete, unfinished* and as yet in the *future*. ³ See (258). ⁴ Subjunc. by *attraction*; note the sequence, the action in 'had promised' being completed; see (276). ⁵ Historical *cum*; see (203, 263, 359). ⁶ Perf. indic. *pass.* of *inbeo*. ⁷ *ad + acc.* ⁸ Use the phrase *proelium committere*, *proelium* being *accus.* ⁹ 'are kept apart,' verb in the *protasis* of a *more viv. fut. condition*; write this in *two tenses*; see (223).

LESSON LXXXIII.

CHAPTER V, CONTINUED.

Caesar hastens forward to meet the Belgae.

422.—*Sī Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum suās cōpiās intrōdūixerint¹ et eōrum agrōs populārī cooperint,² id fierī poterit. Caesar postquam³ omnīs⁴ Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās⁵ ad sē·venīre vīdit, et ab⁶ eīs explōrātōribus quōs mīserat et ab⁶ Rēmīs eās cōpiās iam nōn longē abesse⁶ cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit.*

423.—If the forces of the Aedui are led¹ into the boundaries of the Bellovaci, these² things will be done.³ When⁴ scouts informed⁵ Caesar that the forces of the Belgians were being collected,⁶ he prepared to cross the river. While the Belgians were gathering all their forces into one place, Caesar led his army across the river. After⁷ all the forces of the Belgians had been gathered together, Caesar led his army into the farthest territories of the Remi.

422.—¹ More *vivid fut.*; see (223). **²** Introduces *vīdit* and *cognovit*, joined by *et*; see (358): ‘when C. saw that . . . and found out that . . .’ **³** *omnīs*: acc. plur. = *omnes*. **⁴** p. p. p. mod. *cōpiās*, translated by a *finite verb*, ‘had been collected and were coming; see (381). **⁵** Adverbial phrases mod. *cognovit*; ‘when he found out from those scouts,’ etc. **⁶** Indir. disc. depend upon *cognovit*; ‘that those forces were now . . . distant.’ **⁷** Does *quod* refer to and agree with *Axonam* or *flumen*, and why?

423.—¹ Place in two tenses; see (223). **²** Nent. plur. as noun, omit *things*. **³** The *pass.* of *facio* is *flo*: place in the *fut. indic.* **⁴** *ubi* + *indic.*; see (203). **⁵** *certiorem* + *act.*; see (333). **⁶** Indir. disc. (main verb) after *certioreni fece-runt*, which is taken as a verb of *saying*; what *voice* and *time* are indicated? **⁷** Render by abl. *absol.*; see (287), example 3.

LESSON LXXXIV.

CHAPTER VI.

The Belgae attack a town of the Remi. Mode of attack.

424.—Ab his¹ castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia² passuum octō. Id ex itinere³ māgnō impetū⁴ Belgae oppūgnāre coepérunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.⁵ Ubi, multitūdine⁶ hominum tōtis moenibus⁷ circumiectā,⁸ undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci⁹ coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus¹⁰ nūdātus est, testūdine¹¹ factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod¹² tum facile fīebat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent,¹³ in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nūllī.¹⁴

425.—While the Belgians were attacking the town which¹ had² tall fortifications, a testudo was made so that they might draw near³ the wall. After stones and javelins had been thrown⁴ from all sides upon the wall and the wall had been stripped⁴ of defenders, the townsmen¹ did not have⁵ the power of holding out any longer. Since⁶ the townsmen saw (were seeing) that so great a multitude were throwing stones and javelins upon the wall and⁷ that they⁸ could not⁹ hold out longer, they surrendered themselves and all their possessions⁹ to the Belgians.¹⁰

424.—¹ 'from *this camp*'; adverbial phrase limits aberat. ² Acc. of extent in space; see (342). ³ *ex itinere*, 'turning aside from the march'; making an attack immediately after a march without preparation. ⁴ Abl. of manner, mod. *oppugnare coeperunt*; see (210). ⁵ Impers. verb; see (365). ⁶ Abl. absol., 'a multitude of men being thrown around all the walls.' ⁷ Dat. indir. obj. of *circumiecta*. ⁸ Pres. pass. infin. of *iacio*; with a *pass.* infin. *coepti* is put in the *pass.* ⁹ Abl. of sep. mod. *nudatus est*; 'of defenders'; see (221). ¹⁰ Abl. absol.: a *testudo* was a covering for the soldiers' heads made by overlapping the shields like shingles on a roof, and used in approaching and storming walls. ¹¹ See (367): 'and *this* thing.' ¹² Plur., agreeing with *multitudo* taken collectively. ¹³ See (357): 'power was to no one'—'no one had the power.'

425.—¹ Dat. of possession; see (357). ² *erant*. ³ Observe the *sequence*. ⁴ Render both clauses by *abl. absol.*; see (287). ⁵ *erat*. ⁶ See 'causal cūm,' (350). ⁷ 'and not' = *neque*. ⁸ *se*, acc. subj. ⁹ Omit. ¹⁰ Dat.

LESSON LXXXV.

CHAPTERS VI AND VII.

The Remi ask aid from Caesar, who sends relief.

426.—Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nobilitatē¹ et gratiā² inter suōs,² qui tum oppidō³ praefuerat, unus⁴ ex eis qui lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, ad eum nūntium qui⁵ auxilium peteret mīsit. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īisdem⁶ ducibus⁷ ūsus qui nūntiī ab Iccio vēnerant, sagittariōs et funditōrēs sub-sidiō⁸ oppidānīs⁹ mittit; quōrum adventū¹⁰ et¹⁰ Rēmīs¹¹ cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus¹² eādem dē causā spēs potiundi¹³ oppidī discessit.

427.—Because of the hope¹ of driving² the Belgians out of their territories, the Remi ordered Iccius to go³ to Caesar as an ambassador and to ask for help. Because Iccius whom⁴ the Remi had put in command of their town⁴ was friendly to the Roman people,⁵ Caesar said he would send⁶ archers and slingers as a relief⁷ to the town.⁷ Now⁸ upon the arrival of these⁸ the townsmen fought with great courage⁹ and¹⁰ the enemy could not¹⁰ storm their town.

426.—¹ Ablatives of *quality*; supply *vir* (a man) and translate the *abl.* like the *gen.*; see (376). ² Adj. used as noun; see (258). ³ See ‘dat. with compound verbs’; (337). ⁴ See (378), ‘partitive genitive—exceptions.’ ⁵ Rel. clause of purpose; see (311). ⁶ Adj. used as noun, obj. (*abl.*) of *usus*; ‘using (making use of) the same men’; see (353). ⁷ Apposition: ‘as guides.’ ⁸ Doub. dat.; see (352). ⁹ Abl. of cause mod. *accessit* and *discessit*; ‘on account of whose arrival.’ ¹⁰ ‘both.’ ¹¹ Dat. indir. obj. of *accessit*; ‘eagerness to fight was inspired in the Remi.’ ¹² Dat. with a verb of *taking away* (*discessit*) instead of the abl. of separation; ‘frōn the enemy.’ ¹³ *potiundi* = *potiendi*: gerundive construction; see (253).

427.—¹ spe, an *abl.* of *cause*. ² Use *de* and the *abl.* of the gerundive; see (253). ³ ‘Iccius to go’ = acc. + infin., if *iubeo* is used; *what*, if *impero*? ⁴ *praeficio* takes *acc.* and *dat.*; ‘whom’ to be turned into the *acc.*, ‘town’ into the *dat.*; see (337). ⁵ See ‘dat. with adjs.’; (126). ⁶ Indir. disc.; what *time* is indicated? ⁷ Doub. dat.; see (352). ⁸ ‘now these’: render both words by the relative pron.; see (367). ⁹ Abl. of *manner*; see (210). ¹⁰ ‘and not’ = *neque*.

LESSON LXXXVI.

CHAPTER VII, CONTINUED.

The Belgae abandon the siege and turn against Caesar.

428.—Itaque paulisper apud¹ oppidum morātī² agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī,³ omnibus⁴ vīcīs aedificiīsque quōs⁵ adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab⁶ mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt. Quae⁷ castra, ut⁸ fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius⁹ mīlibus⁹ passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant. Caesar pīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis¹⁰ proeliō¹¹ supersedērunt statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs¹² hostium virtūtem perīclitābātur.

429.—The Belgians will delay¹ many days² near the town whose³ walls they cannot storm so as to lay waste⁴ the fields of the Remi and burn⁴ their buildings. Because he saw⁵ that the multitude of the enemy was so great,⁶ Caesar commanded the leaders⁷ of the infantry to refrain⁷ from battle. Fearing⁸ the power and courage of the

428.—¹ 'near.' ² Depon. perf. participles mod. *hostes*, the subj. implied in *contenderunt*; see (340). ³ *omnibus . . . incensis*: abl. absol. of *time*, mod. *contenderunt*. ⁴ *quos*: has two antecedents, *vici*s and *aedificiis*. When the gender of two or more antecedents is different, the relative takes the gender sometimes of the *strongest* or *most important* word, sometimes that of the *nearest* word; *quos* in this sentence takes the gender of *vici*s, the more important noun. ⁵ *ab . . . duobus*: *ab* is used adverbially, 'off,' i.e., distant from the Roman camp. *mīlibus duobus*: abl. of *degree of difference*, 'by two thousand,' the abl. being used without reference to the comparative *minus*, which does not affect the construction; the force of *minus* is seen in the translation, 'by two thousand [and] less.' The entire phrase is best translated 'less than two miles off.' ⁶ 'now this'; see (367). ⁷ *ut*, 'as.' ⁸ Accus. of extent in space: see (342). ⁹ Abl. with the comparative *amplius*; see (369). See the other construction for these neuter comparatives, note 5 above (*minus*). ¹⁰ 'for valor.' ¹¹ 'from battle.' ¹² Abl. of means mod. *periclitabatur*.

429.—¹ Deponent verb. ² See (342). ³ Why gen. sing. neut.? ⁴ See (320, 355). ⁵ Imperf. indic. ⁶ Pred. adj. after *esse*. ⁷ See (134, 135, 145). ⁸ Perf. particip. (depon.).

Belgians who⁹ had large forces, Caesar ordered his leaders not to begin battle on that day.

LESSON LXXXVII.

CHAPTER VIII.

Caesar protects his camp with strong defences.

430.—Is collis,¹ ubi² castra Caesaris posita erant, paululum ex plānitīē ēditus³ in lātitūdinem tantum⁴ locī⁵ patēbat quantum aciēs īstrūcta⁶ occupāre poterat. Caesar⁷ ubi nostrōs nōn esse īferiōrēs⁸ intellēxit, locō⁹ prō castris ad aciem īstruendam¹⁰ nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, ab¹¹ utrōque latere ēius collis¹² trānsversam fossam obdūxit. Ad extrēmās fossās¹³ castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē,¹⁴ cum aciem īstrūxisset, hostēs ab lateribus suōs¹⁵ pūgnantēs circumvenīre possent.

431.—A place suitable for¹ setting up² redoubts and engines of war is chosen by³ those scouts whom Caesar sent forward during the second watch.⁴ Unless Caesar should dig⁵ a ditch, the enemy would surround⁶ our infantry on their flanks and kill them while (as) they were fighting.⁶

⁹ Dat. of possession; see (357).

430.—¹ *is collis*: ‘that hill,’ subj. of *patebat*. ² ‘where.’ ³ Limits *collis*; ‘sloping upward gradually from the plain.’ ⁴ Accus. of extent in space; see (342). ⁵ Partitive gen. with *tantum*; ‘as much ground as (*quantum*).’ ⁶ Mod. *acies*; ‘an army drawn up for battle.’ ⁷ Order: ‘when Caesar perceived . . . he dug,’ etc. ⁸ Adj. in the pred. accus. after *esse*; ‘that our men were not inferior (in courage).’ ⁹ *loco . . . idoneo*; see (364), example 2. ¹⁰ See (253). ¹¹ *ab . . . latere*: adverbial phrase (*latus*, *lateris*), mod. *obduxit*. ¹² Gen. depend. upon *latere*. ¹³ ‘at the ends of the ditches.’ ¹⁴ *ne . . . possent*: neg. purpose; see (320). ¹⁵ *suos*: adj. used as a substantive modified by *pugnantes* (pres. particip.); *pugnans* is declined in (467). Translate, ‘his men while (as) they were fighting.’ The pres. particip. is translated, ‘as (while) they are or were —ing.’

431.—¹ *ad.* ² Gerundive in agreement with the *acc.*; see (253). ³ Pers. agent; see (237). ⁴ Abl. of *time*, without prep. ⁵ See ‘less viv. fut. condition’ (335). ⁶ ‘while they were fighting’: render by the pres. particip.; why *acc.*?

Caesar drew up his line of battle upon a hill⁷ fortified by nature, in order that⁸ his infantry as they were fighting⁹ might not¹⁰ be surrounded by the enemy.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

CHAPTERS VIII AND IX.

The Belgae encamp opposite Caesar's camp across a marsh.

432.—Hoc factō duābus legiōnibus quās¹ proximē cōscript̄serat in castrīs relictīs, ut² sī quō³ opus esset⁴ subsidiō⁵ dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ē castrīs ēductās⁶ īstrūxerant. Palūs erat nōn⁷ māgna inter nostrum⁸ atque hostium exercitum. Hostēs exspectābant sī⁹ hanc nostrī trānsīrent; nostrī autem in armīs erant parātī ut impedītōs¹⁰ aggredierentur, sī ab illis trānseundī initium fieret.¹¹ Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur.¹² Ubi neutrī initium trānseundī faciunt proeliō¹³ equitum nostrīs secundiōre¹⁴ Caesar in castra suōs redūxit.

433.—If Caesar leaves¹ the two legions, which² were

⁷ Abl. of place where with in. ⁸ 'in order that ... not': neg. purpose; see (320). ⁹ 'as they were fighting'; render by the pres. particip.; why nom? ¹⁰ Why 'which he had eurolled,' and not 'which had been enrolled'? ¹¹ Why 'which he had eurolled,' and not 'which had been enrolled'? ¹² ut . . . possent: shows the purpose of and derives its sequence from relictis.

¹³ quo = adv., 'anywhere'; translate the clause, 'if they were needed anywhere.'

¹⁴ subjunc. by attraction; see (276). ⁵ Dat. of purpose, end or service; 'as (for) a relief.' ⁶ 'had led out . . . and arranged in order'; see (381). ⁷ A negative with large = 'small.' ⁸ Mod. exercitum. ⁹ Indir. quest. introduced by si, 'whether'; 'kept waiting to see (exspectabant) whether our men would cross'; for mood in 'indir. quest.' see (313). ¹⁰ p. p. p. mod. eos (hostes), obj. of aggredierentur; 'to attack them placed at a disadvantage.' ¹¹ si . . . fieret: depends upon aggredierentur, hence subjunc. (see note 4); bear in mind that fieret is the passive of facio. ¹² Impersonal; see (365). ¹³ Abl. absol.; see (364), example 2.

¹⁴ Fut. or fut. pf. indic. (223, 335). ² Why nominative? Compare this with note 1 (432).

recently enrolled, as a defence³ to the camp,⁴ the enemy will not lead out their forces. If the enemy should try⁴ to cross the swamp, our cavalry would surround⁵ them on all sides and attack⁴ (them). After drawing up⁶ all their forces in front of their camp the enemy sent forward cavalry who were to⁷ attack the two legions that were left⁸ in our camp.

LESSON LXXXIX.

CHAPTER IX, CONTINUED.

The enemy attempt to cross the river and surprise Titurius.

434.—Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod¹ esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō,² ut³ sī possent⁴ castellum cui⁵ praeerat Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus⁶ potuissent,⁷ (ut) agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur⁸ qui ad⁹ bellum gerendū māgnō ūsuī¹⁰ nobīs¹⁰ erant comēatūque¹¹ nostrōs prohibērent.⁸ Caesar ab Titūriō certior factus¹² omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae¹³ Numidās,

³ Doub. dat.; see (352). ⁴ Pres. subjunc. in a less viv. fut. condition; see (335). ⁵ 'would surround'; change to p. p. p., omit *and*, and make *attack* the verb of the apodosis; order, 'would attack (them) surrounded on all sides'; see text (432) and note 10. ⁶ Render by abl. absol.: 'all their forces having been,' etc.; see (287). ⁷ 'who were to attack': *rel. clause of purpose*; be careful about the *sequence*; see (311). ⁸ 'that were left'; render by the p. p. p.

434.—¹ Nom. subj. of *demonstratum est*; 'which has been shown to be in the rear of.' ² 'with this design (in view).' ³ *ut . . . expugnarent, interscinderent*: affirmative purpose and explanatory of *eo consilio*; 'with this design, viz., to storm,' etc. ⁴ Subjunc. by attraction, time *unfinished* (see *potuissent*, note 7). ⁵ Dat. with comp. verb. ⁶ *minus = non*. ⁷ 'if (having made the attempt) they should not have been (should not be) able'; *potuissent* is *pluperf.* to show time finished: since *conati sunt traducere* denotes *past time*, the depend. subjunctives appear in either the *imperf.* or *pluperf.* ⁸ Introduced by *ut*, explaining *eo consilio* (see note 3). ⁹ 'for.' ¹⁰ Doub. dat.; 'were very useful to us.' ¹¹ Abl. of separation. ¹² 'Upon being informed (as to this) by Titurius, Caesar leads.' ¹³ Gen. depend. upon *Numidas*; 'of light equipment.'

funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit.

435.—After¹ the enemy had reached² that river on whose banks³ our camp had been pitched, they attempted to find⁴ fords so that they might lead across a part of their forces. By destroying⁵ the bridge and storming the redoubts over which⁶ Caesar had placed his lieutenant Titurius in command, the enemy will be able to cut off⁷ our men from supplies. The enemy will try to cross the river so as to storm the redoubt and cut down the bridge, if they can.⁸

LESSON XC.

CHAPTER X.

The Belgae are defeated in a fierce battle.

436.—Ā criter in eō locō pūgnātum est.¹ Hostēs² in flūmine impeditōs³ nostrī aggressi⁴ māgnum eōrum numerū occidērunt; reliquōs⁵ per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs⁶ nostrī multitūdine tēlōrum reppūlērunt; prīmōs,⁷ qui trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs⁸ interfēcerunt. Hostēs ubi⁹ et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem¹⁰ sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque¹¹

435.—1 *cum.* Order: ‘the enemy, after they had reached,’ etc. **2** *pervenio* *ad* + *acc.* **3** *in* + *abl.* **4** Complementary infin. following *attempted*; verbs which imply another action of the same subject to complete their meaning take the complementary infin. without a subj. acc. **5** Gerundive; see (253). **6** Dat.; why? **7** Pres. infin. act. of *prohibeo*. **8** Subjunc. by attraction.

436.—1 Impersonal; see (365). **2** Acc. obj. of *aggressi*. **3** Mod. *hostes*; ‘the enemy placed at a disadvantage in the river.’ **4** Mod. the subj. *nostrī*: ‘having attacked . . . our men slew.’ **5** Acc. obj. of *reppulerunt*, whose subj. is *nostrī*. **6** Pres. particip. acc. plur. mod. *reliquos* (used as noun); ‘the rest as they were trying.’ **7** Acc. obj. of *interfecerunt*. **8** Mod. *primos*, but translated by a coordinate verb; see (381). **9** *ubi*; see (203, 358); *ubi* introduces *intellēxerunt*, *viderunt*, and *coepit*. **10** Acc. subj. of *fefellisse*. **11** ‘and that our men were not advancing’ (*progredi*).

nostrōs in locum iniquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs¹² rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, concilium convocāvērunt.

437.—The enemy hindered in the river were driven back by our men and the foremost were surrounded¹ by the cavalry and killed by the darts of our men. Because² hope with respect to crossing the river kept failing³ the enemy, they decided after calling⁴ a council of war to surrender themselves and all their possessions to Caesar. Since⁵ the enemy saw⁶ that our men had killed⁷ the foremost, who had tried⁸ very boldly to cross, and were driving back⁷ the rest, they sent ambassadors to Caesar with respect to peace.

LESSON XCI.

CHAPTER X, CONTINUED.

The Belgae decide to return home.

438.—Conciliō convocātō Belgae cōnstituērunt optimum¹ esse quemque² domum³ suam revertī et undique convenire ad⁴ eōs dēfendendōs quōrum in fīnīs pīnum Rōmānī⁵ exercitum intrōdūxissent,⁶ ut potius in suis quam in aliēnīs

¹² ‘themselves,’ as distinguished from our men; it is the object of *deficere*.

437.—¹ Change thus: ‘the foremost surrounded . . . were killed.’ ² See (276). ³ Imperfect. ⁴ Recast and render by abl. absol.: ‘a council having been called, they decided.’ ⁵ Causal *eum*; see (350). ⁶ *viderent*. ⁷ For ‘tenses of the infinitive in indir. disc.,’ see (301, 302, 305, 318). ⁸ Subord. verb. in indir. disc.; see (306).

438.—¹ Superlative of *bonus*; see (472), acc. sing. neut. pred. adj. with *esse* limiting the *verbal phrase*, *quemque . . . reverti et convenire*, which phrase is the subject of *esse*: ‘An infin. may have another verb or a verbal phrase for its subject being *neuter*.’ Translate: ‘that it was best for each one to return.’ ² From *quisque*; subj. of *reverti* and *convenire*. ³ Acc. of end or limit of motion *without ad.* ⁴ ‘to defend;’ see (355) and example. ⁵ Subj. of *intrōduxissent*. ⁶ Subjunc. mood because it is a subordinate verb in indir. disc., depending indirectly upon *constituerunt*; notice the sequence. This pluperf. subjunc. was *fut. perf. indic.* in the original sentence, conveying the same *time relation* as that of a verb in the protasis of a more vivid fut. condition; see (223, 396).

fīnibus dēcertārent; praetereā⁷ cōgnōverant Dīvitiācum atque Aeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre.⁸ Hīs⁹ persūadērī ut diūtius morārentur¹⁰ neque¹¹ suīs¹² auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

439.—The Belgians will assemble from all sides to defend¹ those² states into which² the Romans first lead³ an army: [Ōrātiō Rēcta]. Scouts inform Caesar that the Belgians will assemble⁴ from all sides to defend those states into which the Romans first lead⁵ an army: [Ōrātiō Oblīqua].

LESSON XCII.

CHAPTER XI.

The Romans pursue and kill many Belgae.

440.—Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī,¹ cum² sibi quisque pīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre proprāret, fēcērunt³ ut profectiō cōnsimilis fugae⁴ vidērētur. Hāc rē per⁵ speculātōrēs statim cōgnitā, Caesar īnsidiās

⁷ ‘and besides.’ ⁸ ‘were drawing near to.’ ⁹ *his*: explained in (380).
¹⁰ *ut . . . morarentur*: ‘to delay.’ ¹¹ ‘and not.’ ¹² Indir. object, ‘to their friends.’

439.—¹ *ad + gerundive*; why does the *ending* of this gerundive differ from that of the gerundive in the text above? ² Why feminine? ³ Fut. perf. indic. representing action *completed in the future* before another fut. action; see (223), for tense required to express such time relation in the protasis. If considered an indir. quest., the mood would be subjunc.; what tense (subjunc.) would here represent the fut. perf. indic.? Why not the *pluperf.*, as in the text (438)? ⁴ Principal verb in O. O. following ‘inform’; see (306). ⁵ Subordinate verb in O. O.; this verb is *fut. perf. (indic.)* in the direct disc.; to what tense is it changed in the indir.? see (306).

440.—¹ *Depon. particip.*; mod. the *subj. hostes* contained in *fecerunt*; see (340). ² Causal *cum*; with *peteret* and *properaret* (*subj. quisque*); these clauses mod. *fecerunt*; ‘since each man sought for himself;’ see (350). ³ *fecerunt ut profectio videretur*; ‘(the enemy) made their departure seem; literally, “caused it so that,” etc. ⁴ See ‘dat. with adjs.’; (126). ⁵ ‘by means of.’

veritus,⁶ quod⁷ nōndum perspēxerat quā dē causā hostēs discēderent,⁸ exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Rē ab explōrātōribus cōgnitā, prīmā lūce omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur mīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī⁹ novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium¹⁰ concidērunt, cum¹¹ ab extrēmō agmine,¹² ad quōs ventum erat,¹³ cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent.

441.—Because Caesar did not know¹ for what reason the enemy had departed,² he decided that he ought³ to keep his army in camp. By seeking⁴ the foremost place on (of) the road they will make their departure seem⁵ very much like flight. Caesar informed Labienus that scouts would be sent forward⁶ at early dawn.

LESSON XCIII.

CHAPTER XII.

Caesar attacks Noviodunum, which surrenders.

442.—Postrīdiē Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum quī proximī¹ Rēmīs erant exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere cōfectō² ad

⁶ ‘fearing.’ ⁷ The *quod* clause mod. *continuit*. ⁸ Indir. question; ‘for what reason the enemy were departing.’ ⁹ ‘the latter;’ meaning Labienus and his troops. ¹⁰ Pres. particip. mod. *eorum*, ‘of them as they were fleeing.’ ¹¹ Causal *cum* with *cōsisterent* and *sustinerent*. ¹² ‘those in (from) the extreme rear.’ ¹³ Impersonal: ‘whom they (our men) overtook,’ literally, ‘to whom it had been come’; see (365), example 2.

441.—¹ Imperf. indic. ² Why a *different tense* from that in the text? ³ Recast in the *pass.*, ‘that his army ought to be kept by him’; this is explained fully in (361, 362, 363); look up the Latin text for example 3 under, ‘dat. of personal agent.’ ⁴ Gerundive; see (253). ⁵ Why a *different tense* from that in the text? ⁶ This fut. infin. *pass.* (in O. O.) is expressed by the periphrasis ‘it would be that scouts would be sent’; see (382).

442.—¹ Adj. in the pred. nom. followed by the *dat.*; see (126). ² ‘by making a forced march.’

oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id³ ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod⁴ vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucis⁵ dēfēndentib⁹ expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnītis vīneās agere⁶ quae⁷ que ad oppūgnandum ūsuī⁸ erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā⁹ Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneās ad oppidum āctīs,¹⁰ aggere¹¹ iactō turribusque cōstītūtis, māgnitūdine¹² operum quae Gallī neque vīderant ante neque audierant et celeritatē Rōmānōrum permōtī¹³ lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt.

443.—Although¹ Caesar had heard that the town² had³ a few defenders, the townsmen were able to prevent⁴ him from taking⁵ it by storm. When⁶ the Suessiones came into the town on the next night and⁷ saw the agger and the towers, they were greatly alarmed and decided that they ought to⁸ ask for peace. Certain of⁹ the Gauls said they feared¹⁰ that they could not persuade¹¹ Caesar to make peace.

³ id (oppidum): obj. of *oppugnare*, 'having tried to attack that town immediately after the march.' ⁴ Acc. subj. of *esse*, 'which he heard was free.' ⁵ See 'abl. absol.', (364), example 3; 'although (only) a few were defending it.' ⁶ *agere* and *comparare* joined by *que*, follow *coepit*: 'he began to bring up the vineae and to procure.' ⁷ Subj. of *erant*; its anteced. is *ea*, the obj. of *comparare*. ⁸ Dat. of purpose; 'useful' ('for a use'). ⁹ ex *fuga*: 'in their flight.' ¹⁰ 'after the vineae had been quickly brought up.' ¹¹ Noun from *agger*; abl. absol. with *iacto* (from *iacio*). ¹² *magnitūdine et celeritate*: abls. of cause mod. *permoti*; 'being greatly alarmed by the greatness of the works and by the speed.' ¹³ P. p. mod. the subject implied in *mittunt*.

443.—1 Concessive *cum*; see (350). ² Dat. of possession; see (357). ³ *esse*. ⁴ *detergere*. ⁵ See (370): will you use *ne* or *quin*? 'taking (it) by storm' = one word, *expugno*. ⁶ *postquam*; see (358). ⁷ Position of *que*? ⁸ Recast in the pass., 'peace ought to be asked for by them'; see (361, 362, 363). ⁹ See (378), 'partitive gen., exceptions.' ¹⁰ *se vereri*. ¹¹ 'that not—after verbs of fear', see (343), (sequence following *dixerunt*): 'could persuade', use proper mood and tense of *possum* with the infin. *persuadere*; also see (345).

LESSON XCIV.

CHAPTER XIII.

Hearing of Caesar's approach, the Bellovaci surrender.

444—Caesar obsidibus¹ acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius² Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidō traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accēpit exercitumque in³ Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī⁴ cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia⁵ passuum quinque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs⁶ nātū ex oppidō ēgressī⁷ manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significare⁸ coepérunt, sēsē in ēius fidem ac potestātem venīre⁹ neque¹⁰ contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item cum¹¹ ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō passis manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis¹² petiērunt.

445.—Caesar received the foremost men of the state as hostages and did not put to death¹ the people. Then he started² for³ the territories of the Bellovaci, who, having learned⁴ that Caesar was coming, gathered⁵ in the town (of)

444.—¹ Apposition with *primis* and *filiis*, the two main words forming the basis of the abl. absol., ‘the foremost... and two sons... having been received’; translate, ‘after receiving as hostages the foremost men of,’ etc. ² Intensive pron. emphasizing Galbae, ‘of King Galba himself.’ ³ ‘against.’ ⁴ Rel. at the begin. of the sent. as a connective; incorporate *qui* in the *cum* clause. ‘now after these had carried... and while Caesar was distant.’ ⁵ ‘Acc. of extent in space,’ see (342). ⁶ *maiores natū*, literally, ‘greater by birth,’ ‘all the elders (older men).’ ⁷ Although modifying *maiores* (*nom. subj.*), it is translated by a co-ordinate verb, ‘came forth and began.’ ⁸ *vōce significare*: ‘to declare.’ ⁹ In a fut. sense: ‘that they would put themselves under his protection,’ etc. ¹⁰ ‘and not.’ ¹¹ ‘after he had come near... and while he was pitching;’ see note 4. ¹² *ab Romanis petierunt*, ‘asked the Romans for peace,’ ‘begged peace of the Romans.’

445.—¹ ‘put to death’ = *interficio*: ‘and not’ = one word in Latin. ² *proficiscor*. ³ *in* + acc. ⁴ Recast (why?) in the pass.; ‘the arrival of C. having been learned of.’ ⁵ *confero* + se.

Bratuspantium. The older men came⁶ out of the town and placed their state under⁷ Caesar's protection; likewise the women and children⁸ extended⁹ their hands from (off) the wall and begged peace *of* him.

LESSON XCV.

CHAPTER XIV.

Divitiacus pleads in behalf of the Bellovaci.

446.—Prō¹ hīs Dīvitīacū dīcīt: ‘Bellovacī omnī tempore² in fidē atque amīctiā cīvitātīs Aeduāe fuērunt; impulsī³ ā suīs pīncipibūs, quī dīcēbant⁴ Aeduōs omnīs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre,⁵ et⁶ ab Aeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō⁷ bellum intulērunt. Eī quī ēius cōnsilī pīncipēs fuērunt, quod cīvitātī māgnam calamitātēm intulerant, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt⁸ nōn sōlum Bellovacī sed etiam prō hīs Aeduī ut⁹ tuā clēmentiā¹⁰ ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtaris. Quod¹¹ sī fēceris,¹² Aeduōrum auctōritātēm apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliīs¹³ atque opibus, sī qua¹⁴ bella incidērunt, sustentārē cōnsuērunt.’

447.—The Bellovaci had been urged¹ on by their chiefs to make² war upon the Roman people. Those who were

⁶ Turn into a particip. (see text) and omit ‘and.’ ⁷ in + acc. ⁸ pueri.
⁹ Perf. indic. act. of tendo.

446.—¹ ‘in behalf of.’ ² ‘always.’ ³ P. p. p. *nom. plur.*: mod. the subject contained in *defecērunt* and *intulerunt*: ‘being urged on, they (the Bellovaci) both revolted.’ ⁴ ‘kept saying.’ ⁵ ‘that the Aeduī were enduring.’ ⁶ ‘both.’ ⁷ See (337). ⁸ Note the emphatic position of the verb. ⁹ ut . . . utaris; following *petunt*; ‘not only the Bellovaci beg . . . *you to exercise*.’ ¹⁰ Abl. with the depon. *utor*; see (353). ¹¹ quod: obj. of *fēceris*; ‘now . . . this,’ see (367). ¹² Fut. perf. in a more viv. fut. condition; ‘if you do (shall have done), see (223). ¹³ Abl. of means, mod. *sustentare*; ‘by whose aid and assistance.’ ¹⁴ quis (465) is used as the indef. pron. ‘any—some,’ *after si, nisi, ne, num* (226).

447.—¹ impello. ² ut + subjunc. (sequence?): *inferre bellum + dat.*

the chiefs in (of) this design brought³ great disaster upon their state. Divitiacus informed Caesar that those who were⁴ the leaders in this design had brought great disaster upon the state. Because Caesar knew for what reason⁵ they had done⁶ these things, he exercised⁷ his usual clemency toward⁸ the Bellovaci.

³ Again **inferre**, which takes the *acc.* and *dat.* ⁴ In a *past* sense = 'had been'; the subord. verb in O. O. goes in what mood? see (306). ⁵ 'for what reason,' **qua de causa**. ⁶ 'indir. quest.'; verb in what mood? see (313); sequence? ⁷ **utor** + abl. ⁸ **in** + *acc.*

C. IULI CAESARIS
DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ.

LIBER SECUNDUS.

Formation by the Belgae of a league against Caesar.

I. CUM esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā in hibernis, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīebat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. 5 Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā 10 molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōnnūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant. 15

Caesar strengthens his force by the addition of two legions and marches against them.

II. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriore Galliā novās cōnscripsit et initā aestāte, in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Quīntum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet,

5 ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūci. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn 10 existimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīserētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

*The Remi refuse to enter the league against the Romans
and surrender to Caesar.*

III. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omni opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt ad eum lēgātōs Iecium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis 10 Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōsēntīrent.

Through the Remi Caesar obtains information as to the number, etc., of the enemies' forces.

IV. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōsēdisse, Gallōs-

que quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī 5 patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā fīnīs suōs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, 10 proptereā quod propīnquitātibus affīnitātibusque coniūncī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūri-
mum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et homi-
num numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia cen- 15 tum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitī-
mōs; fīnīs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīvitiācum, 20 tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam: ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque suam summam tōtīus bellī omnium volun-
tāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī 25 inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō 30 nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia

After receiving hostages from the Remi Caesar crosses the Axona on his way to meet the Belgae.

V. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ḍrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre pīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs

diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīvitiācum Aeduum
 5 māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere reī pūblicae
 commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē
 cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id
 fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum
 intrōdūixerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs
 10 mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnīs Belgārum
 cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque
 iam longē abesse ab eīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab
 Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rē-
 mōrum fīnibus, exercitū trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi
 15 castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs
 flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae essent tūta ab hostibus
 reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus
 ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō
 flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte
 20 flūminis Quintum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex
 cohortib⁹ relinquit; castra in altitūdinē pedum duode-
 cim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

The Belgae attack Bibrax. The way in which the Belgae lay siege to a town.

VI. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax
 aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū
 Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum
 est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est
 5 haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moeni-
 bus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque
 dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt
 mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum
 tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōn-
 10 sistēdī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnēm oppūgnandī nox
 fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nōbilitātē et grātiā inter-

suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

15

When Caesar sends aid to the Remi, the Belgae abandon the siege and turn against him.

VII. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īisdem ducibus ūsus qui nūntiī ab Iccīō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostib⁹ eādem dē causā spēs potiundī 5 oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quōs adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus 10 sīgnificābātūr, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar prepares strong defences upon a hill near the Axona and awaits the enemies' attack.

VIII. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit: cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent perīclitābātūr. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad 5 aciem īstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō,—quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē ēdītus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs īstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastīgā- 10 tus paulātim ad plānitiēm redībat,—ab utrōque latere ēius

collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadrin-
gentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique
tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īstrūxisset, hostēs,
15 quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs
suōs circumvenire possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus
quās proximē cōscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō
opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō
castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex
20 castrīs ēductās īstrūxerant.

The enemy attempt to cross the river in an effort to surprise Titurius.

IX. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impētōs aggredierentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim 5 proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs 10 repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, cō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Quīntus Titurius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interseinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque 15 nostrōs prohibērent.

A fierce battle ensues in which the Belgae are defeated and dispersed.

X. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Āriter in eō

locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī māgnum cōrūm numerū occīdērunt; per cōrūm corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnāntēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spēm sē fefellisse intellexērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in fīnēs prīnum Rōmānī exercitū intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnībus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīvitiācum atque Aeduōs fīnībus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

The Romans pursue and slaughter large numbers of the Belgae.

XI. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ūrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmū itineris locū peteret et domū pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndū perspēxerat, exercitū equitātumque castrīs continuuit Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnēm equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. Hīs Quīntūm Pedium et Lūciūm Aurunculēum Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa

mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs 15 ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ūrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum 20 multitūdinem nostri interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsumque sōlis sequī dēstitērunt, sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

After a forced march Caesar attacks Noviodunum and the town surrenders.

XII. Postrīdiē ēius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā recipērent, in finīs Suessiōnum quī proximī Rēmīs erant exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere cōflectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre 5 cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, prop̄ter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucis dēfēndentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnītīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in 10 oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et petēntibus Rēmīs ut 15 cōservārentur impetrant.

When the Belloraci learn of Caesar's approach, they too submit.

XIII. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armīsque omnibus ex

oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō 5 oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepérunt sēsē in cīus fidem et potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum 10 accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Divitiacus pleads in behalf of the Bellovaci.

XIV. Prō hīs Dīvitiācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduāe fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipib⁹, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indī- 5 gnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcissem⁹ et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōsiliī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantā calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniā profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs ut suā clē- 10 mentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātū- rum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

Caesar spares the Bellovaci and demands hostages.

Character and habits of the Nervii.

XV. Caesar honōris Dīvitiācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidē receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritātē atque

hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs popo-
 seit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collatīs,
 ab eō locō in fīnīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque
 omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum fīnīs Nerviī attin-
 gēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaer-
 reret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercā-
 tō tōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriām
 pertinentium īferrī, quod eīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs
 et remittī virtūtem exīstīmārent; esse hominēs ferōs mā-
 gnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs
 Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque vir-
 tūtem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs mīssūrōs
 neque ūllam condicōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

*The Nervii encamp on the Sabis and await the approach
 of Caesar.*

XVI. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inve-
 niēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius
 mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs
 cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā
 5 cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs
 utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experī-
 rentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatucoīrum cōpiās
 atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad
 pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse, quō
 10 propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

*Urged on by deserters from the Roman army the Nervii
 plan to attack Caesar's advanced guard.*

XVII. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque
 praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex
 dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem

secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris 5 nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervenērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum māgnūm numērūm intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnūm spatium abessent, hanc sub 10 sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōsiliūm quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt, 15 pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātū, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īflexīs crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effēce-
rant, ut īstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmenta praebērent, 20 quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omit-
tendum sibi cōsiliūm Nerviī exīstīmāvērunt.

Location of Caesar's camp. Position of the two armies.

XVIII. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrā-rius, passūs circiter duecentōs īfīmus apertus, ab superiōre 5 parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in aperīō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitū vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

The Romans surprised by the unexpected attack skilfully carried out by the Nervii.

XIX. Caesar equitātū praemīssō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod ad hostīs appropīnquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās 5 dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostiūm equitātū proelium commīsērunt. 10 Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs recipērent et rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs īsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coēpērunt. 15 Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs, qui in silvās abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in 20 nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs et prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manib⁹ nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant 25 contendērunt.

Conduct of Caesar's soldiers and lieutenants in an emergency.

XX. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īsigne cum ad arma concuriū oportēret, sīgnūm tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī

militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īstruenda, militēs cohortandī, sīgnūm dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultatibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militū, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per se quae vidēbantur administrābant. 15

So sudden the attack, the soldiers are compelled to begin fighting before they can arm themselves.

XXI. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperatīs ad cohortandōs militēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiore ūratiōne cohortātus quam utī suaे p̄stinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adicī posset, proeliī committendī sīgnūm dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmīcandum animus ut nōn modo ad īsignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit. Quām quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque p̄ima sīgna cōspēxit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendīs suis pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret. 15

Confusion on the part of the soldiers. Difficulties encountered by the commander.

XXII. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs (ut ante 5 dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectīs p̄spectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitātē fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

In one quarter the Romans win; in another they lose.

XXIII. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōflectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen com-5 pulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantēs īsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, 10 ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātī Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātīs castrīs, cūm in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs 15 Nervīi cōfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

The day seems to be going against the Romans. The Nervii gain Caesar's camp.

XXIV. Eodem tempore equites nostrī levisque armātūrāc peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperen, ad versis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā et 5 summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in 10 partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equites Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ab cīvitāte ad Caesarem mīssī vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, 15 cālōnēs, equites, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs, cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt. 20

Caesar seizes a shield and takes part in the fight in the foremost ranks.

XXV. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortatiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs sīgniferōque interfectō, 5 sīgnō āmīssō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centu-

riōnibus aut vulneratīs aut occīsīs, in hīs pīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs grāvibusque vulnerib⁹ cōffectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse 10 tardiōrēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostīs neque ā fronte ex īferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod summittī posset; scūtō ab novissimīs ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō, 15 quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in pīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellatīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē illatā mīlitibus et redintegratō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū im- 20 perātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cupe-ret, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Caesar reinforced by the arrival of three legions. The scene begins to change.

XXVI. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitūm monuit ut paulatīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgnā in hostēs īferrent. Quō factō, cum aliis aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coēpērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et 10 Titus Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī, cum ex equitū et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētūr cōgnōvissent, 15 nihil ad celeritatēm sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

A desperate encounter in which the Romans win.

XXVII. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōflectī prōcubuis-sent, scūtis innīxī proelium redintegrārent. Tum cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occur-rērunt; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlē-rent, omnibus in locīs pūgnārunt, quō sē legiōnāriīs mili-tibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestiterunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum ceci-dissent, proximī iacentib⁹ īsisterent atque ex eōrum cor-poribus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, 10 quī supererent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae vir-tūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissi-mum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissi-mum locum ; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō 15 redēgerat.

Terrible fate of the Nervii. Pardon for the few that survive.

XXVIII. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria et palūdēs coniectōs dīixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōrib⁹ nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium 5 quī supererant cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt ; et, in commemorandā cīvitātis cala-mitātē, ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mili-bus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac 10 supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīlēgentissimē cō-servāvit, suīisque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et

fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

Caesar next lays siege to a stronghold in which the Aduatuci have gathered.

XXIX. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē 5 nātūrā mūnītū contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplīcī altissimō mūrō mānierant, tum māgnī ponderis 10 saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliām facerent, eīs impedimentīs quae sēcum agere et portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia homi- 15 num ūnā reliquērunt. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īferrent aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

From the walls they taunt the Romans in their preparations for an attack.

XXX. Ac pīmō adventū exercitū nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vällō passuum in circuitū xv mīliū crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē constinēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrīm procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, pīmū irridēre ex mūrō atque incre-

pitare vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō īstruerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis p̄ae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevi-¹⁰ tās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrī mōtūrōs sēsē cōfiderent?

Soon they lose heart and ask of Caesar his terms of surrender.

XXXI. Ubi vērō movērī et appropīquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque īnūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn exīstīmāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prō-⁵ movēre possent, sc̄e suaque omnia eōrum potestātī per-
mittere dīxērunt. Īnum petere et dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sc̄e armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs¹⁰ ac suaे virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sc̄e dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdū-
cerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātūm interfici inter quōs dominārī cō-
suēssent.

15

They are promised protection if they disarm. Treachery on the side of the enemy.

XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sc̄e magis cōsuētū-
dine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōservātūrum, sī prius, quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sc̄e dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sc̄e

5 id quod in Nerviis fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditīciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam īferrent. Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxerunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam
10 mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

The enemies' plans fail to carry and they meet a terrible fate.

XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ab mīlitib⁹ iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc-
5 tūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxe-
rant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnī-
10 tiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repentinō ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignībus significatiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita āriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō,
15 contrā eōs qui ex vallō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret. Occisiō ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postridē ēius diēi refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmīssīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sec-
20 tiōnem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs

quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlīum quīnquāgintā trium.

The maritime nations submit to the Romans.

XXXIV. Eōdem tempore ā Publiō Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Curiosolitas, Esubiōs, Aulereōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnīs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī 5 esse redāctās.

Ambassadors come to Caesar from across the Rhine. The army goes into winter quarters and a thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

XXXV. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incoherent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in 5 Italiam Illyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestātē ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonēs, quaeque cīvitātēs propīnquaē hīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesse rat, legiōnibus in hībernācula dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris in diēs quīn- 10 decim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

TABLE OF ABBREVIATIONS.

abl. absol.	= ablative absolute	lim.	= limit
affirm.	= affirmative	mod.	= modify
agreem.	= agreement	neg.	= negative
appos.	= apposition	p. p.	= perfect participle
condit.	= condition	p. p. p.	= perfect pass. participle
depen.	= depend	quest.	= question
depon.	= deponent	sep.	= separation
dir.	= direct	subj.	= subject
disc.	= discourse	subjunc.	= subjunctive
doub.	= double	subord.	= subordinate
i.e.	= that is	substanc.	= substantive
impers.	= impersonal	syst.	= system
indir.	= indirect	viv.	= vivid
lit.	= literally	O. O.	= <i>ōrātiō obliqua</i>
		O. R.	= <i>ōrātiō rēcta</i>

NOTES.

BOOK II.

THE CAMPAIGNS OF CAESAR IN GAUL.

Gallia, 'Gaul', as used in Caesar, included the vast region which comprises all of France, the greater part of Switzerland, and the western portion of Germany, with Holland and Belgium.

The campaigns of Caesar in Gaul lasted through eight years (B.C. 58-51), and are described in eight books—each book giving an account of the operations of one year.

In Book I (B.C. 58), after a general description of Gaul, Caesar describes the war with the Helvetians, a tribe of Northern Switzerland numbering over 300,000, who attempted to reach Western Gaul by an armed emigration through central Gaul. Their attempt to pass was checked by Caesar, who, after several skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced the Helvetians to return into their territories with the loss of 200,000 lives. He also tells of an engagement with a powerful tribe of Germans under their chief, Ariovistus, who had settled in Eastern Gaul. These were repulsed and driven back across the Rhine.

Book II (B.C. 57) contains an account of the conspiracy and defeat of the Belgians, a people in Northern Gaul. The Belgians were a fierce and barbarous people living amid forests and swamps far remote from any country reached by the Roman arms. They appear to have formed a powerful confederacy and to have offered to Caesar a most desperate resistance. In a battle, perhaps the most desperate of all that Caesar ever fought, the enemy was defeated and the confederacy of Northern Gaul suppressed, with the almost complete annihilation of the Nervii, the bravest of the Belgian tribe. In this campaign Publius Crassus reduced the maritime states to submission.

CHAPTER I.—1. *cum esset*: ‘while Caesar was,’ see (128, 203); note the emphatic position of the *verb*. *citeriore Gallia*: that is, northern Italy. *ita uti*: ‘just as.’ 2. *demonstravimus*: the rhetorical *we*. Caesar speaks of himself as the general in the *third* person, as the writer in the *first*. 3. *litteris*: abl. of means, see (43 b), mod. *certior fiebat*; ‘by letters from (of) Labienus.’ *que*: joins *afferebantur* and *certior fiebat*, imperf. of *repeated action*, see (102); ‘kept coming in and he was informed (from day to day).’ *certior*: with *pass.*, see (338). *Belgas*: acc. subj. of *coniurare* and *dare*, depend upon *certior fiebat*; ‘that all the Belgians *were* conspiring;’ for the *tense of the infin.*, see (301, 302, 305, 318). *quam*: acc. subj. of *esse*, agreeing with the *pred acc. partem*, rather than with *Belgas*, see (373); ‘who, we had said, constitute (*esse*) a third part of Gaul.’ 4. *esse*: indir. disc. depen. on *dixeramus*, see (301, 302, 318). *dixeramus*: pluperf. denoting what took place before the time of *demonstravimus*. 5. *inter se dare*: ‘were exchanging.’ *coniurandi*: gen. of the gerund dep. upon *causas*. In the sight of the Romans any war against Rome was a ‘conspiracy.’ But this uprising of the Belgians was in reality the effort of a spirited people to protect their rights. 6. *esse*: following *certior fiebat*, ‘that the reasons for (of) conspiring were *as follows* (has).’ *quod vererentur, sollicitarentur*: subjunc. because subord. clauses in indir. disc., see (306); the two *quod* clauses are preceded by *primum*, ‘in the first place,’ and *deinde*, ‘in the second place’; for the *sequence of tense*, see (135); these subjunctives are dependent upon a *past* verb, *fiebat*. *ne*: ‘that’ or ‘lest,’ see (343), *verbs of fear*, etc. 7. *ad eos*: ‘against them.’ *sollicitarentur*: ‘because they were being incited.’ 8. *ab Gallis*: pers. agent, see (237). *partim qui*: ‘some of whom.’ *ut*: introduces *noluerant* (*indic. mood*); the indic. verbs in the remaining part of the chapt. indicate that this is not regarded as part of Labienus’s report (which would make the verbs *subjunc. in indir. disc.*), but as explanatory remarks made by Caesar. *ut noluerant*: ‘as they had been unwilling,’ note the force of the *pluperf.* *Germanos*: acc. subj. of *versari*, following *noluerant*, ‘that the Germans should remain.’ 9. *ita ferebant moleste*: literally, ‘so were bearing with trouble;’ freely, ‘took it hard.’ *populi*: gen. sing. dep. upon *exercitum*. 10. *hiemare, inveterascere*: with the subj. acc. *exercitum* in indir. disc. depending upon *moleste ferebant*; ‘that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold in Gaul.’ 11. *partim qui*: anteced. of *qui* is *Gallis* (line 8); ‘some of whom

were always desiring.' *mobilitate, levitate*: abl. of cause, see (210) 'on account of inconstancy and fickleness'; the ablatives mod. *studebant, imperiis*: dat. with *studebant*, for which construction see (348); 'a new government,' literally, 'new ruling powers.' 12. *ab nonnullis*: pers. agent, mod. *sollicitabantur*, 'they were incited by some *also* (*etiam*),' see (237). *quod*: with *occupabantur*, a causal clause, mod. *sollicitabantur*; 'they were incited also because royal power was being (constantly) usurped.' *a potentioribus*: adj. as substan., see (258); 'by the more powerful and by those who.' 13. *ad concendos*: gerundive, see (253); 'for hiring.' *facultates*: 'opportunities,' 'means.' 14. *regna*: plur., literally, 'kingdoms'—see translation above as the subj. of *occupabantur*, beginning with *quod*. *minus*: adv. mod. another adv. *facile*, 'less easily.' *rem*: obj. of *consequi*. *imperio nostro*: 'under our rule,' abl. absol. implying condition; the idea is, 'the government being ours,' see (364)—2. 15. *consequi poterant*: 'who could secure that or such power (*rem*).'

CHAPTER II.—1. *nuntiis, litteris*: abl. of cause, mod. and in the translation *following commotus*; '(being) greatly alarmed by these messages and letters.' *duas legiones*: XIIIth and XIVth. Caesar had now eight legions, numbered VII to XIV, inclusive, amounting to perhaps 60,000 men including auxiliaries. 2. *inita*: p. p. p. of *ineo*, forming an abl. absol. of *time* with *aestate*, 'at the beginning of summer'; what literally? see (287). *in interiorem Galliam*: see (35); 'into the Central part of Gaul.' 3. *qui deduceret*: anteced. is *Q. Pedius*, rel. clause of purpose (*qui = ut is*), see (311); sequence derived from *misit*, see (135). *Pedius*, nephew of Caesar and one of his heirs. 4. *ipse*: intensive pron., placed first for special emphasis, 'Caesar himself.' *cum primum*: 'as soon as;' in the early part of May or June; when grass and young grain began to be plentiful for the numerous beasts of burden carrying military stores as well as for the horses of the cavalry and officers. *inciperet*: 'began'—subj. is *copia*. 5. *dat*: historical pres., used for the historical perfect to enliven the narrative. *Senonibus, Gallis*: why dat.? see (330). 6. *Belgis*: see 'dat. with adjs.', (126). *uti (ut) cognoscant, faciant*: substantive clauses of *purpose* in apposition with, or defining, *negotium*; observe the *sequence, pres. + pres.* *gerantur*: subjunc. by *attraction*, see (276); 'to find out those things which are being "transacted." 7. *se*: 'and to inform him (Caesar);' if the *subord.* clause expresses the words or thought of the *main* clause,

the *reflexive* is used to refer to the subject of the latter. **constanter**: ‘uniformly,’ without disagreement in the reports. 8. **manus**: acc. subj. of **cogi** (pres. pass. *infin.*); ‘that bands (forces) were being collected.’ **in locum**: not *abi.*, but *acc.*, see (35); mod. a verb of *motion*—*conduci*; ‘was being gathered.’ 9. **tum vero**: observe the emphatic position, ‘then indeed.’ **dubitandum (esse sibi)**: periphrastic *pres. infin. pass.* used impersonally, depen. upon **existimavit**; see (361, 362, 363); literally, ‘he thought it ought not to be hesitated by him;’ freely, ‘he thought he ought not to hesitate.’ 10. **quin proficiuceretur**: ‘to set out’ (lit., ‘but that he should,’ etc.); in the sense of ‘hesitate,’ **dubito** regularly takes the *infin.*, this being an exception; **dubito**, ‘to doubt,’ takes **quin + subjunc.** 11. **diebus**: abl. of time within which, see (65); ‘in about fifteen days.’ **ad fines**: Caesar marched from Vesontio to the Belgian frontier (north-west), about 145 miles, in 15 days.

CHAPTER III.—1. **eo**: ‘thither’ = **ad fines Belgarum**. **de improviso**: ‘unexpectedly.’ **opinione**: abl. after the comparative **celerius**, see (369); ‘than any one expected,’ lit. ‘than all opinion.’ 2. **Remi**: they were next to the Aedui in power and were friendly to the Romans. These people were impressed by the decision of Caesar’s movements, and, not having committed themselves to the Belgian confederacy, they were free to give Caesar information of the enemy’s designs. **ex Belgis**: for the partitive gen. **Belgarum**, see (378); ‘who are the nearest of the *Belgians* to Gaul.’ 3. **legatos**: predicate apposition; observe that **legatus** sometimes means ‘lieutenant,’ and sometimes, as here, ‘ambassador.’ **primos**: adj. used as substant., see (258), in apposition with the proper names preceding it; ‘the foremost men.’ 4. **qui dicerent**: not ‘who said,’ but ‘who *were to say*’ (or simply ‘to say’), rel. clause of purpose, see (311). The rest of the chapt. is given in *indir. disc.* Notice that the *principal clauses* have the verbs in the *infin.* with a *subj. acc.*, and all *subord. or depend. clauses* take the *subjunc.*; see (301, 302, 306, 318, 392). **se in fidem permittere**: ‘that they placed themselves and all their possessions under the protection;’ **se** is here the *acc. obj.* of **permittere**, while the *subj. acc. (se)* is omitted to prevent awkward repetition; *regularly the subj. acc. is expressed in indir. disc.* 5. **neque**: ‘and that they had *not* united (conspired).’ **cum Belgis**: see (43). 6. **neque**: ‘nor had they conspired against.’ 7. **paratos**: pred. adj. in the *acc.* to agree with the *subj. of esse* (**se** understood). **et . . . et**: ‘both . . . and.’ **oppidis**: sometimes *place where* is put in the *abl.* *without a prep.*, as with **loco**.

and *castris*. 8. *frumento, rebus*: see (43 b). 9. *esse*: *indir. disc.*, ‘that all the rest of the Belgians *were* under arms’ *Germanos*: *acc. subj.* of *coniunxisse*. *cis Rhenum*: i.e. the west side of the Rhine; Caesar writes from the standpoint of the Roman Province. *incolant*: ‘who dwell’—in the *dir. disc.* it is *incolunt*. 10. *his*: = *Belgis*. *tantum esse furorem*: ‘and that the madness of all these *was* so great that (*ut*).’ *eorum omnium*: i.e. *Belgarum et Germanorum*. 11. *ut . . . potuerint*: affirmative result clause, ‘that they could prevent’; see (321); observe the *perf. tense*, and note that in clauses of result, the *perf. subjunc.* is very often used after secondary (past) tenses. *ne . . . quidem*: make emphatic the word between them, ‘(could prevent) *not even the Suessiones*.’ The Suessiones occupied territory west of the Remi. 12. *qui utantur, habeant*: *subjunc.* for two reasons; subord. clause in *indir. disc.*, see (306, 392); or by *attraction*, being within the *ut* clause, see (276). *iure, legibus*: abl. with depon. verb *utantur*, see (353). *ius*: = ‘principles of justice,’ *lex*: = the enacted ‘law’; ‘who enjoyed the same rights and laws.’ 13. *cum ipsis*: i. e. the Remi; in *indir. disc.* *se* is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of *ipse* may be used instead, especially for *emphasis*. 14. *quin consentirent*: ‘from uniting;’ for construction with *quin*, see (370).

CHAPTER IV.—1. *cum . . . quaereret*: ‘when Caesar inquired of these’ or ‘asked these men.’ *quae*, etc.: ‘what and how great states *were*.’ 2. *essent*: *subjunc.* of *indir. quest.*, see (313). *quid*: ‘adverbial acc.’, see (374). *reperiebat*: *imperf.* to denote repeated action. *plerisque*: *indir. disc.* to the end of the chapt., except the words *Remi dicebant* (line 10); ‘that most of the Belgians were descended from (*ab*).’ These were especially the Nervii and Treveri, who claimed descent from the Germans—a proud and heroic ancestry. 3. *que*: joins *ortos esse* and *consedisse*; *Belgas* is the subj. of both verbs. 4. *traductos*: p. p. p. mod. *Belgas*; this construction is fully explained in (316). *propter . . . fertilitatem*: limits *consedisse*. ‘*que*: connects *consedisse* and *expulisse*, which have the same subj. *Gallos*: obj. of *expulisse*; ‘and had driven out the Gauls who inhabited.’ 5. *incolerent*: subord. clause in *indir. disc.*, see (276, 306, 392). *solos*: acc. pred. adj. with *esse*, limiting *Belgas*; *solos* is an adj. used as a noun, see (258). *qui . . . prohibuerint*: subord. clause in *indir. disc.*; observe the use of the *perf. tense*; see chapt. 3, note 11. *ut . . . potuerint*. In the *dir. disc.*, *solus est*, etc., takes a rel. clause with the verb in the *subjunc.*, called the ‘characteristic relative clause.’ Translate *solosque*, etc.; ‘that they (the Belgians) were the only men

who could prevent.' 6. *memoria*: abl. of time when, mod. *prohibuerint*, 'in (during) the memory—remembrance—of our fathers.' *omni*, etc.: translate by a 'when' clause. 7. *ingredi*: depen. upon *prohibuerint*, see (370); 'from entering.' *qua ex re*: 'and in consequence of this fact;' see (367). *fieri*: pass. infin. of *facio*, depen. upon *reperiebat*; 'he found out that it was coming to pass.' 8. *uti . . . sumerent*: this clause is the *subj.* of *fieri*; that *what* was coming to pass? viz., 'that they were assuming.' *memoria*: abl. of cause (compare note 6 above), mod. *sumerent*; 'in consequence of their remembrance.' 9. *in re militari*: 'in the art of war.' *de numero*: i.e. the numerical strength of the Belgian soldiery; (the rest of the chapt. depends upon *Remi dicebant*). 10. *omnia . . . explorata*: almost = *omnia se exploravisse*, 'that they had found out all *about* (*de*); agreem. of this particip. and its use with *habere* is fully explained in (375). *propterea quod*: 'on account of the fact that' = 'because,' introducing *cognoverint*, again the *perf. tense*, as in note 5 above. The perf. is very often retained in *indir. disc.*, and a statement is made more vivid by putting it in the tense that the speaker used. The speaker's word was '*cognovimus*,' 'we know' (lit. 'have found out'). 11. *coniuncti*: p. p. mod. the *subj.* of *cognoverint*, see (316); 'because, being closely connected by blood and marriage relationships.' *quantam . . . pollicitus sit*: *subjunc.* of *indir. quest.*, see (313); depen. upon *cognoverint*; 'how great a multitude *each one* (*quisque*) had promised.' *quisque*: i.e. each representative of the war council. 13. *plurimum valere*: follows *Remi dicebant*; 'that the Bellovaci were the most powerful.' 15. *hos posse*, etc.: 'that the latter (these) could muster.' *armata milia centum* = *armatorum hominum milia centum*; as here used, *milia* is the noun with which the adj. *armata* agrees. *pollicitos esse*: 'that they had promised.' 16. *sexaginta (milia) electa*: 'sixty thousand picked men.' *postulare*: 'were demanding.' *sibi*: refers to *Bellovacos*. 17. *suos*: refers to the *Remi*. *latissimos*: 'very wide.' 18. *possidere*: *subj.* is *eos* (*Suessiones*) understood. *fuisse*: 'had been,' in the direct disc. *fuisse* becomes *fuit*. 20. *totius Galliae*, etc.: 'the most influential man in entire Gaul;' *totius* is declined in (286). *qui . . . imperium obtinuerit*: 'who *had had* control of.' *cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but also.' *Britanniae*: This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature. 21. *esse*: 'they said that Galba *was now* king;' the speaker's words (dir. disc.) were '*nunc est rex Galba*'—compare note *fuisse* (line 18) above. *ad hunc*: 'upon this one.' 23. *summam*: *noun*, acc. *subj.* of *defiri*; 'that the manage-

ment (conduct) of . . . was being conferred.' **voluntate**: abl. of manner, see (210). **habere**: subj. is **Suessiones** **polliceri**: 'that they were promising.' 24. **milia**: see note, line 15. **Nervios**: acc. subj. of **polliceri**. **maxime feri**: *adv.* and *adj.* = the superl. degree of the adj., 'very fierce.' 26. **habeantur**: 'are considered;' observe the use of the *pres.* *subjunc.* where the *imperf.* would have been more regular; see note, lines 5 and 10, above. 27. **Atrebates**: for this and the following proper names (of tribes), ending with **Aduatucos**, supply **polliceri**. 30. **Condruſos**, etc.: acc. subjects of **polliceri** or **confidere** **posſe** understood, the infin. clause depending upon (**se**) **arbitrari**; 'the Remi said *they* (**se**) believed that the Condruſi, etc., could muster.' **qui . . . appellantur**: the indic. indicates that this is an explanatory note made by Caesar and not included in the address of the Remi; not so with **qui . . . habeantur**, **absint**, line 25, which is treated as a subord. clause in *indir.* disc.

CHAPTER V.—1. **cohortatus**, **prosecutus**: 'having encouraged the Remi and having addressed them kindly;' both particips. mod. *Caesar*. 2. **senatum**: a Roman term used to describe a Gallic institution. **liberos**: acc. subj. of **adduci**, depend. upon **iussit**; 'he ordered the children of . . . to be brought to him'; see *iubeo* (155). 3. **obsides**: pred. apposition, 'as hostages.' The boys would probably be sold into captivity, if these chiefs were to break their faith. **Quae**: for use and meaning of the rel. pron. at the beginning of a sentence, see (367); 'now all these things'; see also (258). 4. **ad diem**: 'to the day'; as we say, 'to the minute'—promptly. **ipse**: intensive force; 'Caesar in person.' 5. **cohortatus**: p. p. depon. mod. **ipse**, but best rendered by a *co-ordinate verb*; 'encourages Divitiacus very earnestly and explains *how greatly it concerns*.' **reipublicae**, **salutis**: gen. depen. upon **intersit**; the impersonal verbs **interest** and **refert** ('it interests,' 'it concerns'); take the gen. of the **person**, rarely of the **thing**, affected; 'the republic and their common safety.' This Divitiacus was one of the leading men among the Aedui who were now in alliance with the Romans. 6. **intersit**: *indir.* *quest.*, see (313). **manus**: acc. subj. of **distineri**; this infin. clause is the subj. of **intersit**, 'that the bands (forces) of the enemy be kept apart.' **ne . . . configendum sit**: neg. purpose, see (211, 320); **configendum sit**, *pres.* *subjunc.* pass. periphrastic, used impersonally; lit., 'that it may not have to be fought (by them),' better, 'lest they should have to fight'; see (361, 362, 363). 8. **id fieri posse**: depen. upon **docet**; 'he explains that this (**id**) can be

done.' *sueas copias*: notice the emphatic position. 9. *introduxerint, coeperint*: more viv. fut. condit. turned into indir. disc.; both verbs were *fut. perf. indic.* in the dir. disc.; see (223, 396). *eorum* = *Bellovacorum*. The *Bellovaci* were already disaffected in that they had not secured the leadership of the league and the ravaging of their lands would probably lead them from their homes. 10. *post quam*: with *vidit* and *cognovit*; see (358). 11. *coactas*: p. p. p. mod. *copias*, but best turned into a finite verb; see (381). *neque* = *et . . . non*: 'and when he found out from . . . that they (*eas copias*) were *not* far distant now (by this time).' 15. *quae res*: see (367); 'now this position.' Caesar's camp was protected in the rear by the *Axona*, and in front by a small marshy stream. Traces of Caesar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a hill called *Mau-champ*, about eighty feet above the river, with gentle slopes, well suited for a camp. *latus*: noun, acc. obj. of *muniebat*. 16. *muniebat, reddebat*: for the force of the *imperf.*, see (102); 'both kept one side of . . . fortified and rendered secure (*tuta*) from the enemy (those places) which were behind him.' *essent*: subjunc. in a characteristic rel. clause. *tuta*: acc. plur. neut. mod. *ea loca* (understood), the anteced. of *quae*. 18. *efficiebat*: subj. is *quae res*; the order is *et efficiebat ut commeatus possent portari*; literally, 'and caused (it) so that supplies could be brought'; better, 'and made it possible for supplies to be brought.' 19. *in altera parte*: 'on the other side.' 21. *pedum duodecim*: gen. of measure or quality with *vallo*. 22. *duodeviginti pedum*: 'eighteen feet in width'—the depth being about ten feet. *munire*: subj. is *eum*, (*Sabinum*).

CHAPTER VI.—1. *ab his castris*: adverbial phrase mod. *aberat*; 'from this camp.' *Bibrax*: in apposition with *oppidum*. 2. *milia*: acc. of extent in space, see (342). *id*: with *oppidum* understood, obj. of *oppugnare*. *ex itinere*: 'on the march'—that is, turning aside from their course without making any formal disposition of their troops. *impetu*: see (210). 3. *sustentatum est*: 'impersonal verb,' see (365); 'it was with difficulty that they held out.' 4. *eadem atque*: 'the same as,' with *oppugnatio*; 'the mode of attack (*oppugnatio*) of the Gauls (which is) the same as (that) of the Belgians is as follows (*haec*).'*ubi*: with *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est*; see (358). 5. *circumiecta multitudine*: abl. absol. mod. *coepti sunt iaci*. *moenibus*: dat. indir. obj. of *circumiecta*, 'a multitude of men being thrown round all the walls.' 6. *iaci*: pres. infin. pass. (complementary infin.) with *coepti sunt*, which is always *pass.* when accom-

panied by a *pass. infin.*; 'when (ubi) stones began to be thrown.' *que*: connects *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est*. *defensoribus*: abl. of separation, mod. *nudatus est*; 'was stripped of defeneis.' 7. *testudine*: 'having formed a *testudo*', by lapping their shields above their heads as was their custom in storming a town. 8. *quod*: rel. pron. at the beginning of the paragraph, see (367); 'now this was easily done in the present instance (tum).' *cum . . . conicerent*: historical *cum*, see (128, 203, 359); *conicerent* is plur. from the individuals composing the *subj. multitudo*. 10. *nulli*: 'dat. of possession,' see (357); 'no one had the power to stand (could stand) upon the wall'; what literally? 11. *summa nobilitate et gratia*: 'abl. of quality or descriptiōn,' see (376); supply *vir*, '(a man) of the highest nobility and influence.' *inter suos*: 'among his (own people),' see (258). *oppido*: dat., see (337); 'who was then in command of the town.' 12. *unus*: adj. used as a noun, in apposition with *Iccius*; 'one of those who had come as ambassadors'; see (378), 'partitive gen., exceptions.' 13. *mittit*: a verb of *saying* to be supplied, 'sends a message to him (saying)'; hence the principal verbal phrase *posse non sustinere* is *infin.*, and the subord. verb *submittatur* is *subjunc.* Notice that the princ. verb of *saying* is *pres. tense*, as is seen in *mittit*: this requires that the depen. subjunc. verb shall be in either the *pres.* or *perf.* subjunc., the *pres.* to denote *unfinished*; the *perf.*, *finished* time. This is a more viv. fut. condit. in *indir. disc.*: is the verb in the protasis (of the dir. disc.) *fut. indic. submittetur* or *fut. perf. submissum erit?* see (223, 396). *se non posse = ego non possum*, in the *direct disc.*

CHAPTER VII.—1. 'thither,' i.e. to Bibrax. *isdem = eisdem* · abl. obj. of *usus* (from *utor*); see (353); 'employing as guides the same persons who had come as messengers.' 2. *Numidas, Cretas*: 'Numidian and Cretan bowmen.' 3. *Baleares*: 'and Balearic slingers.' The Numidians and especially the people of Crete were famous archers, and, together with the celebrated slingers from the Balearic Islands, they were valuable auxiliaries of the Romans, serving as light-armed troops. *subsidio, oppidanis*: doub. dat., see (352). *quorum adventu*: 'and because of (upon) their arrival.' 4. *Remis*: dat. *indir. obj.* of *accessit* (*subj. studium*); 'there both came (was added) to the Remi along with the hope of (making a successful) defence, a desire for making sallies (against the enemy).' 5. *et hostibus discessit*: *hostibus* is dat. with *discessit* (as a verb of *taking away*) instead of the abl. of separation; 'and from the enemy there

was taken away . . . the hope of.' *potiundi* = *potiendi*: see (253) 6. *itaque*: 'and so.' *apud*: 'near.' *morati, depopulati*: mod. the subj. of *contenderunt*; observe that these are particips. of depon. verbs; 'having delayed—having ravaged.' 7. *omnibus vicis . . . incensis*: 'having burnt all the villages,' etc.: why translate *incensis*, a *pass.* particip. (not a *depon.*) with an act. meaning? see (372). *quos*: has two antecedents, *vicis* and *aedificiis*, which are of different genders; in such instances the relative takes the gender sometimes of the *strongest* or *most important* word, sometimes that of the *nearest*. Here the rel. has the gender of *vicis*. 8. *potuerant*: *pluperf.*, 'had been able.' 9. *ab . . . duobus*: 'less than two miles away (off);' *ab* is used adverbially, 'off,' i.e. distant from Caesar's camp; *milibus* is the abl. of degree of difference, 'by two thousands,' being used independently of *minus*, '(and) less,' which does not affect the construction. 10. *quae castra*: see (367), 'and this camp.' *ut significabatur*: 'as was indicated,' a clause used parenthetically. 11. *amplius milibus*: *amplius* is the accus. of extent in space, see (342); *milibus* is abl. after the comparative *amplius*, see (369). For the other construction allowable with these neuter accusatives see note 9 above.

CHAPTER VIII.—2. *eximiam . . . virtutis*: 'remarkable reputation for valor,' *virtutis* = objective genitive, that is, a gen. which denotes the object of an action or feeling: as, *matris amor pueri*, 'a mother's love for her boy'; boy (*pueri*) is here the object of the feeling of love implied in the noun *amor*. *proelio*: abl. of separation; 'to refrain from an engagement.' 3. *equestribus proeliis*: 'in cavalry skirmishes.' *quid posset, quid auderent*: subjunctives of indir. quest., see (313); *quid* = adverbial acc., see (374); 'what prowess the enemy had,' literally, 'what the enemy could (do) from the standpoint of courage.' 4. *periclitabatur*: *imperf.* 'kept trying to ascertain by experiment.' 5. *inferiores*: acc. pred. with *esse*, 'that our men were not inferior' (in courage); i.e. were not losing heart. *loco . . . idoneo*: abl. absol. composed of *noun + adj.*; see (364), example 2; this abl. absol. shows *cause* and mod. *obduxit* (line 12). 6. *natura*: 'by nature.' *quod is collis*: taken with *patebat, habebat, redibat*, these clauses explaining *loco idoneo* and also, indirectly, modifying *obduxit*. *ubi*: 'where.' 8. *editus*, etc.: mod. *collis*; 'elevated a very little from (above) the level ground.' *tantum*: acc. of extent in space, mod. *patebat*; *loci* in the next line (a *partitive gen.*) is to be translated with *tantum*; 'extended in width (over) as much ground (*loci*).'
adversus:

mod. **collis**, 'right in front.' **quantum**: obj. of **occupare**, 'as an army arranged in battle order could cover.' 9. **instructa**: p. p. mod. **acies**. **ex utraque parte**: 'on each side.' 10. **lateris deiectus**: **deiectus** is a noun, acc. plur.; 'it had a steep slope' (lit. 'slopes of the side'). 10. **fastigatus**: mod. **collis**, 'falling with an easy slope in front sank gently to the plain.' 11. **ab utroque latere**: 'on each side.' 12. **transversam**: '(a ditch) at right angles.' **passuum**: gen. of measure, 'about 400 feet (long).' 13. **ad extremas**: 'at the ends of the ditches.' 14. **tormenta**: 'engines of war.' **ne . . . possent**: neg. purpose, see (211, 320); 'so that the enemy could *not* surround.' **cum**: 'after.' 15. **quod . . . poterant**: parenthetical clause and hence not **subjunc.**, 'because they were so (thus) strong in numbers'—**tantum** is the adverbial accus.; see note 3 above. **ab lateribus**: 'on their flanks.' **pugnantes**: pres. particip. mod. **suos** (referring to *Caesar*); 'his men while they were fighting.' 17. **ut . . . possent**: affirm. purpose; 'so that they could *be led out* (*duci*).'**quo**: adv., 'if they should be needed anywhere.' 18. **subsidiō = dat.** of purpose or service. 20. **eductas**: p. p. mod. the **obj.** of the verb; see (381); '*had led out and drawn up*'.

CHAPTER IX.—1. non magna: = parva, 'there was a small marsh.' **nostrum**: mod. **exercitum**. 2. **si transirent**: **indir.** quest., see (313); 'the enemy kept waiting to see whether our men would cross.' 3. **autem**: 'on the other hand.' **si . . . fieret**: a part of the **ut** clause, hence **subjunc.** by attraction, see (276); 'if a beginning of . . . should be made.' **ut . . . aggredierentur**: affirmative purpose with **parati erant**; 'our men were ready under arms to *attack*.' **impeditos**: mod. (**hostes**), 'as they struggled in the river.' 5. **contendebatur**: impersonal, see (365); 'the two armies engaged.' 6. **neutri**: nom. plur. subj. of **faciunt**. **secundiore**: adj. with **proelio**, forming an abl. absol.; see (364); 'as the battle of cavalry was rather favorable to our men.' **nostris**: dat. with adj. (**secundiore**); see (126). 9. **quod**: rel. pron. nom. subj. of **demonstratum est**; 'which has been shown to be in the rear of.' 10. **conati sunt**: depon., 'they attempted to lead a part across.' 11. **eo consilio**: 'with this design.' **ut**: with **expugnarent**, **interscinderent**, **popularentur**, and **prohiberent**, explaining **eo consilio**; viz., 'to storm, if they could,' etc. **possent**: **subjunc.** by attraction; **sequence?** **cui**: dat. with comp. verb (**praeerat**); see (337). 13. **si potuissent**: **subjunc.** by attraction, being within the **ut popularentur** clause; 'if (having made the attempt) they should have been unable': in these two **si** clauses, **possent = fut. indic.**, **potuissent = fut. perf.**

indic. of a more viv. fut. condition, see (223); thus 'we will storm, if we are (*shall be*) able,' and 'we will ravage, if we are not (shall not have been) able (to storm)': for *mood* of condition in indir. disc., see (396). 14. *nobis usui*: doub. dat., see (352); 'who were very useful (for a great use) to us.' *commeatu*: abl. of separation, 'from supplies.'

CHAPTER X.—1. *certior factus*: see (338), '(on) being informed by Titurius.' The lieutenant was about a mile nearer the fords where the Belgians were crossing than Caesar was. 2. *levis armaturae*: gen. depen. upon *Numidas*, 'Numidians of light equipment': these light-armed troops were swift runners and could arrive at the ford more quickly than the rest, where they were to stop the passage of the Belgians. 4. *pugnatum est*: impers. verb, see (365), 'a fierce engagement occurred.' *hostes*: acc. obj. of *aggressi*. *impeditos*: p. p. p. mod. *hostes*; 'having attacked the enemy who were hindered in the river.' 5. *aggressi*: limits *nostri*. *reliquos*: adj. used as noun, acc. obj. of *reppulerunt*, and modified by *conantes*, the pres. particip. of *conor*; 'our men drove back . . . the rest of the enemy as they were trying very boldly to cross over' (per). 6. *multitudine*: abl. of means mod. *reppulerunt*. 7. *primos*: adj. as noun, dir. obj. of *interfecerunt*. 8. *circumventos*: p. p. p. mod. *primos*; see (381). *hostes*: stands at the head of the sent. and belongs to the principal clause in Latin, but is incorporated in the *ubi* clause when translated: 'when the enemy perceived that hope had failed them.' *et de expugnando*: 'both with respect to storming.' 10. *neque progreedi vide-runt*: 'and when they say that our men were not advancing.' 11. *atque*: still using *ubi*, 'and when corn supplies began.' *ipso*s: i.e. the enemy. On account of a lack of provisions the enemy could not carry on a long campaign with such a large army as Caesar's. 12. *optimum*: acc. neut. pred. adj. with *esse*, whose subj. is the *domum* . . . *reverti* clause: 'decided that it was best for each one (*quemque*) to return to his own home.' 13. *domum*; see (386). *et convenirent*: after *constituerunt*, 'and (they decided) to assemble.' *constituo* is followed sometimes by the acc. + *infin.*, sometimes by *ut + subjunc.*; rarely, as *here*, by both in the *same sentence*. *quorum*: anteced. *eos*; order, *ad defendendos eos quorum in fines Romani introduxissent*, 'with a view toward defending those into whose borders the Romans should lead (should have led).' 14. *introduxissent*: subjunc. as being a part of the *ut convenirent* clause following a *past* verb, *constituerunt*; it stands for the fut. perf. indic. of the *direct*; see (223, 396). *ad . . . defendendos*: gerundive of purpose, see (253, 355). 15. *ut decertarent*,

uterentur: affirm purpose depen. upon convenienter, '(to assemble, etc.) so that they might contend and use.' potius quam: 'rather than.' 16. alienis = aliorum, 'of others,' as opposed to domesticis, that is, *their own*. copiis: 'supplies.' rei frumentariae: 'of grain.' 17. ad eam sententiam: 'to this determination.' 18. ratio: order, haec ratio quoque cum reliquis causis deduxit; 'this consideration too, together with other reasons, brought them.' quod: 'namely, the fact that.' 19. cognoverant: 'they knew.' appropinquare: has two subjects, 'were drawing near to.' finibus: dat. after comp. verb (ad + propinquuo), see (337). 20. his persuaderi: this idiom is fully explained in (380). ut morarentur neque ferrent: 'to delay and not to offer.' suis: indir. obj.; adj. used as noun, 'to their friends.'

CHAPTER XI.—1. ea re: 'after this matter had been agreed upon,' that is, for each one to return to his home. strepitu, tumultu: abl. of manner, mod. egressi; see (210). 2. egressi: mod. subj. contained in fecerunt; see (340). nullo . . . imperio: abl. of manner, as though explaining or adding to magno . . . tumultu; '(that is) without orderly array and without an officer in command.' 3. cum peteret, properaret: 'causal cum,' see (350); this clause in turn explains nullo . . . imperio; 'since each soldier was seeking for himself . . . and was hastening.' domum: see (386). 4. ut . . . videretur: affirmative result clause, object of fecerunt; 'they made their departure seem,' lit. 'they caused it so that their departure seemed.' fugae: dat. with (adj.) consimilis, see (126). 5. videretur: in the pres. syst. pass. used as a depon. 'to seem.' hac . . . cognita: abl. absol. mod. continuit, of which 'Caesar' is the subj.; re = the departure of the enemy. speculatores: 'by means of spies'; difference betw. ab and per? ab + abl. = direct (voluntary) agency; per + acc. = indirect agency, the agent being considered the instrument or means. speculatores = spies who mingled in disguise with the enemy to obtain information; exploratores = scouts or squads of regular cavalry detailed to range the country in the vicinity of the enemy. 6. veritus: 'fearing.' quod . . . perspexerat: causal clause mod. continuit, see (276). discederent: 'indir. quest.,' see (313); sequence from perspexerat; the *imperf.* tense shows that the *action* of the verb (discederent) *is going on* at the time of the action of the verb upon which it depends, 'he had not yet found out (did not know) for what reason the enemy *were departing*.' 8. prima luce: 'at early dawn.' re = the fact of the enemies' departure. 9. qui . . . moraretur: rel. clause of purpose, 'to delay the rear' (of the Belgians); sequence from praemisit; the *imperf.* tense

denotes that the *action* of the verb (*moraretur*) is to take place at some time in the *future*, *subsequent to the time* of the action in *praemisit*; hence this *imperf. subjunc.* = *time fut. (subsequent)*; the *imperf. subjunc.* (*discederent*, just above) denotes time *pres. (contemporaneous)*. 10. *his . . . praefecit*: ‘over these he placed in command;’ see (337). 12. *hi*: ‘the latter,’ i. e. Labienus and his men. *novissimos*: supply *hostes*, ‘the rear.’ *aborti*, *prosecuti*: mod. *hi*. 13. *eorum fugientium*: ‘of them as they fled;’ *fugientum* = *pres. particip. gen. plur. mod. eorum*. 14. *cum*: causal, see (350); introduces *consistent*, *sustinerent*, and *ponerent*; ‘since those in the rear (ab, etc.) whom the Romans had overtaken were making a stand.’ 15. *ventum erat* = *impers.*, see (365); lit., ‘(to whom) it had been come.’ 16. *priores*: adj. used as noun (*prior*, *-ior*, *-ius*), subj. of *ponerent*, see (258); ‘and since those in front,’ that is, those at the head of the retreating column. 17. *quod viderentur*, *continerentur*: *subjunc.* by attraction, as being part of the *cum ponerent* clause; ‘because they seemed to be out of danger and were not restrained.’ 18. *omnes*: mod. *priores*. 19. *tantam . . . spatium*: ‘as great a number as the length of the day permitted.’ 21. *sub occasum*: ‘about the setting.’ 22. *ut*: parenthetical, ‘as they were commanded.’

CHAPTER XII.—1. *postridie eius diei*: ‘on the next day,’ lit., ‘on the after day of that day.’ *prius quam*: takes the *subjunc.* when the action is expected, intended or in suspense; ‘before the enemy could recover (themselves).’ Caesar now proceeded to subdue the enemy tribe by tribe, since his plans for separating them had been successful. 3. *magno*: ‘by making a forced march.’ 4. *Noviodunum*: about 20 miles west of Bibrax. *id (oppidum)*: obj. of *oppugnare*. *ex itinere*: as we say, ‘on the fly,’ without stopping to invest or besiege. 5. *quod*: acc. subj. of *esse*, ‘which he kept hearing was.’ 6. *paucis defendantibus*: abl. absol., denoting concession, see (364), example 3; ‘although few were defending it.’ 7. *vineas*: ‘to bring up the vineae.’ Movable sheds (*vineae*), with roofs and sides of wickerwork or planks covered with skins, were placed end to end, forming galleries through which the men passed back and forth when they were besieging a strongly fortified town. 8. *quae*: anteced. is *ea*, the dir. obj. of *comparare*, ‘and to prepare those things which were useful.’ *usui*: dat. of purpose, end, or service. 9. *ex fuga*: ‘in their flight.’ 10. *veneis . . . actis*: ‘when the vineae were brought up.’ 11. *iacto*: p. p. p. (from *iacio*), forming an abl. absol. with *aggere* (from *agger*). *magnitudine*: abl. of

cause, mod. *permoti*; ‘being greatly alarmed on account of the extent of the works,’ i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. 12. *quae*: refers to *operum*, hence neut. plur.; it is dir. obj. of *viderant* and *audierant*, ‘which (such as) the Gauls had neither seen nor heard of.’ 13. *celeritate*: abl. of cause with *permoti*. 14. *petentibus Remis*: abl. absol., see (364), ‘at the request of the Remi.’ *ut conservarentur*: affirm. result clause, obj. of *impetrant*, ‘they obtain the request that they should be spared.’

CHAPTER XIII.—1. *obsidibus*: apposition with *primis* and *filiis*, which are the principal words—the basis—of the abl. absol. with *acceptis*, ‘after he had received as hostages the chief men of the state and the two sons.’ 2. *ipsius*: adds emphasis to *Galbae*. 4. *in Belluvacos*: ‘against the Belluvaci;’ their territory lay west of the Suessiones. *qui*: the rel. pron. at the beginning of a paragraph, see (367); *qui* is translated after *cum*, ‘now when these.’ 5. *contulissent*: ‘had betaken themselves with all their possessions;’ *omnia* modifies *sua*, which is used as a noun; see (258). *atque*: joins *contulissent* and *abesset*, both following *cum*; ‘and while Caesar was distant.’ 7. *maiores*: comparative of *magnus*, used as a noun, subj. of *coeperunt*, etc.; ‘all the older men,’ lit., ‘all the greater by birth.’ *egressi*: mod. *maiores*. 8. *voce significare*: ‘to declare,’ what literally? They uttered cries of supplication in a tongue different from Latin. *sese . . . contendere*: *indir. disc.*, *venire* and *contendere* being used in a *fut.* sense: ‘that they would place themselves under his protection . . . and would not contend;’ *sese* refers to the speakers (*reflexive*), *eius* to Caesar—the person addressed. 10. *cum accessisset, poneret*: ‘after he had approached (time *antecedent*) and while he was pitching (time *contemporaneous*) his camp.’ 11. *pueri*: ‘the children.’ *ex muro*: ‘(standing) on.’ *passis manibus*: ‘with outstretched hands,’ abl. of manner. 12. *ab Romanis*: ‘of the Romans.’

CHAPTER XIV.—1. *pro his*: ‘in behalf of these’; i.e. the Belluvaci. *discessum*: noun, ‘after the departure.’ 2. *dimissis*: ‘when the forces of the Aedui had been dismissed.’ *reverterat*: notice the tense, ‘he *had* come back.’ *facit verba* = *dicit*. The rest of the chapter is in *indir. disc.*; for the ‘*Oratio Recta*’ form of this chapter, see (407). 3. *Belluvacos*: ‘he said that the Belluvaci had been.’ *omni tempore*: ‘always.’ 4. *impulsos*: p. p. p. mod. (*eos*) the subj. of *defecisse* and *intulisse*; notice the emphatic position of *impulsos*, ‘he said that they (the Belluvaci), urged on (being urged

on) by their chiefs . . . had both revolted and brought war.' *qui dicerent*: 'who kept saying;' subord. clause in indir. disc., hence *subjunc.*, see (306). Following *dicerent* (a verb of 'saying') there is an infin. proposition, *Aeduos . . . perferre*; this makes indir. disc. *within* indir. disc. 5. *redactos*: p. p. p. mod. *Aeduos*, lit. 'having been (being) reduced,' but best rendered by a *finite verb*, see (381) 'who kept saying that the Aedui *had been reduced . . . and were suffering*' (*perferre*). 6. *et . . . et*: see note 4 above, 'both . . . and.' *defecisse, intulisse*: princ. verbs (infin.) in the indir. disc.; for the *time relation of tense*, see (305). *popalo*: dat. with comp. verb, *intulisse*, see (337). 7. *qui*: anteced. is (*eos*), acc. subj. of *profugisse*; see O. R. (407); follows *facit verba*: 'he said that those, who had been (were) the leaders in (of) this scheme.' 8. *fuissent*: subord. clause in O. O., see (306); what tense in O. R.? see (467). It is *pluperf.* in the indir. disc. (for *past time*) since it follows *facit verba* (*historical pres.*) which is regarded as a *past tense* rather by its *meaning* than its form. *quod . . . intellegerent*: subord. in O. O., 'because they knew'; what in the direct? 9. *civitati*: dat. with comp. verb, *intulissent*: indir. quest. remains *subjunc.* in O. R., see (407); its sequence is from *intellegerent* and it denotes action *completed*; 'because they realized how great a disaster they *had brought upon*.' *profugisse*: see note 7, first part. *petere*: princ. verb in O. O.; notice that it denotes action *going on at the time of the action of facit verba* and that *facit verba* is treated, in the rest of the chapt., as a *pres.* tense, by its *form* rather than its meaning: 'he says that not only the Bellovacii *are pleading*.' 10. *Aeduos*: also subj. of *petere*. *ut . . . utatur*: depends upon *petere*, 'that he should exercise'—freely with *petere*, 'are begging him to exercise': direct, 'the Bellovacii beg *you to exercise*', see (407). 11. *in eos*: 'toward them'; se would have appeared here, but for the interposition of *Aeduos*. *Quod si fecerit*: 'and (he says) that if he (Caesar) does this'; *fecerit = perf. subjunc.*, sequence from *facit verba* (*dicit*). 12. *amplificaturum esse*: subj. is (*eum*), 'that he will increase'; for this condit. in O. R., see (223, 407); for change of mood and tense, in G. R., see (396). 13. *auxiliis, etc.*: 'by whose aid and assistance,' abl. of *means*, mod. *sustentare*. *si qua, etc.*: 'if any wars (whatever wars) arose.' *consuerint*: perf. *subjunc.*, 'they were (had become) accustomed to hold out.' See (407), for construction in O. R.

CHAPTER XV.—1. *honoris*: gen. depen. upon *causa*, see (7), 'for the sake of his regard.' *Divitiaci, Aeduorum*: objective genitives,

depen. upon honoris, 'for Divitiacus and the Aedui'; see chapter 8, note 2, 'virtutis.' 2. *sese recepturum esse*: depen. upon *dixit*; see (318), 3 and 4. 3. *magna auctoritate*: 'abl. of quality,' see (376), 'because the state was (one) of great influence.' 5. *his... collatis* (from *confero*): two abls. absol. of time, mod. *pervenit*; translate by an 'after' clause, 'after these were handed over,' etc. 6. **Ambianorum**: north of the Bellovaci; Caesar's route lay to the north, probably by way of Amiens. 7. *finis*: obj. of *attingebant*; observe the emphatic position of *finis eorum*. **Nervii**: considered the most savage of all the Belgae, occupying the basin of the Sambre river. 8. *quorum de natura*: adv. phrase mod. *quaereret*, 'when Caesar inquired about their nature and customs.' 9. *nullum aditum*: acc. of thing possessed. *mercatoribus*: dat. of possessor. *esse* = 'have', see (357); indir. disc. to the end of the chapter; 'he found out that merchants *have* no access to them,' lit. 'that no access to them is to merchants'; direct, '*nullus aditus (nom.) ad eos est mercatoribus*.' 10. *pati*: pres. infin. of *patior*, prin. verb (infin.) depen. upon *reperiebat*; the subj. of *pati* is (*eos*); 'that they allowed (were allowing) no wine to be imported (*inferri*).'
vini: partitive gen., see (378). 11. *pertinentium*: pres. particip. gen. plur. mod. *rerum*. *inferri*: complementary infin. depen. upon *pati*. *quod... existimarent*: subjunc. because a subord. clause in indir. disc.; though modifying *pati* (a *pres.* tense), it derives its sequence from *reperiebat*, *the main verb of saying*. *rebus*: abl. of means, mod. *the two following infins.* which depend upon *existimarent*, 'because they believe that by these things.' *animos*: 'spirit,' as a quality of character. 12. *virtutem*: 'valor,' as a manifestation of courage in deeds; 'their spirit is (would be) weakened and their valor given up.' *esse*: follows *reperiebat*, 'he found out that the men were fierce.' 13. *que* connects *feros* (adj.) and *virtutis* (*gen. of quality*), the latter being used in the sense of an adj.; 'fierce and of great courage.' *increpitare*, *incusare*: princ. verbs in indir. disc., subj. (*eos*); 'he found out that they kept chiding and blaming.' 14. *qui*, etc.: would have a subjunc. verb in the direct disc. also, since it is a rel. causal clause; *qui* = *cum ei*, see (350, 368); 'since they had surrendered.' 15. *confirmare*: depen. upon *reperiebat*, and has as its subj. (*se*); 'that they declare.' *se missuros esse*: infin. in indir. disc. with *confirmare*, 'that they will neither send ambassadors nor accept.'

CHAPTER XVI.—1. *eorum*: i.e. of the Nervii. *triduum*: acc. of extent in time, 'for three days'; see (342). *inveniebat*: 'he con-

tinued to find out (further).' 2. non amplius: adv. 'not more (than)' 3. milia: acc. of extent of space, mod. abesse; see (342). 4. consedisse, exspectare: note the difference in time, with reference to the time of inveniebat; 'that all the Nervii had encamped and were awaiting.' 4. una cum: 'along with.' 6. utrisque: from uterque, dat. plur. mod. his: for declension of uter, see (286); for the case of his, see (345); 'for they had persuaded each of these (tribes).' uti (ut) . . . experientur: clause of purpose depen. upon persuasrant (see preced. note and reference), 'to try.' 7. exspectari: infin. in indir. disc. depen. upon reperiebat; 'that the forces of the Aduatuci were also being waited for.' 8. esse: 'were.' in itinere: 'on the march.' mulieres: acc. dir. obj. of coniecisse, whose subj. is (Nervios), the infin. clause depen. upon reperiebat; 'that (the Nervii) had hurriedly placed the women.' qui: anteced is (eos), which is to be supplied as a second dir. obj. of coniecisse, 'and those (men) who.' per aetatem: 'by reason of old age.' 9. viderentur: as depon., 'seemed.' quo: rel. adv. = ad quem, 'to which,' 'where.' 10. exercitui, aditus: dat. of possessor, and nom. of thing possessed, see (357); 'the army could not (did not) have access.' esset: introduced by quo, a rel. clause of characteristic, which takes the subjunc., even in the direct disc.

CHAPTER XVII.—2. qui . . . deligant: see (311); in what four ways may affirmative purpose be expressed? see (355). ex dediticiis: with complures, in place of the partitive gen., see (378), 'exceptions'; 'while several of the surrendered Belgians': i.e. the Ambiani, Suessiones, and Bellovacii. 4. secuti: depon. particip. mod. complures, rendered by a finite verb, see (381), 'were following Caesar and were marching along (with him).' quidam ex his: 'certain of these'—see note 2 above. ut . . . cognitum est: ut + indic. = 'as'; parenthetical and verb impersonal, see (365); 'as he afterwards found out'—what literally? 5. consuetudine perspecta: abl. absol. mod. pervenerunt; notice the accumulation of genitives; dierum and exercitus limit itineris, which in turn depends upon consuetudine, 'after observing the army's usual marching order during those days.' 7. atque his: 'and announced to the latter (the Nervii).' inter singulas legiones: indir. disc. through auderent (line 12) depen. upon demonstra(ve)runt; 'that between every two legions.' 8. intercedere: depen. upon demonstrarunt, subj. numerum, 'a great number of baggage (animals) passed (as a usual thing).' neque: continues indir. disc., 'and that it was not any trouble.' 9. negoti: partitive

gen. depen. upon *quicquam* (for *quidquam*) acc. neut. in the predicate with *esse*. *venisset*: 'after the first legion had come.' 10. *abessent*: 'and while the rest of . . . were quite a good distance off.' 11. *adoriri*: infin. used as *subj.* of *esse*; *what* was no trouble? 'to attack this legion.' *qua pulsa* (from *pello*): abl. absol. rendered by a conditional, 'and that, if this should be routed;' see (364). 12. *futurum (esse)*: with *demonstrarunt*, 'that it would be,' or 'the result would be.' *ut non auderent*: neg. result clause, 'that the rest of the legions would not dare;' see (321). *futurum esse ut + subjunc.* = periphrasis or substitution for the *fut. infin.*; see (382). 13. *adiuvabant*: used impersonally, with the *quod . . . effecerant* clause as its *subj.*; 'the fact that (*quod*) the Nervii . . . helped the plan of those who reported the matter.' 14. *Nervii*: *subj.* of *effecerant*; 'the fact that the Nervii had caused these hedges to furnish,' lit. 'had made it so that (*ut*) these hedges furnished (*praeberent*).'*cum . . . possent*: 'since they could do nothing with cavalry.' 15. *neque enim*: 'and in fact . . . not.' *ei rei* · dat. obj. of *student*, 'do they care for this kind of service,' i.e. use of cavalry. *quic(d)quid*: adverbial accus., see (374); *quicquid . . . copiis*, freely translated, 'all the strength they possess lies in infantry.' 16. *quo* = *ut eo* (accompanied by the comparative *facilius*) introducing *impedirent*: translated and explained in (384). 17. *si . . . venissent*: for the *fut. perf. indic.* in the *direct*, see (223, 396); 'if they should come against them.' 18. *crebrisque . . . interiectis*: 'and, when their numerous branches had grown out *on the sides* (in *latitudinem*) and when brambles and thornbushes had been *thrown into* (*interiectis*) the spaces between the trees.' The trees were notched and bent when young and the branches were trained to grow out on the sides. In the spaces left between the trees and not covered up were placed brambles and bushes which made an impregnable hedge. 21. *quo . . . posset*: rel. clause of result, *quo* = rel. adv.; see (387). *ne . . . quidem*: give emphasis to the word between them, 'but not even *be seen*.' 22. *cum* : causal, see (350); 'since the march (advance) of our line would be checked.' 23. *omittendum sibi*: see (361, 362, 363).

CHAPTER XVIII.—2. *delegerant*: note the force of the pluperf. *collis*: the hill upon which the Roman camp was laid out. *ab summo*: 'from the top,' mod. *declivis*. *declivis*: 'sloping down uniformly.' 3. *vergebat*: 'inclined.' 4. *pari acclivitate*: 'of equal steepness,' with *collis*. *pari* = adj. of third declens. (one ending), from *par* *nascebatur*, etc.: 'rose up facing this and on the other side (of the

stream).’ 5. *ducentos passus*: acc. extent of space, mod. *apertus*; see (342). *infimus, apertus*: mod. *collis*, ‘open (bare of trees) for about 200 feet at the foot (*infimus*)’: the hill was bare of trees for 200 feet up the slope from the bank of the river. *ab superiore parte*: abl. with *ab*, giving the point of view from which; ‘along the upper part.’ 6. *silvestris*: mod. *collis*, ‘covered with trees.’ *ut non . . . posset*: neg. result clause, see (321); recast in the *act.*, ‘so that one could not easily see within.’ 7. *continebant*: imperf. of continued action, see (102). 8. *secundum*: prep. + acc. 9. *videbantur*: ‘there appeared a few squads.’ *pedum*: gen. of measure used in the predicate.

CHAPTER XIX.—1. *praemisso*: ‘after sending forward.’ 2. *copiis*: abl. of attendance or accompaniment; this abl. often omits *cum* in military phrases. *ratio quoque*: since the two phrases convey a single idea, the verb is singular. *aliter ac*: ‘otherwise than;’ *atque, ac*, after words of likeness and unlikeness mean ‘than’; translate, ‘was different from what the Belgae had reported.’ 5. *post eas (legiones)*: ‘behind these (legions).’ *totius*: gen.; declined in (286). *colloca(ve)rat*: ‘he had placed (for safety).’ 7. *praesidioque impedimentis erant*. *doub, dat.*, see (352), ‘and guarded the baggage.’ 9. *transgressi*: particip. (perf.) *depon.*, see (340), mod. *equites*, the subj. of the sent., ‘having crossed.’ 10. *cum*: with *reciperent, facerent, auerent*, the clauses describing the situation and mod. *cooperunt munire*. *illi*: subj. of *reciperent* and *facerent*. *ad suos*: adj. used as noun, see (258); refers to the *s.vbjs.*, ‘while they (the enemy) would retreat . . . and would make an attack again.’ 11. *neque = et . . . non*; *nostri*: subj. of *auerent*. *longius*: adv. compar. degree (followed by *quam = ‘than’*), mod. *insequi*; ‘and while our men did not dare to pursue them as they were retreating farther than.’ 12. *quem ad finem = ad finem ad quem*, ‘to the limit where.’ *orrecta, aperta*: adjs. mod. *loca*: ‘the level (clear) open ground extended.’ 13. *cedentes*: pres. particip. acc. plur. mod. (*eos*), obj. of *insequi*. 14. *quae . . . venerant*: ‘which had been the first to arrive.’ *dimenso* (from *dimetior*): in *pass.* sense, abl. absol. 15. *ubi*: introduces a purely temporal clause: compare this with *cum* (line 10); see (203). *ubi . . . visa sunt*: ‘when the foremost (part of the) baggage of our army was seen.’ 16. *quod . . . convenerat*: ‘which had been agreed upon as the time.’ 17. *committendi*: see gerundive, (253). *ut . . . confirmaverant*: ‘just as they had arranged their line . . . and (as) they had resolved (to do)’—*sese confirmaverant = ‘had resolved’*. 20. *his*: abl. absol., ‘as these (our cavalry) were easily defeated.’ 21.

decucurrerunt: ‘they ran down.’ **ut . . . viderentur:** affirm. result, see (321); ‘so that the enemy seemed (to be).’ **paene uno** ‘almost at one and the same time.’ 22. **et ad silvas:** ‘both near the woods.’ **iam in manibus nostris:** ‘and now close at hand.’ Perhaps about twenty minutes, as the Roman camp was three-quarters of a mile from the river, in fording which there was no doubt some delay. It is a surprise that Caesar did not have troops ready to repel the enemies’ charge. 23. **adverso colle:** ‘up the hill (facing them).’ 24. **eos:** with **ad;** ‘and to those who were engaged;’ **occupati** has the force of a pred. adj. **opere:** i.e. fortifying the camp.

CHAPTER XX.—1. **Caesari:** dat. of pers. agent, mod. **agenda erant;** see (361, 362, 363); ‘Caesar had to do everything at once,’ lit. ‘all things had to be done by Caesar.’ 2. **proponendum erat:** ‘had to be raised;’ supply **erat** or **erant** with each of the following verbs (periphrastic). The vexillum was the large banner hoisted to announce an intended engagement. **cum . . . oporteret:** lit., ‘when it ought to be hurried,’ freely, ‘when the soldiers ought to hasten;’ see (385). 3. **tuba:** ‘the call had to be sounded with the trumpet;’ the call to take their places in the line. **ab opere:** ‘from their work.’ 4. **qui:** its anteced. is the *subj.* contained in **arcessendi erant**, ‘those who had proceeded.’ These soldiers would need a special messenger since they were out of hearing of the usual signals. **paulo longius:** ‘a little farther (than usual).’ **aggeris, etc.:** ‘for the sake of procuring material for the rampart;’ see gerundive (253). 5. **cohortandi erant:** the *gerundive* of a *depon.* always has a *passive* meaning; ‘had to be encouraged;’ this was always done if possible. 6. **signum dandum (erat):** here a signal for the attack made by horns and trumpets. **quarum rerum:** gen. depen. upon **partem**; **quarum** = ‘but these,’ see (367); ‘but the shortness of the time and the approach of . . . prevented a great part of *these* things.’ 7. **impediebat:** sing. agreeing with the nearer *subj.* 8. **difficultatibus, subsidio:** doub. dat., see (352); ‘in (to) these difficulties two things were (for) a help:’ first, the previous training of the soldiers; second, putting a lieutenant over each legion. **scientia atque usus:** apposition with **duae res.** 9. **quod . . . poterant:** ‘because they themselves (*ipsi*) could.’ **exercitati:** p. p. p. mod. *ipsi*, the *subj.* of the *quod* clause; see (316). **quid:** acc. *subj.* of *fieri*, depen. upon the impersonal verb *oporteret*—a subjunc. of *indir. quest.*, see (313). 10. **oporteret** gets its sequence from **poterant praescribere;** ‘could give directions to themselves (*sibi*) as to what ought to be done.’ **non minus:** ‘no less.’ **quam:** ‘than.’ 11.

doceri (*poterant*): 'could be directed by others.' 12. *singulis legionibus*: 'from (ab) the several legions.' *singulos legatos*: acc. subj. of *discedere*, depen. upon *vetuerat* (from *veto*); 'had forbidden the several lieutenants to withdraw.' 13. *nisi castris munitis*: idiom, 'until the camp had been fortified.' 14. *nihil imperium*: 'no command whatever;' 'not at all.' 15. *per se*: 'of their own efforts.' *quae*: anteced. is (*ea*), obj. of *administrabant*, 'attended to what (= those things which) seemed best.'

CHAPTER XXI.—1. *necessariis*, etc.: 'after giving (only) the necessary commands.' *ad cohortandos*: see (355), 'four ways to express *purpose*;' see (253), gerundive construction. 2. *quam in partem* = *in eam partem in quam*: 'into that quarter where fortune led him.' 3. *decimam*: Caesar's favorite legion; it was at the extreme left of the line; next came the IXth, then the XIth, VIIIth, XIIth, and lastly the VIIth. *milites*: acc. dir. obj. of *cohortatus*, which mod. *Caesar*; 'having encouraged his soldiers.' *non longiore quam ut*: 'with no longer an address than (to tell them) that.' 4. *suae*: refers to the subj. of *retinerent*; see (189, 214); 'of their usual.' 5. *neu*: negatives are continued by *neve* or *neu*, 'and that they should not.' 6. *sustinerent*: with *ut* understood depen. upon *cohortatus*. *quod . . . aberant*: mod. *dedit*. *non longius quam*: 'no farther than (the distance).' 7. *quo*: adverbial relative; 'to which a dart could be hurled.' *posset*: introduced by *quo*, a characteristic relative, taking the verb in the *subjunc*. 8. *profectus*: 'depon. perf. participle,' see (340); mod. the subj. of *occurrit*; 'having advanced into another quarter.' 9. *pugnantibus*: pres. particip. dat. plur. mod. (*suis*), the dat. obj. of *occurrit* (comp. verb—*ob-curro*); see (337); 'he came upon his men (already) fighting.' *tanta exiguitas*: 'such was the want of time.' 10. *hostium*: with *animus*; 'and the spirit of . . . so determined upon a battle.' *ut . . . defuerit* (from *desum*): affirm. result, 'that time was lacking;' note the use again of the *perf. subj.* (of result) after *fuit*, a verb of *past* time. 11. *ad insignia*: 'for putting on their decorations': to distinguish the different legions and officers. 12. *scutis*: mod. *detrudenda*, 'from their shields': for agree. of these gerundives, see (253). 13. *quam in partem*: 'to whatever place each man from his work came.' *quaeque*, etc.: 'and whatever standards he first saw.' 14. *ad haec*: 'near these.' *ne . . . dimitteret*: neg. purpose, see (320); 'lest he should lose the opportunity (*tempus*).'*in quaerendis suis (signis)*: gerundive, 'in searching for his own standards.'

CHAPTER XXII.—1. *magis ut, quam ut*: ‘rather as,’ ‘than as,’ take the *indic* *postulabat*. *natura, deiectus, necessitas*: subjects of *postulabat*. in the *magis ut* clause, the verb (singular) being in agreement with the nearest subj. 2. *ratio, ordo*: subj. in the *quam ut* clause, ‘than as the arrangement and order of military science.’ 3. *cum . . . resisterent*. ‘since the legions were resisting the enemy separately, some in one place and some in another’; this clause and the next, *cum . . . impediretur*, modify *poterant collocari* in the main clause. *aliae*: with *legiones* understood. 4. *hostibus*: dat. indir. obj. of *resisterent*; for case, see (348). *saepibus interiectis*: abl. absol. of *means mod. impediretur*; ‘by the interposition of very thick hedges.’ *ut*: ‘as.’ 5. *impediretur*: causal subjunc. introduced by *cum* (line 3), ‘since the view was cut off.’ *neque*: beginning of the main clause whose verb is *poterant*. 6. *subsidia*: subj. of *poterant collocari*; ‘neither could reserves be stationed regularly.’ *quid . . . esset*: indir. quest. *subj. of poterat provideri*; ‘nor could whatever was needed in each quarter be provided—for.’ 7. *administrari*: complementary infin. with *poterant*, ‘could all commands be executed by a single man’—notice the emphatic position of *ab uno*. 8. *itaque*: ‘and so.’ *tanta*: mod. *iniquitate*. *fortunae*: gen. depen. upon *eventus*, the subj. of *sequebantur*, ‘various issues of fortune also.’

CHAPTER XXIII.—1. *milites*: subj. of *compulerunt et interfecerunt*, ‘the soldiers of the ninth,’ etc., who were commanded by Labienus. *ut . . . constiterant*: ‘as they had taken their stand.’ 2. *acie = aciei* (gen.). *pilis emissis*: abl. absol. of *means mod. compulerunt*; best translated, ‘by throwing pikes.’ *pilum* = an offensive weapon, a strong and heavy pike six feet long and weighing ten or eleven pounds. This was the principal weapon of the legion soldiers, being thrown only at close range. *cursu ac lassitudine*: abl. of *means mod. exanimatos*, ‘made breathless by speed and fatigue.’ They had run about a mile and forded the river. 3. *exanimatos, confectos*: mod. *Atrebates*, the obj. of *compulerunt*; ‘drove the Atrebates, made breathless . . . and exhausted with wounds.’ *his = Atrebates*; dat. after comp. verb *obvenerat*; see (337). *ea pars*: on the Roman side; ‘for that part (the Roman left wing) had encountered these (the latter).’ 5. *conantes*: pres. particip. (*act. form*) of *depon.*, acc. plur. mod. *eos*, i.e. *Atrebates*, to be supplied as the dir. object of *insecuti*; ‘and pursuing (them) as they were trying.’ 6. *impeditam*: mod. *partem*, ‘embarrassed (in the attempt to cross).’ *ipsi*: emphatic; the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions. 8. *resistentes*: pres. particip. mod.

hostes, the obj. of **coniecerunt**, 'put to flight the enemy when they again offered resistance.' 10. **profigatis**: p. p. p. abl. absol.; 'after routing the Viromandui with whom they had been engaged.' 11. **in ipsis ripis**: 'on the very banks.' 12. **proeliabantur**: for the force of the impf. see (102); 'kept up the fight.' **at**: 'but.' **totis . . . castris**: abl. absol. of *time* or *cause* mod. **contendebant** (line 16). Notice the emphatic position of **totis** modified by *fere*, 'almost'; 'now that the camp was almost *entirely* laid bare along the front and on the left side.' The VIIth and XIth had left the front of the camp, and the IXth and Xth the left, in pursuit of the enemy. 13. **cum . . . constitisset**: see causal **cum** (350)—'since the twelfth legion had taken its stand . . . and at no great distance from it.' 14. **ab ea**: *ea* refers to *duodecima legio*. **intervallo**: abl. of degree (measure) of difference. 15. **duce Boduognato**: abl. absol. composed of *two nouns*; see (364). 16. **summam**: noun, with limiting gen. *imperii* = 'the chief command.' 17. **aperto latere**: 'on the unprotected flank.' **circumvenire**: depen. upon **coepit**, which has the *first pars* as its subj., 'a part of whom began to surround.' 18. **summum castrorum locum**: 'the main point occupied by the camp.'

CHAPTER XXIV.—1. **levis armatura**: 'of light equipment' = 'light-armed,' limiting *pedites*. 2. **cum eis una**: 'along with them'; *una* = adv. **quos**: acc. subj. of *pulsos esse*, indir. disc. depen. upon *dixeram*, 'who (not *whom*) I had said (before) were routed at the first assault.' *eis* = *equites*, *quos* = *equites et pedites*. 3. **cum . . . se reciperent**: historical **cum**, (see 128, 203, 359); 'as they were retreating.' **adversis hostibus**: dat. indir. obj. of the comp. verb, **occurribant**, see (337); 'met the enemy face to face.' 4. **aliam in partem**: 'in another direction.' 5. **fugam petebant**: 'took flight.' Observe the *descriptive* force of the *imperfects* in this chapter. Just as the Nervii entered the Roman camp from the right, the Roman cavalry and auxiliaries (*pedites levis armatura*) who had returned by a circuitous route poured into the camp from the left side, face to face with the enemy. **ab decumana porta**: 'from the rear gate.' abl. of the point of view from which. 6. **summo**, etc.; 'and from the uppermost ridge of the hill.' The rear of the camp was higher than the front and the *calones*, stationed here, could see the legions at the left cross the stream. They started to follow, but on looking back saw the Nervii rushing into the Roman camp from the right. **victores**: in the predicate with **nostros**. **transisse** (from *transeo*): infin. of indir. disc. with **conspexerant**; the subj. is **nostros**; for mean-

ings of the *perf. infin.* in O. O., see (305), ‘that our men had crossed the river as victors.’ 7. *egressi*: depon. perf. particip., see (340); mod. *calones*, ‘having gone forth.’ *cum respexissent et vidissent*: histor. *cum*, see (359): compare the *time* of the action in *these verbs*, with that of *reciperent*, note 3 (line 3): these clauses mod. *mandabant*, ‘on looking back and seeing.’ 8. *hostes . . . versari*: depon. upon *vidissent*, ‘that the enemy were (*versari*).’ *praecipites*: adj. nom. plur. mod. *calones*, but with an adverbial force, ‘in haste.’ 9. *eorum*: the drivers, etc., in charge of the baggage-train behind which the XIIIth and XIVth legions had been placed; it is gen. depon. upon *clamor fremitusque*, ‘the din and noise of those who were coming.’ 10. *criebatur*: sing., as *clamor* and *fremitus* contain one idea, ‘arose.’ 11. *perterriti*: p. p. p. mod. the subj. *alii*, see (316); ‘and in great terror (thoroughly frightened) they fled (were borne), *some* in one direction, *some* in another.’ *quibus*: see (367); mod. *rebus*, which in turn limits *permoti* (as an abl. of *means*); ‘and thoroughly frightened by all *these* happenings.’ 12. *permoti*: p. p. p. mod. *equites Treveri*, the subj. of *contenderunt* and *renuntiaverunt*. *virtutis opinio*: ‘reputation for valor.’ 14. *missi*: p. p. p. mod. *qui*, ‘who had come being sent,’ etc. *cum*: with *vidissent*, denoting time or cause, ‘when or since they saw.’ The infinitives (indir. disc.) depending upon *vidissent*, are: *compleri*, *premi*, *teneri*, and *fugere*; notice that these *infin.* are in the *pres. tense*, denoting action *going on* at the *time* of (*contemporaneous with*) the action of *vidissent*; see (301, 302, 392). *castra*: acc. subj. of *compleri*: ‘that our camp was filling (was being filled).’ 15. *legiones*: acc. subj. of *premi* and *teneri*. *circumventas*: p. p. p. mod. *legiones*, ‘and that they were being held (*teneri*) almost surrounded.’ 16. *calones*, etc.: acc. subj. of *fugere*, ‘that the slaves, etc., were fleeing.’ *diversos dissipatosque*: ‘separated and scattered.’ 17. *desperatis . . . rebus*: ‘giving up our affairs as hopeless.’ 18. *Romanos*: acc. subj. of *pulsos*, *superatos(esse)*, indir. disc. with *renuntiaverunt*; ‘that the Romans had been defeated,’ etc. 19. *castris impedimentisque*: abl. obj. of *potitos esse*, see (353). *hostes*: acc. subj. of *potitos esse*, indir. disc., ‘that the enemy had captured their camp,’ etc.

CHAPTER XXV.—1. *ab cohortatione*: ‘from the cheering of the tenth legion’; abl. of place from which, mod. *profectus*. 2. *profectus*: depon. mod. Caesar, ‘having proceeded.’ *ubi . . . vidit*: translate Caesar as the subj. of this clause, though in the Latin it is the subj. of *processit* (line 15)—the first principal verb: ‘when Caesar saw that his men were hard pressed.’ *signis . . . collatis* (from *confero*): abl.

absol. ‘the standards being brought together’; better rendered as a clause of statement, ‘and that the standard’s were brought together.’ 3. **confertos milites**: acc. subj. of **esse**, with **vidit**. **sibi ipsos**: reciprocally emphasizing, these words are kept together: **ipsos** mod. **milites**; **sibi** with **impedimento** = doub. dat., see (352), lit. ‘for a hindrance to themselves’; **translat⁹**, ‘and (when he saw) that the crowded soldiers of . . . were in one another’s way for fighting (in the fight).’ 4. **cohortis**: gen. depen. upon **centurionibus**. 5. **occisis**: abl. absol. with **centurionibus**, ‘after all the centurions of . . . had been cut down.’ 6. **amiss⁹**: abl. absol., ‘(and) after the standard was lost.’ These ablatives absol. denote *time* and mod. **processit**. **fere**: adv. mod. **omnibus** (another abl. absol.), ‘after nearly all the centurions of . . . had been either killed or wounded.’ 7. **in his**: ‘among these.’ **primipilo . . . confect⁹**: abl. absol. ‘the chief centurion, P. Baculus, a very brave man, being disabled by many severe wounds.’ The chief ambition of the centurions was to become a **primipilus**, the highest in rank of all the centurions who stood in regular gradation. He had charge of the standard and was a member of the council of war. 9. **ut non posset**: neg. result; see (321); ‘so that he could no longer stand up’; the sequence of **posset** is from **confect⁹**, which denotes *past time*; the *imperf.* (**posset sustinere** = **sustineret**) denotes action *going on* at the time of (contemporaneous with) the action of **confect⁹**. **reliquos**: adj. used as noun, see (258); acc. subj. of **esse** with **vidit**, which is repeated in line 13 because of the length of the sentence; ‘that the rest were *losing spirit* (*tardiores*).’ 10. **nonnullos ab novissimis**: acc. subj. of **excedere** and **vitare**, ‘and that some of those in the rear were withdrawing.’ 11. **vitare**: ‘were avoiding’; for the meaning of the *pres. infin.* in O. O., see (301, 302). **hostis** = **hostes**, acc. subj. of **intermittere** and **instare**. **neque**: ‘and . . . not.’ 12. **subeuntē**: *pres. particip.* of **subeo**, acc. plur. mod. **hostis**; ‘and (when he saw) that the enemy did not cease coming up along the front from.’ **instare**: ‘and were pressing forward.’ 13. **rem esse in augusto**: ‘and that the matter had reached a crisis.’ **neque subsidium**: ‘and that there was no reserve force.’ 14. **quod . . . posset**: characteristic rel. clause, ‘that could be brought up.’ **scuto . . . detracto**: abl. absol., ‘jerking a shield.’ **uni militi**: dat. with a verb of *taking away*; see construction of **hostibus**, chap. 7, note 5; ‘from a soldier.’ **ab novissimis**: ‘(among those) in the rear.’ 16. **appellatis**: abl. absol., ‘addressing the centurions by name.’ **cohortatus**: mod. Caesar, ‘and encouraging the rest.’ 17. **signa inferre**: ‘to advance,’ *infin.* with

iussit. By advancing they would increase the space between the ranks and obtain more room for the use of their swords. quo . . . possent: affirm. purpose; quo = ut eo + comparative (facilius), see (384); 'so that they could use their swords to more advantage.' 18. uti: from utor. cuius adventu: see (367), 'now upon the arrival of this one. spe illata (from infero): 'hope being inspired.' militibus: dat. with comp. verb, see (337); 'in the soldiers.' 19. cum . . . cuperet: causal clause, mod. tardatus est; see (350); 'since each man on his own account . . . even (etiam) in the greatest peril to himself desired to do his best.' 21. paulum: adv., 'a little.'

CHAPTER XXVI.—1. cum . . . vidisset: although *Caesar* (in the Latin sent.) is the subj. of monuit, it is to be read as the subj. of the cum clause; 'when Caesar saw that the seventh legion was likewise hard pressed.' 2. tribunos: dir. obj. of monuit, which is followed by the ut clause as a secondary object, 'he advised the tribunes . . . that the legions should gradually draw together.' 3. conversa: p. p. p. acc. plur. mod. signa, the acc. obj. of inferrent; lit., 'the turned standards,' but best translated by a co-ordinate verb; see (381); 'that they should face about and advance upon the enemy.' 4. quo: see (367); abl. absol., 'now when this was done.' cum aliis, etc.: 'since one rendered assistance to one, another to another.' alii: dat., see (348). 5. neque, etc.: 'and since they did not fear (were not fearing).' ne: see (343), 'verbs of fearing'; 'that (lest) they would be surrounded.' aversi: p. p. p. nom. plur. mod. the subj. of circumvenientur; 'in the rear': i.e. with their backs turned towards the enemy. 8. praesidio, impedimentis: doub. dat., see (352); translate (with fuerant), 'which had guarded the baggage in the rear.' proelio nuntiato: 'on hearing a report of the battle.' cursu incitato: 'having quickened their pace.' 10. Labienus: modified by two depon. participles, potitus and conspicatus, 'and Labienus having captured . . . and having observed from his higher position.' He, with the IXth and Xth legions, had been pursuing the Atrebates. 10. castris: abl. obj. of potitus, see (353). 11. quae res . . . gererentur: indir. quest., see (313); sequence from conspicatus; 'having observed what things were going on (lit. 'were being waged') in our camp.' 12. qui: i.e. the soldiers of the Xth legion. Translate within the cum clause, 'now when these had found out.' 13. quo . . . esset: quo, from interrog. quis, introducing an indir. quest.; sequence from cognovissent, 'in what condition the affair was.' quanto . . . versaretur: indir. quest. (interrog. quantus), 'and in how great danger both the camp

... etc., were (*versaretur*).’ 14. *versaretur*: sing. agreeing with the *nearest* of the *three* subjects. 15. *nihil*... *fecerunt*: ‘they came up with the utmost possible speed.’ *reliqui*: partitive gen. depen. upon *nihil*, lit. ‘they made nothing of the rest as to (ad) quickness.’

CHAPTER XXVII.—1. *adventu*: abl. of cause, see (210), mod. *facta est*; ‘upon (on account of) the arrival of these.’ *rerum*: gen. with *commutatio*, ‘change in things.’ 2. *ut*... *redintegrarent*: affirm. result, see (321), sequence from *facta est*. *etiam qui*, etc.: ‘even those who had fallen, exhausted with wounds.’ *confecti*: p. p. p. mod. *qui*, see (316), and also (for *different* translation) see (381). 3. *scutis*: abl. known as the *locative ablative* (place where), mod. *innixi*. *innixi*: depon. perf. particip. mod. *nostri* (*qui*), ‘leaning upon their shields.’ *calones*: subj. of *occurrerunt*. 4. *perterritos*: p. p. p. mod. *hostes*, obj. of *conspicati*, which agrees with *calones*; ‘then the slaves, seeing the enemy in utter confusion.’ *inermes*: nom. plur. mod. *calones*, ‘even though unarmed.’ *armatis*: ‘the armed’; p. p. p. of *armo*, mas. plur. used as a substantive, see (258); dat. with the compound verb *occurrerent*; see (337). 5. *equites vero*: ‘and the cavalry too.’ *ut*... *delerent*: affirm. purpose, ‘so as to wipe out.’ 6. *quo*... *praeferrent*: also affirm. purpose, *quo* = *ut eo*, rarely used without a comparative; ‘so that thereby they might outdo.’ *militibus*: dat. with a comp. verb, translated like an *accus.*; lit., ‘place themselves before.’ 7. *at*: ‘but yet,’ marks in an emphatic way a change in the point of view of the narrative, describing the maneuvers of the enemy. 8. *ut*: introduces *insisterent*, *pugnarent*, *conicerent*, *remitterent*, being repeated in line 12 (*ut non*) with *deberet*. *cum primi*, etc.; ‘after their foremost men *had fallen*’ (from *cado*). 9. *proximi*: adj. as noun, ‘the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate.’ *iacentibus*: pres. particip. dat. with *eis* understood after the comp. verb, *insisterent*. *ex corporibus*: i.e. from the tops of the dead bodies; *ex* = ‘on.’ 10. *his deiectis*: abl. absol., ‘when these (*proximi*) were cut down.’ 11. *qui superessent*: before this rel. clause supply *ut* going with *conicerent* et *remitterent*, the subj. of these verbs being the anteced. of *qui*; the *ut* clauses depend upon *praestiterunt*, in line 8; ‘the enemy displayed such valor that those who survived hurled darts upon.’ *ut ex tumulo*: ‘as from a hill.’ 12. *intercepta*: p. p. p. acc. plur. neut. mod. *pila*, but rendered by a verb co-ordinate with *remitterent*; ‘picked up and threw back the pikes’, or by a rel. clause, ‘threw back the pikes which they picked up.’ *ut non deberet*: neg. result, see (321), ‘so that it ought not to be con-

sidered (*iudicari*).’ 13. nequiquam ausos esse : the subj. of the infin. is homines ; ‘had vainly dared.’ 15. quae: acc. plur. (mod. by *facilia*) obj. of *redegerat*; ‘things (*bold deeds*) which their greatness of courage had made easy.’ ex: ‘from having been.’ difficillimis: for comparison, see (314).

CHAPTER XXVIII.—1. facto: ‘being finished.’ 2. gente ac nomine redacto: ‘the race and name of the Nervii being reduced almost to annihilation’: redacto agrees with the nearer of the two nouns. maiores natu: ‘the older men,’ lit., ‘the greater by birth’: subj. of miserunt, dediderunt, and dixerunt. quos: acc. subj. of *coniectos esse*, depend. upon dixeramus; ‘who (not whom) I had said were hastily placed.’ 3. una cum: ‘along with.’ in: with acc., because of the idea of motion that prevails in *coniectos*. 4. hac, etc.: abl. absol., rendered, ‘upon hearing a report of this engagement.’ cum . . . arbitrarentur: causal clause, mod. miserunt, etc., see (350). arbitrarentur (a verb of thinking) governs two infin. propositions, nihil impeditum esse, and nihil tutum esse; ‘that nothing was an obstacle to the victors and nothing secure for the conquered.’ 5. victis: p. p. p. used as a noun, lit., ‘for those having been conquered.’ omnium: depen. upon *consensu*: ‘with the consent of . . . the older men (from line 2) sent ambassadors.’ 7. ei: dat. indir. obj., ‘to him.’ in commemoranda calamitate: gerundive, see (253). 8. ex sexcentis, ex hominum milibus LX: adverbial phrases limiting redactos esse: so with the two ad phrases. 9. vix: adv. restricting ad quingentos, ‘to barely 500.’ qui . . . possent: characteristic rel. clause and would take a subjunc. verb in the direct. sese redactos esse: for the time relation of this infin. with respect to the verb dixerunt, see (305); ‘they said that they had been reduced.’ 10. quos: obj. of *conservavit*, see (367); ‘now Caesar spared these.’ ut . . . videretur: ‘that he might appear to have shown (usus esse) mercy.’ usus (esse): since the subj. of usus esse is the same as that of videretur, a passive form, the participial part of the infin. is retained in the nom. case (personal construction): here usus (nom. sing.) agrees with the subj. of videretur. in: ‘toward.’ 12. finibus, oppidis: abl. obj. of uti (from utor). 13. finitimus: dat. obj. of imperavit, see (145). What is the relation of the time expressed by prohiberent to that of imperavit? At the time he issued the command, were they not to execute it at some subsequent (fut.) time?

CHAPTER XXIX.—3. domum: acc. of limit of motion without ad, see (386). 4. desertis: ‘after abandoning.’ sua: adj. (neut. plur.)

as a noun mod. by *omnia*, obj. of *contulerunt*: for its reflex. force, see (189, 214); 'all their possessions.' *egregie munitum*: p. p. p. mod. *oppidum*, 'remarkably fortified.' Perhaps this *oppidum* (name not given) was placed upon the plateau in an angle formed by the confluence of the Chambre and Meuse, about 35 miles northeast of the battlefield. 5. *quod . . . haberet*: 'now although *this town had*'; again the *relative* at the beginning of a paragraph, see (350, 367). *ex . . . partibus*: in brief, 'all round.' 7. *una ex parte*: 'on one side.' *leniter acclivis*: 'a gently sloping.' 8. *amplius*: acc. of ext. in space, used adverbially. *pedum*: the gen. (with numerals) is used to define measures of *length*, *width*, etc. 9. *duplici altissimo muro*: abl. of means, mod. *muni(v)erant*, 'with a very high double wall': meaning either two parallel walls, or a wall of double the usual thickness. *tum*: 'then,' i.e. at this particular time. *magni ponderis*: 'of great weight.' 10. *collocabant*: force of the imperfect? *ipsi*: emphatic or intensive pron. 11. *ex Cimbris*: abl. of source. *erant prognati*: 'were descended.' *qui*: subj. of *reliquerunt*. 12. *eis impedimentis*: 'abl. absol. with *depositis*'; 'having placed those incumbrances, which they could not take along': cattle as well as baggage. 14. *custodiam, praesidium*: in apposition with *milia*, 'left six thousand men as a guard and garrison.' *ex suis*: 'of their own.' 15. *una*: 'together with these'; i.e. with the *impedimentis*. *hi*: 'the latter,' i.e. the six thousand. 16. *exagitati*: 'being harassed.' *cum alias inferrent*: 'when at one time they were waging war.' 17. *alias, etc.*: supply *bellum sibi* with *illatum*, 'at another time they warded off (the war) waged (upon them).' 18. *pace facta*: abl. absol., mod. *delegerunt*. *delegerunt*: note the force of the perfect—time indefinitely past.

CHAPTER XXX.—*adventu*: abl. of time, 'and upon the first arrival of our army.' 2. *faciebant*: 'they kept making'; see (102). 3. *postea*: 'afterwards.' *vallo, castellis*: abl. of means, mod. *circummuniti*. 4. *circummuniti*: p. p. p. mod. the subj. of *continebant*; 'being protected by a rampart 15 miles around and by numerous strongholds.' *oppido*: supply in. 5. *vineis actis*: 'after the vineae were brought up.' *aggere exstructo*: '(and) after the agger had been made': *agger* = a long sloping mound of earth leading up to the height of the walls. *turrim . . . constitui*: indir. disc. with *viderunt*; notice the *time* indicated by the tense of *constitui*, 'that a tower *was being* constructed,' see (301, 302). 6. *irridere, increpitare*: *historical infinitives*; the infin. is often used for the *impf. indic.*

(descriptive impf.) and takes a subj. in the *nom.*; ‘they at first began to laugh at us . . . and *to taunt*’ (*increpitare vocibus*). 7. *quod . . . instrueretur*: subjunc. because the reason is given upon the authority of some one other than Caesar; see (276); ‘because (as they stated) such an engine of war *was being erected*.’ Notice the time of the action of *instrueretur*, as it relates to the time of the action in *irridere*; *irridere* = impf. indic. (a past tense), hence the subjunc. must be either impf. or plupf.; here impf. to denote *action* going on at the time of the action of *irridere* (contemporaneous action). *ab tanto spatio*: *ab* = adv., ‘away.’ *spatio* = abl. of degree of difference, ‘at such a distance.’ 8. *quibusnam manibus confiderent*: a question in the indirect disc., with the verb in the subjunc., ‘by what hands, pray, or with what strength did they hope?’ *viribus*: from *vis*. 9. *praesertim homines*: ‘especially being men of such small stature,’ spoken contemptuously. The Gauls expected the Romans to lift the tower and place it upon the wall—which seemed amusing. This indicates their utter lack of civilization. 10. *Gallis, contemptui*: doub. dat., see (352), ‘for our shortness (of stature) is an object of ridicule with the Gauls.’ 11. *tanti oneris*: ‘of such weight.’ *moturos (esse) sese*: indir. disc. with *confiderent*; for *time* indicated by *moturos esse*, see (318)—3 and 4; ‘did they hope that they *would move*? i.e. did they expect to move?

CHAPTER XXXI.—1. *ubi vero*: ‘when indeed.’ *moveri et appropinquare*: subj. *turrim* understood, ‘was moving and approaching.’ *moenibus*: dat. with a comp. verb. 2. *specie*: abl. of cause, mod. *commoti* (p. p. p.), which in turn mod. the subj. of *miserunt*; ‘being greatly alarmed by the new and unusual sight.’ 3. *locuti*: depon. perf. particip. mod. *qui*, the subj. of *dixerunt* (line 7); ‘speaking after (ad) this fashion, said.’ For use (mood and tense) of infin. and subjunc.—princip. and subord. clauses—in O. O., see (301, 302, 305, 306, 318, 392). 4. *existimare*: princip. verb depen. upon *dixerunt*; subj. *se* understood; ‘that they did not believe (were not believing).’ *Romanos . . . gerere*: is indir. disc. with *existimare*, like a wheel within a wheel; ‘that the Romans waged (were waging)’; note the force of the pres. infin. in O. O., see (302)—example 3. 5. *qui . . . possent*: a rel. clause denoting cause, *qui* = *cum ei* (see 350), which would take a subjunc. verb in the *direct*; ‘since they could move forward.’ 7. *permittere*: ‘that they surrendered themselves,’ etc. *unum*: ‘one thing only,’ acc. sing. neut. obj. of *petere*; notice the emphatic

position of *unum*, which is explained by the *ne . . . despoliaret* clause; *indir. disc.* to the end of the chapt. *petere*, etc.: *subj.* is *se* understood, ‘that they asked (were asking) and begged for one thing.’ *si*: in this condition *si statuisset* is the protasis, *ne . . . despoliaret* the apodosis: in the *direct disc.* they were, *si statueris* (*fut. perf. indic.*) see (223), and *noli despoliare* (for *ne despolia*—*imperative*). For ‘commands and exhortations,’ see (389, 390). In changing this sent. to *indir. disc.*, the *princip. verb* (*noli despoliare*) becomes *subjunc.* (*neg. ne*), *pres.* after *dicunt*, *imperf.* after *dixerunt* (*as in this instance*); the *subord. verb*, representing time *completed* (in the future), becomes *perf. subjunc.* after *dicunt*, *pluperf.* after *dixerunt* (*as in this instance*): observe that the person changes from the *second* to the *third*; ‘if perchance Caesar resolved . . . , (they begged) that he would not (*ne*) deprive them of their arms.’ 8. *pro sua*, etc.: ‘in accordance with his usual.’ *quam . . . audirent*: *subord. clause* in O. O., hence *subjunc.*; though depending upon the *si statuisset* clause, it obtains its sequence from *dixerunt*, the main verb of saying. Observe the *time* indicated by *audirent*, ‘which they themselves *were* (constantly) *hearing of* through others.’ 9. *conservandos esse*: *periphras.* *pass.* *infin.*, *indir. disc.* with *statuisset*; ‘that the Aduatuci ought to be spared.’ How is the *periphras.* *act.* formed? how the *pass.*? how express the *person. agent* with this *pass.*? 10. *sibi*: *dat.* with *inimicos*, see (126), ‘were hostile to them.’ 11. *virtuti*: *dat.* *indir. obj.* of *invidere*, see (348), ‘were jealous of their valor.’ 12. *traditis armis*: *abl. absol.*, translated by a conditional, ‘if their arms were given up.’ *sibi praestare*: *indir. disc.* with *dixerunt*; impersonal verb having the *infin.* clause, *quamvis fortunam . . . pati*, as the *subj.*; ‘that it would be better for them . . . to suffer (*pati*)’, etc. *si . . . deducerentur*: move *viv. fut.* in the *direct*; was this *fut.* or *fut. pf. indic.* in the *direct*? see (223). Does the *imperf. subjunc.* (O. O.) denote *finished* time, such as would be indicated by the *fut. pf. indic.* (O. R.)? Find answers to these questions in (396). 14. *quam interfici*: ‘than to be put to death.’ *consue(vi)ssent*: *subord. clause* in O. O., *plupf.* denoting completed time, ‘had been in the habit of.’

CHAPTER XXXII.—1. *respondit*: *perf.*, not *pres.* *se*: *indir. disc.* through *inferrent*. 2. *consuetudine, merito*: ‘rather in accordance with his usual habit (of merciful treatment of a foe) than on account of any act of theirs’; the former = *abl.* of manner, the latter = *abl.* of cause; both mod. *conservaturum esse*. *conservaturum esse*: ‘that

he would spare': this is the *apodosis verb* of a more viv. fut. condition in *indir. disc.*, the *protasis* verb being *dedidissent*. In the *direct* they are written, *ego conservabo, si dedideritis* (fut. perf. indic.): notice that there is a change of *mood, tense*, and *person* when turning *direct* into *indir. disc.*, the principal verbs of *declarative statement* clauses becoming *infin.*, and all subord. verbs *subjunc.* In changing *conservabo* to the *infin.*, the *tense* remains the same (whether it follows *replies* or *replied*); but in changing *dedideritis* to the *subjunc.*, the *tense* must be changed (as there is no *fut. perf. subjunc.*); the representatives of *finished time* in the *subjunc.* (*dedideritis* = time *finished* in the *fut.* before another *fut.* action) are the *perf. after replies*, the *pluperf. after replied*; see rule of seq. (135), and *condit.* in *indir. disc.*, (396); and specimens of *indir. disc.*, (400, 401). 3. *prius quam*: introducing *attigisset*, subord. verb in O. O., 'before the battering ram touched (reached)': *attigisset* = *attigerit* (*fut. perf. indic.*) in the *direct*; why not *imperf. subjunc.*? 4. *nullam condicionem*: acc. subj. of *esse*, 'that there were (would be) no terms.' *nisi armis traditis*: idiom, translated, 'unless their arms were handed over.' Offers of submission must be made before the battering ram (*aries*) reached the wall, since a besieged place was looked upon as already captured when this stage of the siege was reached. 5. *id facturum esse*: *id*, obj. of *facturum*, and anteced. of *quod*, 'that he would do that thing.' *quod . . . fecisset*: subord. verb in O. O., 'which he did (had done).' *fecisset* = what, in the *direct*? 6. *ne . . . inferrent*: could *non* be used? see (228, 389, 390); 'that he would command them not to do any (*quam*) harm.' Although *ne . . . inferrent* depends upon *imperaturum (esse)*, which is *fut.*, yet the *sequence of tense* is determined by *respondit* (*past tense*); see (397). 7. *ad suos*: 'to their own people.' *quae*: anteced. is (*ea*), obj. of *facere*; *quae* = subj. of *imperarentur*. *facere*: *infin.* in *indir. disc.*, subj. is (*se*); we should expect *facturos esse*, but the pres. tense is here used as an immediate future; 'they said that they would do those things which were being ordered.' 8. *magna multitudine . . . iacta*: abl. *absol.* of *time mod. usi sunt*, 'after they had thrown a large number.' 9. *sic ut*: 'so that.' *summam*: noun, dir. obj. of *adaequarent* (*subjunc.* of *affirm. result*). 10. *acervi*: subj. of *adaequarent*, 'the heaps of arms were almost as high as the top of the wall and the *agger*.' The deep space (*fossa*) between the wall and the end of the mound (*agger*) which gradually rose to a height equal to that of the wall of the town was almost filled with the arms.

11. et tamen tertia . . . celata, retenta: 'and yet about a third part being concealed and kept.' 12. portis patefactis: abl. absol. mod. usi sunt; 'after throwing the gates wide open they enjoyed peace.' 13. pace: why abl.? see (353).

CHAPTER XXXIII.—1. sub: 'towards.' 2. ne . . . acciperent: neg. purpose; would non do? see (211, 320); 'lest they should receive.' quam: indefinite pron. after si, nisi, ne, num; 'any violence.' ab: 'at the hands of.' 3. illi: subj. of fecerunt, line 11. inito: p. p. p. of ineo, forming abl. absol. with consilio, the phrase modifying fecerunt; 'according to a plan formerly arranged.' ut, etc.: parenthetical and impersonal, 'as it was learned (later on).' 4. quod . . . crediderant: mod. fecerunt, 'because they had supposed.' deducturos esse: indir. disc. with crediderant. 6. partim cum: 'partly with those arms . . . partly with shields,' adverbial phrases mod. fecerunt. 7. ex . . . factis, etc.: factis limits scutis, 'made out of bark or twigs woven together.' quae: anteced. is scutis; it is the dir. obj. of induxerant. 8. ut: 'as.' 9. tertia vigilia: abl. of time mod. fecerunt. qua: adv., 'where.' This passage indicates that the Roman lines were on high ground. minime: adv. mod. arduus, 'least difficult.' 10. ascensus: subj. of videbatur, 'the approach to (ad) . . . seemed.' 11. ut, etc.: 'as Caesar had previously commanded'; imperarat = imperaverat. 12. ignibus: abl. of means mod. facta, which in turn limits significations in the abl. sing. fem.; 'after fire-signals had been made.' 13. eo concursum est: impers., see (365). pugnatum . . . est: 'and the enemy fought,' what literally? ita acriter ut: 'just as bravely as.' 14. ut: goes with pugnari debuit, 'as it ought to have been fought.' For meaning of pugnari (pres. infin.), see (385), how ought and must are expressed, *past action*, example a. Translate freely 'as brave men ought to have fought.' a viris: pers. agent, see (240). 15. qui . . . iacerent: characteristic rel. clause which takes a *subjunc.* verb; 'who were casting.' 16. cum . . . consistaret: causal cum, see (350), 'since all hope depended (was depending)'; the clause mod. pugnari debuit. in una virtute: 'upon valor alone.' 17. ad: adv. mod. quattuor, 'after about four thousand.' 18. cum . . . defenserent: causal clause mod. refractis, 'at a time when no one any longer (iam) defended them.' 20. sectionem . . . universam: i.e. the whole people with all their possessions. According to ancient ideas this procedure of selling into slavery the captured foe as a punishment for treachery was perfectly justifiable. ab eis: regular pers. agent, see (240), mod. relatus est; 'the number of souls

reported to him by those who.' 21. *miliūm*, etc.: pred. gen. of characteristic.

CHAPTER XXXIV.—1. *eodem tempore*: as the subjugation of the several tribes mentioned in this chapter was accomplished by the VIIth legion, which had been detached from the Roman army just after the battle of the Sambre, it would seem that the siege described in the few preceding chapters must have lasted a month or more. a *Crasso*: pers. agent mod. *certior factus est*. 2. *ad*: 'against.' 4. *certior factus est*: as a verb of hearing it takes the acc. + infin., *civitates . . . redactas esse*.

CHAPTER XXXV.—1. *tanta opinio . . . perlata est*: 'such a report of this war was spread.' Notice the emphasis given to the verb by the prefix *per*; the report went from tribe to tribe until it reached all of them. 2. *uti . . . mitterentur*: affirm. result, 'that ambassadors were sent.' 3. *incoherent*: subjunc. by attraction, see (276). Why is *quae fem. plur.*? 4. *qui . . . pollicerentur*: rel. clause of purpose, see (311). What is the *time* of the action of *pollicerentur* with respect to that of *mitterentur*, *present* (going on) at the *time of sending*, or *future* (subsequent to it)? *daturas (esse)*: why not *datueros*? To what does *se* refer? What is the gender of *nationibus*? 5. *quas Caesar iussit*: 'and Caesar ordered *these*.' *legationes* = *legatos*. *in Italiam*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Caesar's province extended to the Rubicon. 6. *Illyricum*: east of the Adriatic, also a part of Caesar's 'province,' where he usually spent the winter season. *inita*: from *ineo*, p. p. p. abl. absol. with *aestate*, 'at the beginning of the following summer,' 'early next summer.' 7. *in Carnutes*, etc.: adverbial phrases mod. *deductis*, which forms an abl. absol. with *legionibus*; 'after he had brought his legions into their winter-quarters among (in).' *quaeque civitates*: translate as if, *et civitates quae*, 'and among those states which were.' 8. *ubi*: 'where.' 10. *ob easque*: note the position of *que*. *ex litteris*: 'in accordance with letters from Caesar.' 11. *supplicatio*: a public thanksgiving, decreed by the Senate in honor of a victory, at first lasting only one day, then usually three or four. Caesar was granted a *supplicatio* which lasted for fifteen days, the longest time that had ever been granted. *quod* = *id quod*, 'an honor (a thing) which.' 12. *nulli*: notice the emphatic position.

448. First-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts of verbs marked *, see vocabulary at end of the book; those unmarked are *regular*, like **portō**, **amō**, etc.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. accommodō , <i>adjust</i> | 34. dubitō , <i>hesitate, doubt</i> |
| 2. adaequō , <i>equal</i> | 35. exagitō , <i>harass</i> |
| 3. adiuvō *, <i>aid</i> | 36. exanimō , <i>make breathless</i> |
| 4. administrō , <i>execute</i> | 37. exercitō , <i>train</i> |
| 5. appropinquō , <i>draw near to</i> | 38. existimō , <i>think</i> |
| 6. aedificō , <i>build</i> | 39. explōrō , <i>find out</i> |
| 7. amplificō , <i>increase</i> | 40. expūgnō , <i>storm</i> |
| 8. appellō , <i>call</i> | 41. exspectō , <i>await</i> |
| 9. arbitror *, <i>think</i> | 42. fugō , <i>rout</i> |
| 10. armō , <i>arm</i> | 43. hiemō , <i>winter</i> |
| 11. cēlō , <i>conceal</i> | 44. imperō , <i>command</i> |
| 12. circumdō *, <i>surround</i> | 45. impetrō , <i>obtain</i> |
| 13. coacervō , <i>pile up</i> | 46. incitō , <i>quicken, excite</i> |
| 14. cohortor *, <i>encourage</i> | 47. increpitō , <i>taunt</i> |
| 15. commemorō , <i>relate</i> | 48. incūsō , <i>blame</i> |
| 16. comparō , <i>prepare</i> | 49. īnstō *, <i>press forward</i> |
| 17. cōnfīrmō , <i>establish</i> | 50. intrō , <i>enter</i> |
| 18. coniūrō , <i>conspire</i> | 51. iūdicō , <i>suppose</i> |
| 19. conlocō , <i>place</i> | 52. iuvō *, <i>aid</i> |
| 20. cōnor *, <i>attempt</i> | 53. laxō , <i>spread out</i> |
| 21. cōservō , <i>spare</i> | 54. mandō , <i>direct, instruct</i> |
| 22. convocō , <i>summon</i> | 55. mātūrō , <i>hasten</i> |
| 23. cōspicor *, <i>see</i> | 56. moror *, <i>delay</i> |
| 24. dēcertō , <i>contend</i> | 57. nāvō , <i>do with zeal [operam
nāvāre, do one's best]</i> |
| 25. dēmōnstrō , <i>explain</i> | 58. nōminō , <i>name</i> |
| 26. dēpopulor *, <i>lay waste</i> | 59. nūdō , <i>strip</i> |
| 27. dēprecor *, <i>pray (for)</i> | 60. nūntiō , <i>announce</i> |
| 28. dēspērō , <i>despair (of)</i> | 61. occupō , <i>seize</i> |
| 29. dēspoliō , <i>deprive (of)</i> | 62. oppūgnō , <i>attack</i> |
| 30. dīmicō , <i>fight</i> | 63. pācō , <i>subdue</i> |
| 31. dissipō , <i>scatter</i> | 64. perīclitor *, <i>test, try [order</i> |
| 32. dō *, <i>give</i> | <i>65. perturbō, throw into dis-</i> |
| 33. dominor *, <i>rule</i> | |

* deponent verb; see (325) and vocabulary at end of the book.

66. *populor*,¹ *plunder*
 67. *portō*, *carry*
 68. *postulō*, *demand*
 69. *praedor*,¹ *plunder*
 70. *praestō*,* *excel*
 71. *proelior*,¹ *fight*
 72. *prōfligō*, *defeat*
 73. *properō*, *hasten*
 74. *prōpūgnō*, *fight*
 75. *prōturbō*, *repulse*
 76. *prōvolō*, *rush forth*
 77. *pūgnō*, *fight*
 78. *redintegrō*, *renew*.
 79. *renūntiō*, *announce*
80. *revocō*, *call back*
 81. *servō*, *watch*
 82. *sīgnificō*, *show*
 83. *sollicitō*, *incite*
 84. *superō*, *overcome*
 85. *sustentō*, *hold out*
 86. *tardō*, *check*
 87. *vāstō*, *lay waste*
 88. *vēsor*,¹ *remain, be*
 89. *vetō*,* *forbid*
 90. *vexō*, *harass*
 91. *vītō*, *avoid*
 92. *vulnerō*, *wound*

449. Second-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

1. *audeō*, *dare*
 2. *commoveō*, *alarm*
 3. *compleō*, *fill*
 4. *contineō*, *keep, hold in*
 5. *dēbeō*, *ought, owe*
 6. *dēleō*, *destroy*
 7. *dēterreō*, *prevent*
 8. *distineō*, *separate, keep apart*
 9. *doceō*, *explain*
 10. *habeō*, *have*
 11. *iaceō*, *lie prostrate*
 12. *invideō*, *envy*
 13. *irrīdeō*, *mock*
 14. *iubeō*, *order*
 15. *lateō*, *lie hid*
 16. *moneō*, *direct, advise*
 17. *moveō*, *move*
 18. *obtineō*, *hold, maintain*
 19. *oportet*, *ought, it behooves*
 20. *pateō*, *extend*
 21. *permoveō*, *excite*
22. *persuādeō*, *persuade*
 23. *perterreō*, *frighten*
 24. *pertineō*, *reach*
 25. *polliceor*, *promise*
 26. *possideō*, *possess, occupy*
 27. *praebeō*, *furnish, display*
 28. *prohibeō*, *prevent, cut off*
 29. *prōmoveō*, *move forward*
 30. *prōvideō*, *provide*
 31. *respondeō*, *reply*
 32. *retineō*, *restrain*
 33. *studeō*, *desire*
 34. *supersedeō*, *refrain from*
 35. *sustineō*, *withstand*
 36. *teneō*, *hold*
 37. *timeō*, *fear*
 38. *urgeō*, *press hard*
 39. *valeō*, *have influence, be strong*
 40. *vereor*, *fear*
 41. *videō*, *see*
 42. *videor*, *seem*

450. Third-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>abđō</i> , <i>hide</i> | 35. <i>cōnspiciō</i> , <i>see</i> |
| 2. <i>accēđō</i> , <i>approach</i> | 36. <i>cōnstituō</i> , <i>determine, ar-</i> |
| 3. <i>accidō</i> , <i>happen</i> | <i>range</i> |
| 4. <i>acciipiō</i> , <i>receive</i> | 37. <i>cōnsuēscō</i> , <i>be accustomed</i> |
| 5. <i>addūcō</i> , <i>bring, influence</i> | 38. <i>contendō</i> , <i>hasten, struggle</i> |
| 6. <i>adiciō</i> , <i>hurl</i> | 39. <i>convertō</i> , <i>turn</i> |
| 7. <i>aggredior</i> , <i>attack</i> | 40. <i>crēđō</i> , <i>believe</i> |
| 8. <i>agō</i> , <i>do</i> | 41. <i>cupiō</i> , <i>desire</i> |
| 9. <i>āmittō</i> , <i>lose, let pass</i> | 42. <i>dēcernō</i> , <i>decree</i> |
| 10. <i>arcessō</i> , <i>summon</i> | 43. <i>dēcurrō</i> , <i>run down</i> |
| 11. <i>ascendō</i> , <i>climb</i> | 44. <i>dēđō</i> , <i>surrender</i> |
| 12. <i>attingō</i> , <i>border upon</i> | 45. <i>dēđūcō</i> , <i>lead away</i> |
| 13. <i>āvertō</i> , <i>turn back or away</i> | 46. <i>dēfendō</i> , <i>defend</i> |
| 14. <i>cadō</i> , <i>fall, be killed</i> | 47. <i>dēficiō</i> , <i>revolt</i> |
| 15. <i>cēđō</i> , <i>retreat</i> | 48. <i>dēiciō</i> , <i>hurl down</i> |
| 16. <i>circumiciō</i> , <i>place around</i> | 49. <i>dēligō</i> , <i>choose</i> |
| 17. <i>claudō</i> , <i>close</i> | 50. <i>dēpōnō</i> , <i>set down</i> |
| 18. <i>cōgnōscō</i> , <i>find out</i> | 51. <i>dēserō</i> , <i>desert</i> |
| 19. <i>cōgō</i> , <i>collect, assemble</i> | 52. <i>dēsistō</i> , <i>cease</i> |
| 20. <i>committō</i> , <i>begin</i> | 53. <i>dētrahō</i> , <i>jerk, snatch</i>
(away) |
| 21. <i>compellō</i> , <i>drive</i> | 54. <i>dētrūdō</i> , <i>remove, strip off</i> |
| 22. <i>concīđō</i> , <i>cut to pieces</i> | 55. <i>dīcō</i> , <i>say</i> |
| 23. <i>concurrō</i> , <i>hurry, rush</i> | 56. <i>dīmittō</i> , <i>dismiss</i> |
| 24. <i>condūcō</i> , <i>hire, collect</i> | 57. <i>dīripiō</i> , <i>plunder</i> |
| 25. <i>cōnficiō</i> , <i>exhaust, furnish,</i>
<i>finish</i> | 58. <i>discēđō</i> , <i>depart</i> |
| 26. <i>cōnfidō</i> , <i>trust, rely on</i> | 59. <i>dūcō</i> , <i>lead</i> |
| 27. <i>cōnfīgō</i> , <i>fight</i> | 60. <i>ēđūcō</i> , <i>lead out</i> |
| 28. <i>congredior</i> , <i>fight</i> | 61. <i>efficiō</i> , <i>bring about, cause</i> |
| 29. <i>cōniciō</i> , <i>place, hurl, drive</i> | 62. <i>ēgredior</i> , <i>depart</i> |
| 30. <i>coniungō</i> , <i>join</i> | 63. <i>ēligō</i> , <i>choose</i> |
| 31. <i>cōnscribō</i> , <i>enroll</i> | 64. <i>ēmittō</i> , <i>hurl</i> |
| 32. <i>cōnsequor</i> , <i>pursue</i> | 65. <i>emō</i> , <i>buy</i> |
| 33. <i>eōnsidō</i> , <i>settle, encamp</i> | 66. <i>ēnāscor</i> , <i>grow out</i> |
| 34. <i>cōnsistō</i> , <i>make a stand,</i>
<i>rally</i> | 67. <i>excēđō</i> , <i>go away</i> |
| | 68. <i>expellō</i> , <i>drive out</i> |

69. *exstrūō, construct*
 70. *faciō, make*
 71. *fallō, disappoint*
 72. *fugiō, flee*
 73. *gerō, carry on*
 74. *iaciō, hurl, construct*
 75. *impellō, urge on*
 76. *incendō, burn*
 77. *incidō, happen*
 78. *incīdō, cut into, notch*
 79. *incipiō, begin*
 80. *incolō, inhabit, live*
 81. *indūcō, cover, draw on*
 82. *induō, put on*
 83. *inflectō, bend*
 84. *ingredior, enter*
 85. *innītor, lean upon*
 86. *īnsequor, pursue*
 87. *īnsistō, stand upon*
 88. *īntruō, draw up, erect*
 89. *intellegō, know [tween*
 90. *intercēdō, be or move be-*
 91. *intercipiō, pick up*
 92. *interficiō, kill*
 93. *intericiō, place between*
 94. *intermittō, cease*
 95. *interscindō, cut down*
 96. *intexō, weave in*
 97. *intrōdūcō, bring in*
 98. *intrōmittō, let in*
 99. *inveterāscō, grow old*
 100. *loquor, speak*
 101. *mittō, send*
 102. *nāscor, rise, spring up*
 103. *obdūcō, dig, construct*
 104. *occīdō, slay*
 105. *occurrō, meet*
 106. *omittō, overlook*
107. *patefaciō, open wide*
 108. *patior, allow*
 109. *pellō, defeat, drive*
 110. *permittō, give up, entrust*
 111. *perspiciō, find out*
 112. *petō, ask for, seek*
 113. *pōnō, place*
 114. *poscō, demand*
 115. *praeficiō, place in com-*
mand of
 116. *praemittō, send forward*
 117. *praescribō, give directions*
 118. *premō, press hard*
 119. *prōcēdō, advance*
 120. *prōcumbō, fall*
 121. *proficīscor, set out, go*
 122. *profugiō, flee*
 123. *prōgredior, advance*
 124. *prōiciō, give up, abandon*
 125. *prōpōnō, display*
 126. *prōsequor, pursue*
 127. *quaerō, inquire*
 128. *recipiō, receive*
 129. *reddō, give back, render*
 130. *redigō, reduce*
 131. *reducō, lead back*
 132. *refringō, break down*
 133. *rēiciō, throw or drive back*
 134. *relanguēscō, be weakened*
 135. *relinquō, leave*
 136. *remittō, hurl back, relax*
 137. *repellō, drive back*
 138. *resistō, resist*
 139. *respiciō, look back [back*
 140. *revertō, revertor, turn*
Generally deponent in present system, active in perfect system
 142. *scribō, write*
 143. *sequor, follow*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 144. <i>statuō</i> , determine | 151. <i>trādō</i> , hand over |
| 145. <i>submittō</i> , send | 152. <i>trādūcō</i> , lead across |
| 146. <i>subruō</i> , undermine | 153. <i>trānsgrēdior</i> , cross |
| 147. <i>subsequor</i> , follow after | 154. <i>ūtor</i> , use, employ |
| 148. <i>succēdō</i> , approach | 155. <i>vēndō</i> , sell |
| 149. <i>sūmō</i> , claim, assume | 156. <i>vergō</i> , incline |
| 150. <i>tendō</i> , stretch out | 157. <i>vincō</i> , conquer |

451. Fourth-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>adoriō</i> , attack | 10. <i>experiō</i> , try, risk |
| 2. <i>audiō</i> , hear | 11. <i>impediō</i> , hinder |
| 3. <i>circummūniō</i> , <i>fortify</i>
strongly | 12. <i>inveniō</i> , come upon |
| 4. <i>circumveniō</i> , surround | 13. <i>mūniō</i> , fortify |
| 5. <i>cōnsentiō</i> , conspire | 14. <i>obveniō</i> , meet |
| 6. <i>conveniō</i> , assemble | 15. <i>orior</i> , descend, spring from |
| 7. <i>dēveniō</i> , come | 16. <i>perveniō</i> , arrive at |
| 8. <i>dīmētior</i> , measure off | 17. <i>potiōr</i> , capture |
| 9. <i>exaudiō</i> , hear distinctly | 18. <i>reperiō</i> , find out |
| | 19. <i>veniō</i> , come |

452. Irregular verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>absum</i> , be distant | 14. <i>intersum</i> , impers., <i>it con-</i> |
| 2. <i>adeō</i> , approach | 15. <i>nōlō</i> , be unwilling [cerns |
| 3. <i>afferō</i> , bring to | 16. <i>offerō</i> , carry, bring |
| 4. <i>coepī</i> , begin | 17. <i>perferō</i> , endure |
| 5. <i>cōferō</i> , collect | 18. <i>possum</i> , be able, can |
| 6. <i>dēferō</i> , report | 19. <i>praeferō</i> , prefer |
| 7. <i>dēsum</i> , be lacking, wanting | 20. <i>praesum</i> , be in command of |
| 8. <i>eō</i> , go | 21. <i>redeō</i> , go back, descend, |
| 9. <i>exeō</i> , go out | 22. <i>referō</i> , report [slope |
| 10. <i>ferō</i> , bear | 23. <i>subeō</i> , approach |
| 11. <i>fīō</i> , be made, happen | 24. <i>sum</i> , be |
| 12. <i>ineō</i> , enter upon | 25. <i>supersum</i> , survive |
| 13. <i>īferō</i> , wage, bring upon | 26. <i>trānseō</i> , cross |

PARADIGMS OF DECLENSIONS.

453. First declension.—Most nouns are *feminine*. The stem ends in **a**.

Silva, forest.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
silva	silvae
silvae	silvārum
silvae	silvīs
silvam	silvās
silva	silvae
silvā	silvīs

Galea, helmet.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
galea	galeae
galeae	galeārum
galeae	galeīs
galeam	galeās
galea	galeae
galeā	galeīs

454. Second declension.—Nouns in **us**, **er**, and **ir** are *masculine*, those in **um** *neuter*. The stem ends in **o**.

Gladius, sword.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
gladius	gladiī
gladiī	gladiōrum
gladiō	gladiīs
gladium	gladiōs
gladie	gladiī
gladiō	gladiīs

Ager, field.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ager	agrī
agrī	agrōrum
agrō	agrīs
agrum	agrōs
ager	agrī
agrō	agrīs

Vir, man.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
vir	virī
virī	virōrum
virō	virīs
virum	virōs
vir	virī
virō	virīs

Scūtum, shield.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
scūtum	scūta
scūtī	scūtōrum
scūtō	scūtīs
scūtum	scūta
scūtum	scūta
scūtō	scūtīs

455. Classification of third-declension nouns by stems.—The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the *stem-characteristic*, into (1) *consonant stems* and (2) *vowel stems*.

456. Consonant stems.—*Consonant stems* are divided into—

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Mute stems</i> | { ending in <i>p-mute</i> , b, p.
“ “ <i>k-mute</i> , c, g.
“ “ <i>t-mute</i> , d, t. |
| 2. <i>Sibilant stems</i> , ending in s. | |
| 3. <i>Liquid stems</i> , ending in l, n, r. | |

A. *Mute stems*, masculines and feminines, add s to form the nominative. Before s, a *p-mute* is retained, a *k-mute* unites with it as x, a *t-mute* is dropped. Most polysyllabic mute stems change the final vowel i to e in the nominative.

p-mute: **prīnceps**, **prīcipis**, stem **prīcip**.

k-mute: **lēx**, **lēgis**, stem **lēg**; **vōx**, **vōcis**, stem **vōc**.

t-mute: **mīles**, **mīlitis**, stem **mīlit**; **pēs**, **pedis**, stem **ped**.

B. *Sibilant stems* have no additional s in the nominative, masculines changing e to i before s, and neuters e or o to u; in the oblique cases the s of the stem changes to r between two vowels.

pulvis, **pulveris** (mas.), *powder*, stem **pulves**.

latus, **lateris**, stem **lates**; **corpus**, **corporis**, stem **corpos**.

C. *Liquid stems* in l or r do not change the stem to form the nominative; as, **sōl**, **sōlis**, *sun*, stem **sōl**; **rūmor**, **rūmōris**, stem **rūmōr**.

Most stems in n form the nominative by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to o, while most neuter and a few masculine nouns retain the stem-characteristic and change preceding i to e:

homō, **hominis**, stem **homin**; **flūmen**, **flūminis**, stem **flūmin**.

457. Vowel stems end in *i* or *u*.—Masculine and feminine nouns form the nominative in *s*, and have *ēs* and *īs* in the accusative plural; neuters end in *e*, *al*, *ar* and have *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, and *ī* in the ablative singular. Some masculine and feminine nouns also have *ī* in the ablative singular. A few feminines change the stem vowel *i* to *e* in the nominative before *s*, and neuters change the *i* to *e*, which is dropped in polysyllabics after *l* and *r*.

Vowel stems in *i* have *ium* in the genitive plural, masculines and feminines ending in *ēs*, *er*, *is*—neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*.

vātēs, vātis (mas. and fem.), *seer*, stem *vāti*.

hostis, hostis (mas.), stem *hosti*.

īnsīgne, īnsīgnis (neut.), stem *īnsīgni*.

animal, animālis, animal, stem *animāli*.

458. Third declension.—General rules of gender for third-declension nouns, classed according to the nominative ending.

GROUP I.

Masculines are: (1) nouns in *es*, gen. *itis*: *miles*, *militis*;—(2) *es* or *is*, gen. *idis*: *obses*, *obsidis*; *lapis*, *lapidis*;—(3) *er* or *or*: *frāter*, *rūmor*;—(4) many *vowel stems* in *i*: *fīnis*, *fīnis*;—(5) some *monosyllables*: *pēs*, *mōs*, *pōns*;—(6) nouns in *ō* or *ōs*.

<i>Miles, soldier.</i>		<i>Lapis, stone.</i>		<i>Frāter, brother.</i>	
SINGULAR.	FLURAL.	SINGULAR.	FLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>mīles</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>lapis</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>	<i>lapidis</i>	<i>lapidum</i>	<i>frātris</i>	<i>frātrum</i>
<i>mīlitī</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>lapidī</i>	<i>lapidibus</i>	<i>frātrī</i>	<i>frātribus</i>
<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>lapidem</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>frātrem</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>mīles</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>lapis</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>mīlite</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>lapide</i>	<i>lapidibus</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>frātribus</i>

Hostis, enemy.

SINGULAR.

hostis
hostis
hostī
hostem
hostis
hoste

PLURAL.

hostēs
hostium
hostibus
hostēs, -īs
hostēs
hostibus

Pēs, foot.

SINGULAR.

pēs
pedis
pedī
pedem
pēs
pede

PLURAL.

pedēs
pedum
pedibus
pedēs
pedēs
pedibus

For the mode of distinguishing *vowel stems*, which are parasyllabic, from *consonant stems*, which are imparasyllabic, see (131).

GROUP II.

Feminines are: (1) nouns in ās, gen. ātis: facultās, facultātis;—(2) nouns in iō (*abstract and collective*): legiō, legiōnis;—(3) ūs, gen. ūtis or ūdis: virtūs, virtūtis;—(4) dō and gō, gen. inis: multitūdō, multitūdinis;—(5) most monosyllables: pāx, lēx;—(6) nouns in ēs, ys, is, and s (preceded by a consonant).

Facultās, opportunity.

SINGULAR.

facultās
facultātis
facultātī
facultātem
facultās
facultāte

PLURAL.

facultātēs
facultātum
facultātibus
facultātēs
facultātēs
facultātibus

Legiō, legion.

SINGULAR.

legiō
legiōnis
legiōnī
legiōnem
legiō
legiōne

PLURAL.

legiōnēs
legiōnum
legiōnibus
legiōnēs
legiōnēs
legiōnibus

Virtūs, courage.

SINGULAR.

virtūs
virtūtis
virtūtī
virtūtem
virtūs
virtūte

PLURAL.

virtūtēs
virtūtum
virtūtibus
virtūtēs
virtūtēs
virtūtibus

Lēx, law.

SINGULAR.

lēx
lēgis
lēgī
lēgem
lēx
lēge

PLURAL.

lēgēs
lēgum
lēgibus
lēgēs
lēgēs
lēgibus

Multitūdō, multitude.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
multitūdō	multitūdinēs
multitūdinis	multitūdinum
multitūdīnī	multitūdinibus
multitūdinem	multitūdinēs
multitūdō	multitūdinēs
multitūdīne	multitūdinibus

GROUP III.

Neuters are: (1) nouns in us, gen. eris or oris: latus, lateris; corpus, corporis;—(2) men, gen. minis: flūmen, flūminis;—(3) nouns in e, al, ar, ur.

Latus, side.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
latus	latera
lateris	laterum
laterī	lateribus
latus	latera
latus	latera
latere	lateribus

Corpus, body.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
corpus	corpora
corporis	corporum
corporī	corporibus
corpus	corpora
corpus	corpora
corpore	corporibus

Flūmen, river.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
flūmen	flūmina
flūminis	flūminum
flūminī	flūminibus
flūmen	flūmina
flūmen	flūmina
flūmine	flūminibus

Īnsigne, badge.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
īnsigne	īnsignia
īnsignis	īnsignum
īnsignī	īnsignibus
īnsigne	īnsignia
īnsigne	īnsignia
īnsignī	īnsignibus

459. Irregular nouns of the third declension.

Milia, thousands. Vis, force, vigor. Iter, march, journey.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mille	mīlia	vīs	vīrēs	iter	itinera
indeclinable	mīlium	vīs	vīrium	itineris	itinерum
adjective	mīlibus	—	vīribus	itinerī	itineribus
	mīlia	vim	vīrēs	iter	itinera
	mīlia	—	vīrēs	iter	itinera
	mīlibus	vī	vīribus	itinere	itineribus

460. Genitive plural in *um* and *ium*, third declension.

Vowel stems in *i* have *ium*.

Monosyllabic mute stems with the characteristic preceded by a *consonant* have *ium*: *mōns*, *montium*, *urbs*, *urbium*.

Monosyllabic mute stems with characteristics preceded by a *long vowel* have *um*: *lēx*, *lēgis*, *lēgum*.

Monosyllabic mute stems with the characteristic preceded by a *short vowel* have *um*: *dux*, *ducis*, *ducum*.

Polysyllabic stems in *nt* and *rt* often have *ium*: *cohors*, *cohortis*, *cohortium*.

461. Fourth declension.—Nouns in *us* are *masculine*, a few *feminine*; those in *ū*, *neuter*. The stem ends in *u*.

Manus, hand, band.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>manus</i>	<i>manūs</i>
<i>manūs</i>	<i>manuum</i>
<i>manuī (ū)</i>	<i>manibus</i>
<i>manum</i>	<i>manūs</i>
<i>manus</i>	<i>manūs</i>
<i>manū</i>	<i>manibus</i>

Cornū, horn, wing.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>cornūs</i>	<i>cornuum</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>

462. Fifth declension.—Nouns are *feminine*, except *diēs*, *day*, which is masculine or feminine in the singular and masculine in the plural. The stem ends in *ē*.

Diēs, day.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
<i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>
<i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>
<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>
<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>

Rēs, thing.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

PRONOUNS.

463 Personal pronoun, first person.

Ego, I.	Nōs, we.
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> ego	nōs
<i>Gen.</i> meī	{ nostrum { nostrī
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	nōbīs
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nōbīs

464. Demonstrative pronouns.

Is, ea, id, he, this, that, etc.; sometimes used as the personal pronoun, third person.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> is, ea, id	eī (iī), eae, ea
<i>Gen.</i> ēius	eōrum, ēārum, eōrum
<i>Dat.</i> eī	eīs (iīs)
<i>Acc.</i> eum, eam, id	eōs, eās, ea
<i>Abl.</i> eō, eā, eō	eīs (iīs)

Hic, this (near the speaker).

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> hīc, haec, hōc	hī, hae, haec
<i>Gen.</i> hūius	hōrum, hārum, hōrum
<i>Dat.</i> huic	hīs
<i>Acc.</i> hunc, hanc, hōc	hōs, hās, haec
<i>Abl.</i> hōc, hāc, hōc	hīs

Ille, that (remote from the speaker).

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> ille, illa, illud	illī, illae, illa
<i>Gen.</i> illīus	illōrum, illārum, illōrum
<i>Dat.</i> illī	illīs
<i>Acc.</i> illum, illam, illud	illōs, illās, illa
<i>Abl.</i> illō, illā, illō	illīs

Idem, the same.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	īdem,	eadem,	idem
<i>Gen.</i>		ēiusdem	
<i>Dat.</i>		eīdem	
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem,	eandem,	idem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	eidem (iīdem),	eaedem,	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>		eīsdem (iīsdem)	
<i>Acc.</i>	eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>		eīsdem (iīsdem)	

Ipse, he, self (with intensive force).

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>		ipsīus		ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		ipsī			ipsīs	
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum	ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō		ipsis	

465. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite pronouns.**Relative quī, quae, quod, who, which, that.**

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	quī,	quae,	quod	quī,	quae,	quae
<i>Gen.</i>		cūius		quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		cui			quibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	quem,	quam,	quod	quōs,	quās,	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō,	quā,	quō		quibus	

Interrogative and Indefinite quis (quī), *who?*—*any one.*

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī),¹	quae,	quid (quod)
<i>Gen.</i>		cūius	
<i>Dat.</i>		cui	
<i>Acc.</i>	quem,	quam,	quid (quod)
<i>Abl.</i>	quō,	quā,	quō

The plural is the same as that of the relative.

¹ quis is a substantive, *who?* quī is an adjective, *what, which?*

466. Adjectives.—First and second declensions.

Altus, high, tall.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
altus,	-a,	-um	altī,	-ae,	-a
altī,	-ae,	-ī	altōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum
altō,	-ae,	-ō	altīs,	-īs,	-īs
altum,	-am,	-um	altōs,	-ās,	-a
alte,	-a,	-um	altī,	-ae,	-a
altō,	-ā,	-ō	altīs,	-īs,	-īs

Crēber, frequent.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
crēber,	-bra,	-brum	crēbrī,	-brae,	-bra
crēbrī,	-brae,	-brī	crēbrōrum,	-brārum,	-brōrum
crēbrō,	-brae,	-brō	crēbrīs,	-brīs,	-brīs
crēbrum,	-bram,	-brum	crēbrōs,	-brās,	-bra
crēber,	-bra,	-brum	crēbrī,	-brae,	-bra
crēbrō,	-brā,	-brō	crēbrīs,	-brīs,	-brīs

467. Adjectives continued.—Third declension.

Duplex, double—adjective of one ending.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
duplex,	duplex,	duplex	duplicēs,	duplicēs,	duplicia
duplicis			duplicium		
duplicī			duplicibus		
du ^{plicem} ,	-cem,	duplex	duplicēs (-īs),	-cēs (-īs),	-cia
duplex			duplicēs,	duplicēs,	duplicia
duplicī			duplicibus		

Fortis, brave—adjective of two endings.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
fortis,	-tis,	-te	fortēs,	fortēs,	fortia
fortis			fortium		
fortī			fortibus		
fortem,	-tem,	-te	fortēs (-īs),	fortēs (-īs),	fortia
fortis,	-tis,	-te	fortēs,	fortēs,	fortia
fortī			fortibus		

Equester, *of cavalry*—adjective of *three endings*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
equester,	-tris,	-tre	equestrēs,	-trēs,
equestris			equestrium	-tria
equestri			equestribus	
equestrem,	-trem,	-tre	equestrēs (-īs),	-trēs (-īs),
equester,	-tris,	-tre	equestrēs,	-trēs,
equestri			equestribus	-tria

Pūgnāns (present participle), declined like an *adjective* of the *third declension*, with *one ending* in the nominative singular.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
pūgnāns, pūgnāns, pūgnāns	pūgnantēs,	-tēs,	-tia	
pūgnantis	pūgnantium			
pūgnantī	pūgnantibus			
pūgnantem, -tem,	pūgnāns	pūgnantēs (-īs),	-tēs (-īs),	-tia
pūgnāns		pūgnantēs,	-tēs,	-tia
pūgnante (-ī)		pūgnantibus		

Altior, *taller*—comparative of *altus*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
altior,	-iōr,	-ius	altiōrēs, -ōrēs,	-ōra
altiōris			altiōrum	
altiōrī			altiōribus	
altiōrem,	-ōrem,	altius	altiōrēs, -ōrēs,	-ōra
altior,	-iōr	-ius	altiōrēs, -ōrēs,	-ōra
altiōre (-ī)			altiōribus	

Adjectives of the third declension, parasyllabic and imparasyllabic, such as **duplex**, **fortis**, **equester**, etc., have **ī** in the *ablative singular*, **ia** in the *nominative plural neuter*, and **īs** or **ēs** in the *accusative plural masculine and feminine*.

Note carefully the corresponding endings of these cases in the present participle (**pūgnāns**), and the comparative of the adjective (**altior**).

468. Numeral adjectives.

Ūnus,¹ one. Duo, two. Trēs, three.

<i>Nom.</i> ūnus, -a, -um	duo,	duae, duo	trēs, trēs, tria
<i>Gen.</i> ūnīus	duōrum,	-ārum, -ōrum	trium
<i>Dat.</i> ūnī	duōbus,	-ābus, -ōbus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i> ūnum, -am, -um	duōs (duo), -ās,	-o	trēs, trēs, tria
<i>Abl.</i> ūnō, -ā, -ō	duōbus,	-ābus, -ōbus	tribus

The numeral adjectives 4–100 are indeclinable; hundreds are declined like the *plural* of *altus*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

469. Regular adjectives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altus, tall	altior, -iор, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
certus, certain	certior, -iор, -ius	certissimus, -a, -um
dēnsus, dense	dēnsior, -iор, -ius	dēnsissimus, -a, -um
inīquus, unfair	inīquior, -iор, -ius	inīquissimus, -a, -um
parātus, ready	parātior, -iор, -ius	parātissimus, -a, -um
tardus, slow	tardior, -iор, -ius	tardissimus, -a, -um
tūtus, safe	tūtior, -iор, -ius	tūtissimus, -a, -um
fortis, brave	fortior, -iор, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
gravis, severe	gravior, -iор, -ius	gravissimus, -a, -um
potēns, powerful	potentior, -iор, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um
amāns, loving	amantior, -iор, -ius	amantissimus, -a, -um

470. Adjectives ending in *er*.—These add *rimus*, -a, -um to the *nominative singular masculine* of the positive.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
ācer, sharp	ācrior, -iор, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
asper, rough	asperior, -iор, -ius	asperrimus, -a, -um
celer, swift	celerior, -iор, -ius	celerrimus, -a, -um
miser, wretched	miserior, -iор, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, beautiful	pulchrior, -iор, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um

¹ The voc. sing. mas. ūne is found but rarely.

471. Adjectives ending in *ilis*.—Six adjectives in *ilis* add the superlative ending *limus* to the *stem*, stripped of its final vowel, viz.: *facilis*, *easy*; *difficilis*, *difficult*; *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*; *gracilis*, *slender*; *humilis*, *low*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>facilis</i>	<i>faciliōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>facillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>difficilis</i>	<i>difficiliōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>difficillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>similis</i>	<i>similiōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>simillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>dissimilis</i>	<i>dissimiliōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>dissimillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>gracilis</i>	<i>graciōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>gracillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>humilis</i>	<i>humiliōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>humillimus</i> , -a, -um

472. Irregular adjectives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>bonus</i> , <i>good</i>	<i>melior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>optimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>malūs</i> , <i>bad</i>	<i>pēior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>pessimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>māgnus</i> , <i>great</i>	<i>māior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>māximus</i> , -a, -um
<i>multus</i> , <i>much</i>	<i>no mas. or fem., plūs</i>	<i>plūrimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>parvus</i> , <i>small</i>	<i>minor</i> , -or, -us	<i>minimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>īferus</i> , <i>low</i>	<i>īferior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>īfimus</i> or <i>īmus</i>
<i>superus</i> , <i>upper</i>	<i>superior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>suprēmus</i> or <i>summus</i>
<i>novus</i> , <i>new</i>	<i>no comparative</i>	<i>novissimus</i> , -a, -um

Most adjectives ending in *us* preceded by a vowel, except those ending in *quus*, have no terminational comparison, and are compared by prefixing *magis*, *more*, and *māximē*, *most*; as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>idōneus</i> , <i>suitable</i>	<i>magis idōneus</i>	<i>māximē idōneus</i>

Adjectives ending in *quus* are regular; as,
antīquus, *ancient* *antīquior* *antīquissimus*

See also *inīquus*, (469).

473. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
āriter, <i>fiercely</i>	ārius	āerrimē
audācter, <i>boldly</i>	audācius	audācissimē
celeriter, <i>quickly</i>	celerius	celerrimē
dīligerter, <i>promptly</i>	dīlignantius	dīligrantissimē
diū, <i>a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
fortiter, <i>bravely</i>	fortius	fortissimē
longē, <i>far</i>	longius	longissimē
māgnū, <i>greatly</i>	magis	māximē
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimū
parvum, <i>a little, slightly</i>	minus	minimē
prope, <i>nearly</i>	propius	proximē

1. The accusatives of adjectives and pronouns are sometimes used as adverbs; as, multum, multa, much; facile, easily; aliās, otherwise.

2. Some adverbs were originally ablatives; as, vērō, in truth, but, however; forte, by chance; iūre, rightly.

3. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, upon which they depend for comparison. Adjectives of the first and second declensions form the adverbs in ē, ḍ, um; as, longus, longē; multus, multō, and multum. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverbs in ter; as, audāx, audāc-ter; fortis, fortī-ter; diligens, dīligen-ter.

4. Some adverbs are formed by the union of prepositions with case forms; as, inter-eā, meanwhile; post-eā, afterwards; paulis-per, for a little while.

5. The comparative of the adverb is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; the superlative of the adverb is formed by changing the ending us of the superlative of the adjective to ē.

THE LATIN VERB. FIRST CONJUGATION.

474. Active voice.—Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, *to love.*

Present indicative.

amō
amās
amat
amāmus
amātis
amant

Imperfect indicative.

I was loving, loved.

amābam
amābās
amābat
amābāmus
amābātis
amābant

Future indicative.

I shall love.

amābō
amābis
amābit
amābimus
amābitis
amābunt

Perfect indicative.

I have loved, loved, did love.

amāvī
amāvistī
amāvit
amāvimus
amāvistis
amāvērunt (-ēre)

Pluperfect indicative

I had loved.
amāveram
amāverās
amāverat
amāverāmus
amāverātis
amāverant

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have loved.
amāverō
amāveris
amāverit
amāverimus
amāveritis
amāverint

Present subjunctive.

I may love.
amem
amēs
amet
amēmus
amētis
ament

Imperfect subjunctive.

I might love.
amārem
amārēs
amāret
amārēmus
amārētis
amārent

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have loved.*

amāverim
amāveris
amāverit
amāverimus
amāveritis
amāverint

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have loved.*

amāvissem
amāvissēs
amāvisset
amāvissēmus
amāvissētis
amāvissent

Imperative.

amā, love (thou)
amātō, thou shalt love
amātō, he shall love

amāte, love (ye)
amātōte, ye shall love
amantō, they shall love

Participle.*Present. amāns, loving**Future. amātūrus, -a, -um, being about to love***Infinitive.***Present. amāre, to love**Perfect. amāuisse, to have loved**Future. amātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to love***Gerund.***Gen. amandī, of loving**Dat. amandō, to or for loving**Acc. ad amandum, for loving**Abl. amandō, by loving***Supine.***amātūm, to love**amātū, to love***475. Passive voice.—Amor, amārī, amātus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) loved.*

amor

amāris (-re)

amātur

amāmur

amāminī

amantur

Imperfect indicative.*I was (being) loved.*

amābar

amābāris (-re)

amābātur

amābāmur

amābāminī

amābāntur

Future indicative.*I shall be loved.*

amābor

amāberis (-re)

amābitur

amābimur

amābiminī

amābuntur

Present subjunctive.*I may be loved.*

amer

amēris (-re)

amētur

amēmur

amēminī

amentur

Perfect indicative.*I have been loved, was loved.*

amātus, -a, -um sum

es

est

amātī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

Imperfect subjunctive.*I might be loved.*

amārer

amārēris (-re)

amārētur

amārēmur

amārēminī

amārentur

Pluperfect indicative.*I had been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um eram

erās

erat

amātī, -ae, -a erāmus

erātis

erant

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um sim

sīs

sit

amātī, -ae, -a sīmus

sītis

sint

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um erō

eris

erit

amātī, -ae, -a erimus

eritis

erunt

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um essem

essēs

esset

amātī, -ae, -a essēmus

essētis

essent

Imperative.

amāre, *be thou loved*
amātor, *thou shalt be loved*
amātor, *he shall be loved*

amāminī, *be ye loved*
amantor, *they shall be loved*

Present infinitive.

amārī, *to be loved*

Perfect infinitive.

amātum, -am, -um *esse*, *to have been loved*

Future infinitive.

amātum irī *to be about to be loved*

Perfect participle.

amātus, -a, -um, *having been loved*

Gerundive.

amandus, -a, -um, *worthy to be loved*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

**476. Active voice.—Moneō, monēre, monui, monitum,
to advise.**

Present indicative.

I advise, do advise, am advising.

Imperfect indicative.

I was advising, advised.

moneō

monēbam

monēs

monēbās

monet

monēbat

monēmus

monēbāmus

monētis

monēbātis

monent

monēbānt

Future indicative.*I shall advise.*

monēbō
monēbis
monēbit
monēbimus
monēbitis
monēbunt

Perfect indicative.*I have advised, advised, did advise.*

monuī
monuistī
monuit
monuimus
monuistis
monuērunt (-ēre)

Pluperfect indicative.*I had advised.*

monueram
monuerās
monuerat
monuerāmus
monuerātis
monuerant

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have advised.*

monuerō
monueris
monuerit
monuerimus
monueritis
monuerint

Present subjunctive.

I may advise.
moneam
moneās
moneat
moneāmus
moneātis
moneant

Imperfect subjunctive.*I might advise.*

monērem
monērēs
monēret
monērēmus
monērētis
monērent

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have advised.*

monuerim
monueris
monuerit
monuerimus
monueritis
monuerint

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have advised.*

monuissem
monuissēs
monuisset
monuissēmus
monuissētis
monuissent

Imperative.monē, advise (*thou*)monēte, advise (*ye*)monētō, *thou shalt advise*monētōte, *ye shall advise*monētō, *he shall advise*monentō, *they shall advise***Participle.***Present.* monēns, *advising**Future.* monitūrus, -a, -um, *being about to advise***Infinitive.***Present.* monēre, *to advise**Perfect.* monuisse, *to have advised**Future.* monitūrum, -am, -um esse, *to be about to advise***Gerund.**monendī, *of advising*monendō, *to or for advising*ad monendum, *for advising*monendō, *by advising***Supine.**monitum, *to advise*monitū, *to advise***477. Passive voice.—Moneor, monērī, monitus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) advised.***Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) advised.*

moneor

monēbar

monēris (-re)

monēbāris (-re)

monētur

monēbātur

monēmur

monēbāmur

monēminī

monēbāminī

monentur

monēbāntur

Future indicative.*I shall be advised.*

monēbor

monēberis (-re)

monēbitur

monēbimur

monēbiminī

monēbuntur

Present subjunctive.*I may be advised.*

monear

moneāris (-re)

moneātur

moneāmur

moneāminī

moneantur

Perfect indicative.*I have been advised, was advised.*

monitus, -a, -um sum

es

est

monitī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

monērer

monērēris (-re)

monērētur

monērēmur

monērēminī

monērentur

Pluperfect indicative.*I had been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um eram

erās

erat

monitī, -ae, -a erāmus

erātis

erant

Perfect subjunctive.*I might have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um sim

sīs

sit

monitī, -ae, -a sīmus

sītis

sint

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um erō

eris

erit

monitī, -ae, -a erimus

eritis

erunt

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um essem

essēs

esset

monitī, -ae, -a essēmus

essētis

essent

Imperative.

<i>monēre</i> , <i>be thou advised</i>	<i>monēminī</i> , <i>be ye advised</i>
<i>monētor</i> , <i>thou shalt be advised</i>	
<i>monētor</i> , <i>he shall be advised</i>	<i>monentor</i> , <i>they shall be advised</i>

Present infinitive.

monērī, *to be advised*

Perfect infinitive.

monitum, -am, -um esse, *to have been advised*

Future infinitive.

monitum irī, *to be about to be advised*

Perfect participle.

monitus, -a, -um, *having been advised*

Gerundive.

monendus, -a, -um, *worthy to be advised*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

478. Active voice.—Pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, to place.

Present indicative.

I place, do place, am placing.

Imperfect indicative.

I was placing, placed.

<i>pōnō</i>	<i>pōnēbam</i>
<i>pōnis</i>	<i>pōnēbās</i>
<i>pōnit</i>	<i>pōnēbat</i>
<i>pōnimus</i>	<i>pōnēbāmus</i>
<i>pōnitis</i>	<i>pōnēbātis</i>
<i>pōnunt</i>	<i>pōnēbant</i>

Future indicative.

I shall place.

pōnam
pōnēs
pōnet
pōnēmus
pōnētis
pōnent

Present subjunctive.

I may place.

pōnam
pōnās
pōnat
pōnāmus
pōnātis
pōnant

Perfect indicative.

I have placed, placed, did place.

posuī
posuistī
posuit
posuimus
posuistis
posuērunt (-ēre)

Imperfect subjunctive.

I might place.

pōnerem
pōnerēs
pōneret
pōnerēmus
pōnerētis
pōnerent

Pluperfect indicative.

I had placed.

posueram
posuerās
posuerat
posuerāmus
posuerātis
posuerant

Perfect subjunctive.

I may have placed.

posuerim
posueris
posuerit
posuerimus
posueritis
posuerint

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have placed.

posuerō
posueris
posuerit
posuerimus
posueritis
posuerint

Pluperfect subjunctive.

I might have placed.

posuissem
posuissēs
posuisset
posuissēmus
posuissētis
posuissent

Imperative.

pōne , place (<i>thou</i>)	pōnite , place (<i>ye</i>)
pōnitō , thou shalt place	pōnitōte , ye shall place
pōnitō , he shall place	pōnuntō , they shall place

Participle.*Present.* **pōnēns**, placing*Future.* **positūrus**, -a, -um, being about to place**Infinitive.***Present.* **pōnere**, to place*Perfect.* **posuisse**, to have placed*Future.* **positūrum**, -am, -um esse, to be about to place**Gerund.**

pōnendī , of placing
pōnendō , to or for placing
ad pōnendum , for placing
pōnendō , by placing

Supine.

positum , to place	positū , to place
---------------------------	--------------------------

479. Passive voice.—Pōnor, pōni, positus sum.**Present indicative.***I am (being) placed.*

pōnor
pōneris (-re)
pōnitur
pōnimur
pōniminī
pōnuntur

Imperfect indicative.*I was (being) placed.*

pōnēbar
pōnēbāris (-re)
pōnēbātur
pōnēbāmūr
pōnēbāmini
pōnēbāntur

Future indicative.

I shall be placed.

pōnar

pōnēris (-re)

pōnētur

pōnēmur

pōnēminī

pōnentur

Present subjunctive.

I may be placed.

pōnar

pōnāris (-re)

pōnātur

pōnāmur

pōnāminī

pōnantur

Perfect indicative.

I have been placed, was placed.

positus, -a, -um sum

es

est

positī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

Imperfect subjunctive.

I might be placed.

pōnerer

pōnerēris (-re)

pōnerētur

pōnerēmur

pōnerēminī

pōnerentur

Pluperfect indicative.

I had been placed.

positus, -a, -um eram

erās

erat

positī, -ae, -a erāmus

erātis

erant

Perfect subjunctive.

I may have been placed.

positus, -a, -um sim

sīs

sit

positī, -ae, -a sīmus

sītis

sint

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have been placed.

positus, -a, -um erō

eris

erit

positī, -ae, -a erimus

eritis

erunt

Pluperfect subjunctive.

I might have been placed.

positus, -a, -um essem

essēs

esset

positī, -ae, -a essēmus

essētis

essent

Imperative.

pōnere, *be thou placed* **pōniminī**, *be ye placed*

pōnitor, *thou shalt be placed*

pōnitor, *he shall be placed*

pōnuntor, *they shall be placed*

Infinitive.

Present. **pōnī**, *to be placed*

Perfect. **positum**, -am, -um **esse**, *to have been placed*

Future. **positum irī**, *to be about to be placed*

Perfect participle.

positus, -a, -um, *having been placed*

Gerundive.

pōnendus, -a, -um, *worthy to be placed*

THIRD CONJUGATION. THE 'IŌ' VERB.

480. Active voice.—**Capiō**, *capere*, **cēpī**, *captum*, *to take*.**Present indicative.**

I take, do take, am taking.

capiō

capis

capit

capimus

capitis

capiunt

Future indicative.

I shall take.

capiam

capiēs

[etc., regular]

Perfect indicative.

I have taken, did take, took.

cēpī

cēpistī

[etc., regular]

Imperfect indicative.

I was taking, took.

capiēbam

capiēbās

[etc., regular]

Pluperfect indicative.

I had taken.

cēperam

cēperās

[etc., regular]

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have taken.

cēperō
cēperis
[etc., regular]

Present subjunctive.

I may take.

capiam
capiās
[etc., regular]

Imperfect subjunctive.

I might take.

caperem
caperēs
[etc., regular]

Perfect subjunctive.

I may have taken.
cēperim
cēperis
[etc., regular]

Pluperfect subjunctive.

I might have taken.
cēpissem
cēpisſēs
[etc., regular]

Imperative.

cape, take (*thou*)
capitō, thou shalt take
capitō, he shall take
capite, take (*ye*)
capitōte, ye shall take
capiuntō, they shall take

Participle.

Present. capiēns, taking

Future. captūrus, -a, -um, being about to take

Infinitive.

Present. capere, to take

Perfect. cēpisſe, to have taken

Future. captūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to take

Gerund.

capiendī, of taking
capiendō, to or for taking
ad capiendum, for taking
capiendō, by taking

Supine.

captum, to take captū, to take

481. Passive voice.—Capior, capi, captus sum.**Present indicative.***I am (being) taken.*

capior

caperis (-re)

capitur

capimur

capimini

capiuntur

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have been taken.*

captus, -a, -um erō

“ “ “ eris

[etc., regular]

Imperfect indicative.*I was (being) taken.*

capiēbar

capiēbāris (-re)

[etc., regular]

Future indicative.*I shall be taken.*

capiar

capiēris (-re)

[etc., regular]

Perfect indicative.*I have been taken, was taken.*

captus, -a, -um sum

“ “ “ es

[etc., regular]

Present subjunctive.*I may be taken.*

capiar

capiāris (-re)

[etc., regular]

Imperfect subjunctive.*I might be taken.*

caperer

caperēris (-re)

[etc., regular]

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have been taken.*

captus, -a, -um sim

“ “ “ sis

[etc., regular]

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have been taken.*

captus, -a, -um essem

“ “ “ essēs

[etc., regular]

Imperative.capere, *be thou taken*capitor, *thou shalt be taken*capitor, *he shall be taken*capimini, *be ye taken*capiuntor, *they shall be taken***Pluperfect indicative.***I had been taken.*

captus, -a, -um eram

“ “ “ erās

[etc., regular]

Infinitive.

Present. capī, *to be taken*

Perfect. captum, -am, -um esse, *to have been taken*

Future. captum īrī, *to be about to be taken*

Perfect participle.

captus, -a, -um, *having been taken*

Gerundive.

capiendus, -a, -um, *worthy to be taken*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

482. Active voice.—Mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum,
to fortify.

Present indicative.

I fortify, do fortify, am fortifying.

mūniō
mūnīs
mūnit
mūnīmus
mūnītis
mūniunt

Future indicative.

I shall fortify.

mūniām
mūniēs
mūniēt
mūniēmus
mūniētis
mūniēnt

Imperfect indicative.

I was fortifying, fortified.

mūniēbam
mūniēbās
mūniēbat
mūniēbāmus
mūniēbātis
mūniēbānt

Perfect indicative.

I have fortified, did fortify, fortified.

mūnīvī
mūnīvīstī
mūnīvit
mūnīvīmus
mūnīvīstis
mūnīvīrunt (-ēre)

Pluperfect indicative.*I had fortified.*

mūnīveram

mūnīverās

mūnīverat

mūnīverāmus

mūnīverātis

mūnīverant

Imperfect subjunctive.*I might fortify.*

mūnīrem

mūnīrēs

mūnīret

mūnīrēmus

mūnīrētis

mūnīrent

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have fortified.*

mūnīverō

mūnīveris

mūnīverit

mūnīverimus

mūnīveritis

mūnīverint

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have fortified.*

mūnīverim

mūnīveris

mūnīverit

mūnīverimus

mūnīveritis

mūnīverint

Present subjunctive.*I may fortify.*

mūniām

mūniās

mūniāt

mūniāmus

mūniātis

mūniānt

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have fortified.*

mūnīvissem

mūnīvissēs

mūnīvisset

mūnīvissēmus

mūnīvissētis

mūnīvissent

Imperative.mūnī, *fortify (thou)*mūnīte, *fortify (ye)*mūnītō, *thou shalt fortify*mūnītōte, *ye shall fortify*mūnītō, *he shall fortify*mūniuntō, *they shall fortify***Participle.***Present.* mūniēns, *fortifying**Future.* mūnītūrus, -a, -um, *being about to fortify*

Infinitive.

Present. mūnīre, *to fortify*

Perfect. mūnīvisse, *to have fortified*

Future. mūnītūrum, -am, -um esse, *to be about to fortify*

Gerund.

mūniendī, *of fortifying*

mūniendō, *to or for fortifying*

ad mūniendum, *for fortifying*

mūniendō, *by fortifying*

Supine.

mūnītūm, *to fortify*

mūnītū, *to fortify*

483. Passive voice.—Mūnior, mūnīrī, mūnītūs sum.

Present indicative.

I am (being) fortified.

mūnior

mūnīris (-re)

mūnītūr

mūnītūr

mūnīminī

mūniuntur

Future indicative.

I shall be fortified.

mūniar

mūniēris (-re)

mūniētūr

mūniētūr

mūniēminī

mūniuentur

Imperfect indicative.

I was (being) fortified.

mūniēbar

mūniēbāris (-re)

mūniēbātūr

mūniēbātūr

mūniēbāminī

mūniēbāntur

Perfect indicative.

I have been, was fortified.

mūnītūs, -a, -um sum

es

est

mūnītī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

Pluperfect indicative.*I had been fortified.*

mūnītus, -a, -um	erām
	erās
	erat
mūnītī, -ae, -a	erāmus
	erātis
	erant

Imperfect subjunctive.*I might be fortified.*

mūnīrer
mūnīrēris (-re)
mūnīrētur
mūnīrēmur
mūnīrēminī
mūnīrentur

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have been fortified.*

mūnītus, -a, -um	erō
	eris
	erit
mūnītī, -ae, -a	erimus
	eritis
	erunt

Present subjunctive.*I may be fortified.*

mūniar
mūniāris (-re)
mūniātūr
mūniāmur
mūniāminī
mūniāntur

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have been fortified.*

mūnītus, -a, -um	sīm
	sīs
	sit
mūnītī, -ae, -a	sīmus
	sītis
	sint

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have been fortified.*

mūnītus -a, -um	essem
	essēs
	esset
mūnītī, -ae, -a	essēmus
	essētis
	essent

Imperative.

mūnīre, be thou fortified
mūnītor, thou shalt be fortified
mūnītor, he shall be fortified
mūnīminī, be ye fortified
mūniuntor, they shall be fortified

Infinitive.*Present.* mūnīrī, to be fortified*Perfect.* mūnītum, -am, -um esse, to have been fortified*Future.* mūnītum īrī, to be about to be fortified

Perfect participle.

mūnītus, -a, -um, having been fortified

Gerundive.

mūniendus, -a, -um, worthy to be fortified

IRREGULAR VERBS.

484. *Sum, esse, fui, to be.*

Present indicative.

I am.

sum

es

est

sumus

estis

sunt

Perfect indicative.

I have been, was.

fui

fuistī

fuit

fuimus

fuistis

fuērunt (-ēre)

Imperfect indicative.

I was

eram

erās

erat

erāmus

erātis

erant

Pluperfect indicative.

I had been.

fueram

fuerās

fuerat

fuerāmus

fuerātis

fuerant

Future indicative.

I shall be.

erō

eris

erit

erimus

eritis

erunt

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have been.

fuerō

fueris

fuerit

fuerimus

fueritis

fuerint

Present subjunctive.*I may be.*

sim
sīs
sit
sīmus
sītis
sint

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have been.*

fuerim
fueris
fuerit
fuerimus
fueritis
fuerint

Imperfect subjunctive.*I might be.*

essem
essēs
esset
essēmus
essētis
essent

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have been.*

fuissem
fuissēs
fuisset
fuissēmus
fuissētis
fuisserent

Imperative.*es, be thou**este, be ye**estō, thou shalt be**estōte, ye shall be**estō, he shall be**suntō, they shall be***Participle.***Future. futūrus, -a, -um, being about to be***Infinitive.***Present. esse, to be**Perfect. fuisse, to have been**Future. futūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to be***485. Possum, posse, potuī, to be able.****Present indicative.***I am able.*

possum
potes
potest

possumus
potestis
possunt

Imperfect indicative.*I was able.*

poteram
poterās
 [etc., regular]

Future indicative.*I shall be able.*

poterō
poteris
 [etc., regular]

Perfect indicative.*I have been, was able.*

potuī
potuistī
 [etc., regular]

Pluperfect indicative.*I had been able.*

potueram
potuerās
 [etc., regular]

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have been able.*

potuerō
potueris
 [etc., regular]

Present subjunctive.*I may be able.*

possim
possīs
possit
possīmus
possītis
possint

Imperfect subjunctive.*I might be able.*

possem
possēs
posset
possēmus
possētis
possent

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have been able.*

potuerim
potueris
 [etc., regular]

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have been able.*

potuissem.
potuissēs
 [etc., regular]

Infinitive.*Present. posse, to be able**Perfect. potuisse, to have been able*

486. **Eō, īre, īvī, itum, to go.****Present indicative.***I go, am going, do go.*

eō
īs
it
īmus
ītis
eunt

Pluperfect indicative.

īveram
īverās
īverat
īverāmus
īverātis
īverant

Imperfect indicative.*I was going, went.*

ībam
ībās
ībat
ībāmus
ībātis
ībant

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have gone.*

īverō
īveris
īverit
īverimus
īveritis
īverint

Future indicative.*I shall go.*

ībō
ībis
ībit
ībimus
ībitis
ībunt

Present subjunctive.

eam
eās
eat
eāmus
eātis
eant

Perfect indicative.*I have gone, went.*

īvī
īvistī
īvit
īvimus
īvistis
īvērunt (-ēre)

Imperfect subjunctive.

īrem
īrēs
īret
īrēmus
īrētis
īrent

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have gone.*

īverim
īveris
īverit
īverimus
īveritis
īverint

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have gone.*

īvissem
īvissēs
īvisset
īvissēmus
īvissētis
īvissent

Imperative.

ī, go (<i>thou</i>)	īte, go (<i>ye</i>)
ītō, thou shalt go	ītōte, ye shall go
ītō, he shall go	euntō, they shall go

Participle.*Present.* iēns (gen. euntis), *going**Future.* itūrus, -a, -um, *being about to go***Infinitive.***Present.* īre, *to go**Perfect.* īvisse, *to have gone**Future.* itūrum, -am, -um esse, *to be about to go***Gerund.**eundi, *of going*eundō, *to or for going*ad eundum, *for going*eundō, *by going***Supine.**itum, *to go*itū, *to go***487. Volō, velle, voluī, to wish.****Present indicative.***I wish, am wishing, do wish.*

volō

vīs

vult

volumus

vultis

volunt

Imperfect indicative.*I was wishing, wished.*

volēbam

volēbās

volēbat

volēbāmus

volēbātis

volēbant

Future indicative.*I shall wish.*

volam
volēs
volet
volēmus
volētis
volent

Perfect indicative.*I have wished, wished.*

voluī
voluistī
voluit
voluimus
voluistis
voluērunt (-ēre)

Pluperfect indicative.*I had wished.*

volueram
voluerās
voluerat
voluerāmus
voluerātis
voluerant

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have wished.*

voluerō
volueris
voluerit
voluerimus
volueritis
voluerint

Present subjunctive.*I may wish.*

velim
velis
velit
velimus
velitis
velint

Imperfect subjunctive.*I might wish.*

vellem
vellēs
vellet
vellēmus
vellētis
vellent

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have wished.*

voluerim
volueris
voluerit
voluerimus
volueritis
voluerint

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have wished.*

voluissem
voluissēs
voluisset
voluissēmus
voluissētis
voluissent

Present participle.*volēns, wishing*

Infinitive.*Present.* **velle**, to wish*Perfect.* **voluisse**, to have wished**488. Nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, to be unwilling.****Present indicative.***I am unwilling.***nōlō****nōn vīs****nōn vult****nōlumus****nōn vultis****nōlunt****Imperfect indicative.***I was unwilling.***nōlēbam****nōlēbās**

[etc., regular]

Future indicative.*I shall be unwilling.***nōlam****nōlēs**

[etc., regular]

Perfect indicative.*I have been, was, unwilling.***nōluī****nōluitī**

[etc., regular]

Pluperfect indicative.*I had been unwilling.***nōlueram****nōluerās**

[etc., regular]

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have been unwilling.***nōluerō****nōlueris**

[etc., regular]

Present subjunctive.*I may be unwilling.***nōlim****nōlis****nōlit****nōlimus****nōlitis****nōlint****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be unwilling.***nōllem****nōllēs**

[etc., regular]

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have been unwilling.***nōluerim****nōlueris**

[etc., regular]

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have been unwilling.***nōluissem****nōluisſēs**

[etc., regular]

Imperative.

<i>nōlī</i> , <i>be (thou) unwilling</i>	<i>nōlīte</i> , <i>be (ye) unwilling</i>
<i>nōlītō</i> , <i>thou shalt be unwilling</i>	<i>nōlītōte</i> , <i>ye shall be unwilling</i>
<i>nōlītō</i> , <i>he shall be unwilling</i>	<i>nōluntō</i> , <i>they shall be unwilling</i>

Present participle.*nōlēns*, *being unwilling***Infinitive.***Present.* *nōlle*, *to be unwilling**Perfect.* *nōluisse*, *to have been unwilling***489. Mālō, mālle, mālui, to prefer.****Present indicative.***I prefer, am preferring, do prefer.*

<i>mālō</i>
<i>māvīs</i>
<i>māvult</i>
<i>mālumus</i>
<i>māvultis</i>
<i>mālunt</i>

Imperfect indicative.*I was preferring, preferred.*

<i>mālēbam</i>
<i>mālēbās</i>
[etc., regular]

Future indicative.

<i>I shall prefer.</i>
<i>mālam</i>
<i>mālēs</i>
[etc., regular]

Perfect indicative.*I have preferred, preferred.*

<i>mālui</i>
<i>māluistī</i>
[etc., regular]

Pluperfect indicative.

<i>I had preferred.</i>
<i>mālueram</i>
<i>māluerās</i>
[etc., regular]

Future-perfect indicative.

<i>I shall have preferred.</i>
<i>māluerō</i>
<i>mālueris</i>
[etc., regular]

Present subjunctive.

<i>I may prefer.</i>
<i>mālim</i>
<i>mālis</i>
<i>mālit</i>
<i>mālimus</i>
<i>mālītis</i>
<i>mālint</i>

Imperfect subjunctive.

<i>I might prefer.</i>
<i>māllem</i>
<i>māllēs</i>
<i>māllet</i>
<i>māllēmus</i>
<i>māllētis</i>
<i>māllent</i>

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have preferred.*

māluerim
mālueris
[etc., regular]

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have preferred.*

māluissem
māluissēs
[etc., regular]

Infinitive.*Present.* mālle, to prefer*Perfect.* māluisse, to have preferred**490. Active voice.—Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear.****Present indicative.***I bear, am bearing, do bear.*

ferō
fers
fert
ferimus
fertis
ferunt

Imperfect indicative.*I was bearing, bore.*

ferēbam
ferēbās
[etc., regular]

Future indicative.*I shall bear.*

feram
ferēs
[etc., regular]

Perfect indicative.*I have borne, bore.*

tulī
tulisti
[etc., regular]

Pluperfect indicative.*I had borne.*

tuleram
tulerās
[etc., regular]

Future-perfect indicative.*I shall have borne.*

tulerō
tuleris
[etc., regular]

Present subjunctive.*I may bear.*

feram
ferās
[etc., regular]

Imperfect subjunctive.*I might bear.*

ferrem
ferrēs
[etc., regular]

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have borne.*

tulerim

tuleris

[etc., regular]

Pluperfect subjunctive.*I might have borne.*

tulisse

tulissēs

[etc., regular]

Imperative.**fer**, bear (*thou*)**fertō**, thou shalt bear**fertō**, he shall bear**ferte**, bear (*ye*)**fertōte**, ye shall bear**feruntō**, they shall bear**Participle.***Present.* **ferēns**, bearing*Future.* **lātūrus**, -a, -um, being about to bear**Infinitive.***Present.* **ferre**, to bear*Perfect.* **tulisse**, to have borne*Future.* **lātūrum**, -am, -um esse, to be about to bear**Gerund.****ferendī**, of bearing, etc.**Supine.****lātum**, to bear**lātū**, to bear**491. Passive voice.—Feror, ferri, lātus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) borne.*

feror

ferris (-re)

fertur

ferimur

feriminī

feruntur

Future indicative.*I shall be borne.*

ferar

ferēris (-re)

[etc., regular]

Imperfect indicative.*I was (being) borne.*

ferēbar

ferēbāris (-re)

[etc., regular]

Perfect indicative.*I have been, was, borne.***lātus**, -a, -um sum

es

[etc.]

Pluperfect indicative.*I had been borne.*

lātus, -a, -um erām
erās
[etc.]

Imperfect subjunctive.

I might be borne.
ferrer
ferrēris (-re)
[etc., regular]

Future perfect indicative.*I shall have been borne.*

lātus, -a, -um erō
eris
[etc.]

Perfect subjunctive.

I may have been borne.
lātus, -a, -um sim
sīs
[etc.]

Present subjunctive.*I may be borne.*

ferar
ferāris (-re)
[etc., regular]

Pluperfect subjunctive.

I might have been borne.
lātus, -a, -um essem
essēs
[etc.]

Imperative.**ferre, be thou borne****ferimini, be ye borne****fertor, thou shalt be borne****feruntor, they shall be borne****fertor, he shall be borne****Infinitive.****Present.** **ferī,** *to be borne***Perfect.** **lātum, -am, -um esse,** *to have been borne***Future.** **lātum īrī,** *to be about to be borne***Perfect participle.****lātus, -a, -um,** *having been borne***Gerundive.****ferendus, -a, -um,** *worthy to be borne*

492. Active voice.—*Faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, to make.*

Present indicative.

I make, am making, do make.

faciō
facis
facit
facimus
facitis
faciunt

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have made.

fēcerō
fēceris
[etc., regular]

Imperfect indicative.

I was making, made.

faciēbam
faciēbās
[etc., regular]

Present subjunctive.

I may make.

faciām
faciās
[etc., regular]

Future indicative.

I shall make.

faciām
faciēs
[etc., regular]

Imperfect subjunctive.

I might make.

facerem
facerēs
[etc., regular]

Perfect indicative.

I have made, made.

fēcī
fēcistī
[etc., regular]

Perfect subjunctive.

I may have made.

fēcerim
fēceris
[etc., regular]

Pluperfect indicative.

I had made.

fēceram
fēcerās
[etc., regular]

Pluperfect subjunctive.

I might have made.

fēcissem
fecissēs
[etc., regular]

Imperative.

fac, *make (thou)*

facitō, *thou shalt make*

facitō, *he shall make*

facite, *make (ye)*

facitōte, *ye shall make*

faciuntō, *they shall make*

Participle.

Present. faciens, making

Future. facturus, -a, -um, being about to make

Infinitive.

Present. facere, to make

Perfect. fēcisse, to have made

Future. factūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to make

Gerund.

faciendī, of making, etc.

Supine.

factum, to make

factū, to make

493. Passive voice.—Fiō, fieri, factus sum.

Present indicative.

I am (being) made, become.

fiō

fiſ

fit

fiſimus

fiſitis

fiſunt

Pluperfect indicative.

I had been made.

factus, -a, -um eram

erās [etc.]

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have been made.

factus, -a, -um erō

eris [etc.]

Imperfect indicative.

I was (being) made, became

fiēbam

fiēbās [etc.]

Present subjunctive.

I may be made, may become.

fiām

fiās

fiāt

fiāmus

fiātis

fiānt

Future indicative.

I shall be made, shall become.

fiām

fiās [etc.]

Perfect indicative.

I have been made, was made. I might be made, might become.

factus, -a, -um sum

es [etc.]

Imperfect subjunctive.

fierem

fierēs [etc.]

Perfect subjunctive.*I may have been made.***factus, -a, -um sim****sīs [etc.]****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been made.***factus, -a, -um essem****essēs [etc.]****Imperative.****fī, be thou made****fīte, be ye made****Infinitive.****Present.** *fieri, to be made, to become***Perfect.** *factum, -am, -um esse, to have been made***Future.** *factum irī, to be about to be made***Perfect participle.****factus, -a, -um, having been made****Gerundive.****faciendus, -a, -um, worthy to be made**

DEPONENT VERBS.

494. First conjugation.—Populor, populārī, populātus sum, to plunder.

Present indicative.*I plunder, am plundering, etc.***populor****populāris (-re)****populātūr [etc.]****Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have plundered.***populātūs erō [etc.]****Present subjunctive.***I may plunder.***populer****populēris (-re)****populētūr [etc.]****Imperfect indicative.***I was plundering.***populābar [etc.]****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might plunder.***populārer [etc.]****Future indicative.***I shall plunder.***populābor [etc.]****Perfect subjunctive.***I may have plundered.***populātūs sim [etc.]****Perfect indicative.***I have plundered.***populātūs sum [etc.]****Pluperfect indicative.***I had plundered.***populātūs erām [etc.]****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have plundered.***populātūs essem [etc.]**

Imperative.*populāre, plunder (thou)**populāminī, plunder ye**populātor, thou shalt plunder**populātor, he shall plunder**populantor, they shall plunder***Infinitive.***Present. populārī, to plunder**Perfect. populātum, -am, -um esse, to have plundered***Perfect participle.***populātus, -a, -um, having plundered***Gerundive.***populandus, -a, -um, worthy to be plundered***Active forms.***Present participle. populāns, plundering**Future participle. populātūrus, -a, -um, being about to plunder**First supine. populātum, to plunder**Second supine. populātū, to plunder [plunder]**Future infinitive. populātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to**Gerund. populandī, of plundering [etc.]*

495. Second conjugation.—Vereor, verērī, veritus sum, to fear.

Present indicative.*I fear, am fearing, etc.**vereor**verēris (-re)**verētur [etc.]***Perfect indicative.***I have feared.**veritus sum [etc.]***Imperfect indicative.***I was fearing.**verēbar [etc.]***Pluperfect indicative.***I had feared.**veritus eram [etc.]***Future indicative.***I shall fear.**verēbor [etc.]***Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have feared.**veritus erō [etc.]*

Present subjunctive.*I may fear.***vereār****vereāris (-re)****vereātūr [etc.]****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might fear.***verērēr [etc.]****Perfect subjunctive.***I may have feared.***veritus sim [etc.]****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have feared.***veritus essem [etc.]****Imperative.****verēre, fear (thou)****verēminī, fear (ye)****verētor, thou shalt fear****verētor, he shall fear****verentor, they shall fear****Infinitive.***Present. verērī, to fear**Perfect. veritum, -am, -um esse, to have feared***Perfect participle.****veritus, -a, -um, having feared****Gerundive.****verendus, -a, -um, worthy to be feared****Active forms.***Present participle. verēns, fearing**Future participle. veritūrus, -a, -um, being about to fear**First supine. veritum, to fear**Second supine. veritū, to fear**Future infinitive. veritūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to fear**Gerund. verendī, of fearing, etc.***496. Third conjugation.—**Utor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *to use.***Present indicative.***I use, am using, etc.***ūtor****ūteris (-re)****ūtitur****ūtimur****ūtiminī****ūtuntur****Imperfect indicative.***I was using.***ūtēbar [etc.]****Future indicative.***I shall use.***ūtar****ūtēris (-re)****ūtētur [etc.]**

Perfect indicative.

I have used.
ūsus sum [etc.]

Pluperfect indicative.

I had used.
ūsus eram [etc.]

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have used.
ūsus erō [etc.]

Present subjunctive.

I may use.
ūtar
ūtāris (-re)
ūtātur [etc.]

Imperfect subjunctive.

I might use.
ūterer [etc.]

Perfect subjunctive.

I may have used.
ūsus sim [etc.]

Pluperfect subjunctive.

I might have used.
ūsus essem [etc.]

Imperative.

ūtere, (<i>use thou</i>)	ūtiminī, <i>use (ye)</i>
ūtitor, <i>thou shalt use</i>	
ūtitor, <i>he shall use</i>	ūtuntor, <i>they shall use</i>

Infinitive.

Present. ūtī, *to use*
Perfect. ūsum, -am, -um esse, *to have used*

Perfect participle.

ūsus, -a, -um, *having used*

Gerundive.

ūtendus, -a, -um, *worthy to be used*

Active forms.

<i>Present participle.</i>	ūtēns, <i>using</i>
<i>Future participle.</i>	ūsūrus, -a, -um, <i>being about to use</i>
<i>First supine.</i>	ūsum, <i>to use</i>
<i>Second supine.</i>	ūsū, <i>to use</i>
<i>Future infinitive.</i>	ūsūrum, -am, -um esse, <i>to be about to use</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	ūtendī, <i>of using, etc.</i>

497. Fourth conjugation.—Potior, potiri, potitus sum, to capture.

Present indicative.

I capture, am capturing, etc.

potior

potīris (-re)

potītur

potīmur

potīminī

potiuntur

Pluperfect indicative.

I had captured.

potītus eram [etc.]

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have captured.

potītus erō [etc.]

Present subjunctive.

I may capture.

potiar

potiāris (-re)

potiātūr [etc.]

Imperfect subjunctive.

I might capture.

potīrer [etc.]

Perfect subjunctive.

I may have captured.

potītus sim [etc.]

Future indicative.

I shall capture.

potiar

potiēris (-re)

potiētūr [etc.]

Perfect indicative.

I have captured.

potītus sum [etc.]

Pluperfect subjunctive.

I might have captured.

potītus essem [etc.]

Imperative.

potīre, capture (thou)

potīminī, capture (ye)

potītor, thou shalt capture

potītor, he shall capture

potiuntor, they shall capture

Infinitive.

Present. potīri, to capture

Perfect. potītum, -am, -um esse, to have captured

Perfect participle.

potītus, -a, -um, having captured

Gerundive.

potiendus, -a, -um, worthy to be captured

Active forms.

- Present participle.* potiēns, capturing
Future participle. potītūrus, -a, -um, being about to capture
First supine. potītūm, to capture
Second supine. potītū, to capture [ture]
Future infinitive. potītūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to cap-
Gerund. potiēndī, of capturing, etc.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

The *active voice* of the ‘Periphrastic’ is formed by annexing forms of *sum* to the *future active participle*; the *passive*, by annexing these forms to the *gerundive*.

498. Active voice.—Amātūrus sum, I am about to love.

Present indicative.

I am about to love.

amātūrus, -a, -um sum

es

est

amātūrī, -ae, -a sumus
estis
sunt

Imperfect indicative.

I was about to love.

amātūrus, -a, -um eram

erās [etc.]

Future indicative.

I shall be about to love.

amātūrus, -a, -um erō

eris [etc.]

Perfect indicative.

I have been, was, about to love.

amātūrus, -a, -um fuī

fuistī [etc.]

Pluperfect indicative.

I had been about to love.

amātūrus, -a, -um fueram

fuerās [etc.]

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have been about to love.

amātūrus, -a, -um fuerō

fueris [etc.]

Present subjunctive.

I may be about to love.

amātūrus, -a, -um sim

sīs [etc.]

Imperfect subjunctive.

I might be about to love.

amātūrus, -a, -um essem

essēs [etc.]

Perfect subjunctive.

I may have been about to love.
amātūrus, -a, -um fuerim

fueris [etc.]

Pluperfect subjunctive.

I might have been about to love.
amātūrus, -a, -um fuisse
fuisse [etc.]

Infinitive.

Present. amātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to love

Perfect. amātūrum, -am, -um fuisse, to have been about to love

499. Passive voice.—Amandus sum, I deserve to be loved.

Present indicative.

I am to be, ought to be, loved.

amandus, -a, -um sum

es

est

amandī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

Imperfect indicative.

*I was to be, deserved to be,
loved.*

amandus, -a, -um eram

Future indicative.

*I shall deserve to be, ought to
be, loved.*

amandus, -a, -um erō

Perfect indicative.

*I was worthy to be, have de-
served to be, loved.*

amandus, -a, -um fuī

Pluperfect indicative.

I had deserved to be loved.

amandus, -a, -um fueram

Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have deserved to be loved.

amandus, -a, -um fuerō

Present subjunctive.

I may be worthy to be loved.

amandus, -a, -um sim

Imperfect subjunctive.

I might be worthy to be loved.

amandus, -a, -um essem

Perfect subjunctive.

I may have deserved to be loved.

amandus, -a, -um fuerim

Pluperfect subjunctive.

I might have deserved to be loved.

amandus, -a, -um fuisse

Infinitive.

Present. amandum, -am, -um esse, to deserve to be loved

Perfect. amandum, -am, -um fuisse, to have deserved to be loved

QUANTITY RULES OF LATIN VOWELS AND SYLLABLES.

500. General rules of quantity.—1. A vowel before another vowel or **h** is *short*: except in the fifth declension, where **ē** follows a vowel, as **diēī**; **ī** in the genitive singular **īus**, see (286); **ī** in some forms of **fiō**, see (493).

2. Diphthongs and vowels formed by contraction are *long*: as **ae** in **fossae**, and **ō** in the penult of **cōgō** (= **con** + **agō**).

3. A syllable ending in a *short* vowel before a mute followed by **l** or **r** is *common*, i.e., long or short; as, **pātris**.

4. A vowel is *always long* before **ns**, **nf**, **gn**, and often long before **scō**, **scor** in inceptive verbs; as, **regēns**, **īferō**, **rēgnūm**, **proficīscor**.

5. Compounds retain their *long* vowels; as, **dē-dūcō**.

6. Vowels are *long* in the nominative singular ending of nouns and adjectives which *increase long* in the genitive: **vōx**, **vōcis**; **ferāx**, **ferācis**.

7. A syllable is long by *nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; long by *position* when it precedes two or more consonants or a double consonant.

501. Quantity of final syllables ending in a vowel.—In words of *more than one* syllable, final **a**, **e**, **y** are *short*, final **i**, **o**, **u** are *long*.

1. Final **a** is *short*, as **vālla**: except ablative of first declension, as **tubā**; imperative of first conjugation, as **portā**; most uninflected words, as **posteā**, **intrā**, but not so **ita**.

2. Final **e** is *short*, as **mīlite**: except ablative of fifth declension, as **spē**; imperative of second conjugation, as

dēlē; most adverbs derived from adjectives of second declension, as māximē.

3. Final i is *long*, as flūminī: except nisi, cui; final i is common in mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi.

4. Final o is *long*, as pōnō: except homo, ego, modo, octo, duo.

5. Final u is always *long*, as adventū.

502. Quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant.—

1. All final syllables ending in a *single* consonant *other than s* are *short*, as amātur, reget.

2. Of final syllables in s, as, es, os are *long*, is, us, ys are *short*.

3. Final as is *long*, as tubās, audiās.

4. Final es is *long*, as amēs, diēs: except nominative and vocative singular, third declension, where the genitive ending is -etis, -idis, -itis, as obses, miles; es (from sum) and compounds of sum, as potes.

5. Final os is *long*, as virōs.

6. Final is is *short*, as mīlitis, amātis: except dative and ablative plural, as puerīs, altīs; accusative plural, third declension, as finīs (= finēs); second person singular, present indicative active, fourth conjugation, as audīs; vīs (noun and verb from volō), fīs, sīs, velīs, nōlīs, mālīs, possīs, and īs (from eō).

7. Final us is *short*, as mūrus, amātus: except genitive singular, and nominative and accusative plural, fourth declension, as exercitūs; nominative third declension, when long u occurs in the genitive, as virtūs, virtūtis.

503. Quantity of monosyllables.—1. All monosyllables that end in a *vowel* are *long*, as ā, sī, dē, sē, etc.: except the enclitic que.

2. Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a *consonant* follow the rules given.

3. Monosyllabic nouns and adjectives have a *long* vowel in the nominative when they end in a *consonant*, as **mōs**, **sōl**, **pēs**, **pār**: but not so **vir**.

4. Monosyllabic *particles* that end in a consonant are *short*, as **cis**, **in**, **nec**, **per**, etc.: except **nōn**, **quīn**, and adverbs in **c**, as **sīc**.

504. Quantity of verb stems and endings.—1. A vowel is always *short* before final **m**, **r**, and **t**.

2. A vowel is always *short* before another vowel (except in certain forms of **fiō**), **nd**, and **nt**.

3. Final **a**, **i**, **o**, and **u** are *long*; final **e** is *short*, except in the imperative active, second person singular, in the second conjugation; as, **monē**.

4. Before final **s**, **a** and **e** are *long*; **i** and **u** are *short*, except that in the present indicative active, second person singular, in the fourth conjugation, **i** is long; as, **audīs**: see also (502), 6.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

- ā, ab, prep. + *abl.*, *from, by* ;
 chapt. 7 (last sentence), *away*.
 abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum,
 hide.
 absum, abesse, āfui, *be distant*.
 ac (before consonants only), conj.,
 and; chapt. 19 (first sentence),
 than.
 accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
 go towards, approach; chapt.
 13 (with ad + acc.); chapt. 7,
 be inspired in (with dat.).
 accidō, -cidere, -cidī, (no supine),
 happen.
 accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,
 receive, accept; chapt. 33, *suffer*.
 acclivis, -is, -e, adj. (of two ter-
 minations), *sloping upward*.
 acclivitās, -tātis, fem., *slope (up-
 ward)*.
 accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
 adjust, fit, put on.
 acervus, -i, mas., *a pile, a heap*.
 aciēs, -ēi, fem., *line of battle, an
 army*.
 āriter, adv., *sharply, desperately*.
 ad, prep. + *acc.*, *to, towards, near*;
 ad + gerundive, *for*; chapt. 1,
 ad eōs, *against them*; chapt. 31,
 according to.
 adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *make
 equal to, equal*.
- addūcō, see dūcō, *lead to, bring,
 lead (with ad + acc.)*.
 adeō, -ire, -īvī .iī, -itum, *go to*;
 chapt. 7, *reach*.
 adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum,
 throw to, hurl.
 aditus, -ūs, mas., *access, approach,
 admittance*.
 adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum,
 aid, help.
 administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
 execute, attend to.
 adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, depon.,
 rise up against, attack.
 Aduatucī, -ōrum, mas., a Belgic
 tribe living on the west bank
 of the Meuse.
 adventus, -ūs, mas., *approach,
 arrival*.
 adversus, -a, -um, adj., *opposite*;
 literally, *turned to or towards*.
 aedificium, -ī, neut., *a building*.
 aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *build*
 Aeduī, -ōrum, mas., a Gallic
 tribe living between the upper
 waters of the Saone and Loire.
 Aeduus, -a, -um, adj., *Aeduan*.
 aegrē, adv., *with difficulty, barely*.
 aequāliter, adv., *uniformly,
 evenly*.
 aestās, -tātis, fem., *summer*.
 aestuārium, -i, neut., *a sea-marsh*;

- literally, *relating to the tide or sea.*
- aetās, -tātis, fem., *age, old age.*
- afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, *bring to, carry to.*
- affinitās, -tātis, fem., *relationship (by marriage).*
- ager, agrī, mas., *a field, land (which is cultivated).*
- agger, aggeris, mas., *a mound, materials for a mound (chapt. 20).*
- aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *depon., approach, attack.*
- agmen, -minis, neut., *the line of march (the marching column).*
- agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *drive; chapt. 12, 30, bring up; 20, do; 21, carry.*
- aliās . . . aliās, adv., *at one time . . . at another.*
- aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., *another's, of others.*
- aliter, adv., *otherwise.*
- alius, alia, aliud, adj., *other, another, different; alius aliam in partem, one in one direction, another in another.*
- alter, -era, -erum, adj., *the other (of two); other, another.*
- altitūdō, -dinis, fem., *height.*
- altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall, deep.*
- Ambiānī, -ōrum, mas., *a Belgic tribe, from whose name is derived the modern Amiens.*
- amicitia, -ae, fem., *friendship.*
- amicus, -i, mas., *a friend.*
- amicus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly.*
- āmittō, see mittō, *lose, let go (away).*
- amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *increase.*
- amplius, neut. compar., used adverbially or as noun, *more.*
- Andēs, -ium, mas., *a Gallic tribe north of the Loire.*
- Andocumborius, -i, mas., *a chief man among the Remi.*
- angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, difficult; chapt. 25, in angustō, at a crisis.*
- animus, -i, mas., *mind, courage, feelings; chapt. 1, character.*
- annus, -i, mas., *a year.*
- ante, adv., *formerly; prep.+acc., before (of place and time).*
- antiquitus, adv., *in olden times.*
- apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open; chapt. 23, exposed, unprotected.*
- appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call (name); chapt. 25, address.*
- appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to draw near, approach.*
- apud, prep. + acc., *near, among.*
- arbitror, -trārī, -trātus sum, *depon., think, suppose.*
- arbor, arboris, fem., *a tree.*
- arcessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -ces-
sītum, *summon, invite.*
- arduuus, -a, -um, adj., *high, difficult (of ascent), steep.*
- ariēs, -ietis, mas., *a battering ram*
- arma, -ōrum, neut., *arms, weapons.*
- armātūra, -ae, fem., *equipment.*
- armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *arm equip.*
- ascendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēn-
sum, *climb, ascend.*
- ascēnsus, -ūs, mas., *an ascent;*

- chapt. 33, *the way up, means of ascent.*
- at**, conj., *but.*
- atque**, conj., *and also, and;* chapt. 6, *as.*
- Atrebātēs**, -um, mas., a tribe in Northeastern Gaul.
- attīngō**, -tingere, attīgi, attāctum, *touch upon, reach, border upon.*
- auctōritās**, -tatis, fem., *influence, power, authority* (not military or political).
- audācter**, adv., *boldly.*
- audeō**, audēre, ausus sum, semi-depon., *dare, venture.*
- audiō**, -ire, -īvī, -itum, *listen to;* chapt. 12, *hear; 31, hear of or about.*
- Aulerçī**, -ōrum, mas., a people of Central Gaul, consisting of several tribes.
- Aurunculēius**, -i, mas., a lieutenant of Caesar.
- aut**, conj., *or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*
- autem**, conj., *but, moreover.*
- auxilia**, -ōrum, neut., *auxiliaries* (as opposed to the regular heavy-armed Roman infantry).
- auxilium**, -i, neut., *help, aid, assistance.*
- āvertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *turn away from.*
- Axona**, -ae, fem., a river of Northern Gaul (now called Aisne) flowing into the Isara.
- Baculus**, -i, mas., a centurion in Caesar's army.
- Baleāris**, -is, -e, adj., *Balearic;* the Balearic islands, famous for their slingers, lie in the Mediterranean off the coast of Spain.
- barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., *barbarian;* plur., *the barbarians* (used of the Gauls).
- Belgae**, -ārum, mas., *the Belgians,* a warlike people in the northern part of Gaul.
- Bellovacī**, -ōrum, mas., a powerful Belgic tribe, between the Seine and the Oise.
- bellum**, -i, neut., *war.*
- Bibrax**, -actis, fem., a town of the Remi.
- Boduōgnātūs**, -i, mas., a leader of the Nervii.
- Bratuspantium**, -i, neut., a town of the Bellovaci.
- brevitās**, -tatis, fem., *shortness; with temporis, want of time.*
- Britannia**, -ae, fem., *Britain.*
- cadāver**, -eris, neut., *a dead body.*
- cadō**, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, fall, *be killed.*
- Caeroesi**, -ōrum, mas., a tribe in Northern Gaul.
- Caesar**, -aris, mas., *Caesar,* Caius Julius Caesar, conqueror of Gaul.
- calamitās**, -tatis, fem., *calamity, disaster.*
- Caletī**, -ōrum, mas., a tribe in Normandy, on the Seine.
- cālō**, -ōnis, mas., *a camp-servant, groom.*

- captīvus**, -a, -um, adj., *taken captive*; mas. as noun, *captive, prisoner*.
- caput**, *capitis*, neut., *the head*; less exactly, *person*.
- Carnutēs**, -um, mas., *a tribe in Central Gaul*.
- castellum**, -i, neut., *a redoubt, stronghold*.
- castra**, -ōrum, neut., *a camp*.
- cāsus**, -ūs, mas., *event; chapt. 21, chance; 31, misfortune*.
- causa**, -ae, fem., *a cause, a reason*; *causā, for the sake of*, used like a prep., following the genitive.
- cēdō**, *cēdere, cessī, cessum, retreat, give way*.
- celeritās**, -tātis, fem., *swiftness, quickness*.
- celeriter**, adv., *quickly, speedily*.
- cēlō**, -āre, -āvī, ātum, *conceal, hide*.
- centum**, indeclin. num. adj., *a hundred*.
- centuriō**, -ōnis, mas., *a centurion*; a subordinate officer commanding a century (a hundred men).
- certus**, -a, -um, adj., *certain*; *certiōrem (-ēs) facere, inform (with acc. + infin.)*.
- (cēterus)**, -a, -um, adj., *the rest of*; usually plur. as noun, *the rest*.
- Cimbrī**, -ōrum, mas., *a German tribe in Jutland, defeated by Marius B.C. 101*.
- circiter**, adv., *about, not far from*.
- circuitus**, -ūs, mas., *a circuit, a circumference*.
- circum**, prep. + acc., *around, about*.
- circumdō**, see **dō**, *put around; less exactly, surround*.
- circumiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *place around, throw around*.
- circummūniō**, see **mūniō**, *fortify around, fortify*.
- circumveniō**, see **veniō**, *surround, outflank*.
- cis**, prep. + acc., *on this side of*.
- cīterior**, -iōr, -iōs, adj. (comparative — two terminations), *hither, nearer*.
- citrā**, prep. + acc., *on this side of*.
- cīvitās**, -tātis, fem., *a state*.
- clāmor**, īris, mas., *a shout*.
- claudō**, *claudere, clausī, clausum, close, bring up*.
- clēmentia**, -ae, fem., *kindness, clemency*.
- coacervō**, -āre, -āvī, ātum, *pile up*.
- coepī**, *coepisse, coepitus sum, began*.
- cōgnōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *find out, ascertain*.
- cōgō**, *cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, collect, assemble, force*.
- cohors**, -hortis, fem., *a cohort (the tenth part of a legion)*.
- cohortātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *an encouraging, encouragement*.
- cohortor**, -tārī, -tātus sum, *depon., encourage, urge*.
- collis**, -is, mas., *a hill*.
- comes**, *comitis*, mas., *a comrade*.

- commeātus**, -ūs, mas., *supplies, provisions.*
- commemorō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *remind one of, state, relate.*
- committō**, see **mittō**, *join; with proelium, begin the battle.*
- commodē**, adv., *easily, readily.*
- commoveō**, see **moveō**, *alarm, disturb.*
- commūnis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *common, general.*
- commūtatiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a change.*
- comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare, get ready.*
- compellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive together, drive.*
- compleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *fill.*
- complūrēs**, -rēs, -ria (-ra), adj. (of two terminations), *very many, a great many.*
- concidō**, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut to pieces.*
- concilium**, -ī, neut., *a council (of war), an assembly.*
- concurrō**, -currere, -curri (-curri), -cursum, *run together, rush up.*
- condiciō**, -ōnis, fem., *terms, condition.*
- Condrūsī**, -ōrum, mas., *a Belgic tribe on the Meuse.*
- condūcō**, see **dūcō**, *bring together, hire.*
- cōferō**, -ferre, -tulī, collātum, *bring together, collect; sē cōferre, betake one's self.*
- cōfertus**, -a, -um, adj., *crowded, dense.*
- cōficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *accomplish; chapt. 4, raise; 23, 25, 27, exhaust.*
- cōfidō**, -fidere, -fīsus sum, semi-depon., *believe in, trust.*
- cōfirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *establish; chapt. 15, assure; 19, encourage.*
- cōfligō**, -fligere, -fīxi, -fictum, *fight, contend.*
- cōgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *engage (in battle), fight.*
- cōniciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw together; chapt. 6, 27, hurl; 23, drive; 16, 28, place.*
- coniungō**, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum, *join, unite.*
- coniūrō**, -iūrāre, -iūrāvī, -iūrā-tum, *conspire, swear together.*
- conlocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place, station (of troops).*
- cōnor**, -nārī, -nātus sum, depon., *attempt, undertake, try.*
- cōnsanguineus**, -a, -um, adj., *akin (by blood); plur. as noun, kinsmen.*
- cōnscribō**, see **scribō**, *enroll, enlist.*
- cōnsensus**, -ūs, mas., *consent, agreement.*
- cōsentīō**, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēn-sum, *agree, combine, conspire.*
- cōnsequor**, see **sequor**, depon., *follow, secure, obtain.*
- cōservō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *spare, save.*
- cōnsidō**, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, *settle, encamp.*
- cōsilium**, -ī, neut., *wise counsel, a plan; chapt. 17, a suggestion.*

cōnsimilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *very like, quite similar.*

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitti, -stitum, *halt, make a stand; chapt. 33, depend upon.*

cōspectus, -ūs, mas., *sight, view.*

cōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spec-

tum, see, behold.

cōspicor, -cāri, -cātus sum, *depon., see, observe.*

cōnstanter, adv., *uniformly, steadily.*

cōnstituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtum, *decide; chapt. 12, 30, set up; 8, 19, arrange, station.*

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *become accustomed; in the perf. tenses, be accus-tomed.*

cōnsuētūdō, -dīnis, fem., *custom, habit.*

contemptus, -ūs, mas., *contempt, scorn.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -ten-tum, *struggle, fight, hasten.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -ten-tum, *hold in, keep (within bounds), keep.*

contrā, adv. and prep. + acc., *against, in opposition.*

contrārius, -a, -um, adj., *opposite.*

contumēlia, -ae, fem., *an insult, an outrage.*

conveniō, see *veniō, meet, as-semble; chapt. 19, be agreed upon.*

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-sum, *turn; signa convertere, face about.*

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sum-mon, call together.*

cōpia, -ae, fem., *an abundance, plenty; (plur.) forces.*

cornū, -ūs, neut., *a horn, a wing (of an army).*

corpus, -oris, neut., *the body; chapt. 10, 27, a (dead) body.*

cortex, -ticis, mas. and fem., *bark.*

cotidīē, adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, -ae, mas., a lieutenant of Caesar.

Crassus, -ī, mas., a son of the Triumvir and a lieutenant in Caesar's army.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous, thick.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crē-ditum, *believe, trust.*

Crēs, Crētis, mas., *a Cretan (an inhabitant of Crete).*

cruciātus, -ūs, mas., *torture, suf-fering.*

cum, prep. + abl., *with; conj., when, while, after, since; chapt. 29, second sentence, although; cum prīnum, as soon as.*

cūnctus, -a, -um, adj., *all, all together.*

cupiō, cupere, -pīvī, -pītum, *desire eagerly, be eager.*

Curiosolitēs, -um, mas., *a people of the West of Gaul.*

cursus, -ūs, mas., *a running, speed.*

custōdia, -ae, fem., *protection, guard (the state of being guarded).*

- dē, prep. + *abl.*, *from, with respect to*; chapt. 7, *about, for*; 32, *from*.
- dēbeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitum, *owe, ought, must.*
- decem, indecl. num. adj., *ten.*
- dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *decree, decide.*
- dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *contend, fight.*
- decimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *tenth.*
- dēclivis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *sloping down.*
- decumānus, -a, -um, adj., *decumānus (belonging to the tenth): porta decumāna, the rear gate of the camp, near which the tenth legion was posted.*
- dēcurrō, -currere, -currī (-currī), *-cursum, run down.*
- dēditicius, -a, -um, adj., *surrendered*; chapt. 17, as noun, *prisoners*; 32, *subjects.*
- dēditiō, -ōnis, fem., *surrender.*
- dēdō, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditum, *surrender.*
- dēdūcō, see dūcō, *lead down or away*; chapt. 10, 31, *bring*; 33, *take away*; 35, *place.*
- dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnum, *defend, protect.*
- dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, fem., *a defence, a protection.*
- dēfēnsor, -ōris, mas., *a defender.*
- dēferō, see ferō, *carry down, report*; chapt. 4, *confer, bestow.*
- dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail, fall away*; chapt. 14, *revolt.*
- dēficiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw down.*
- dēiectus, -ūs, mas., *a slope, a declivity.*
- deinde, adv., *then, next.*
- dēleō, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētum, *destroy.*
- dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose, select.*
- dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *explain, show, state.*
- dēnique, adv., *at last, finally*; chapt. 33, *at any rate.*
- dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *dense, thick.*
- dēpōnō, see pōnō, *lay down (aside).*
- dēpopulor, -lārī, -lātus sum, *depon., lay waste.*
- dēprecor, -cārī, -cātus sum, *depon., avert by prayer, beseech, beg.*
- dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *desert, abandon, give up.*
- dēsistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stitum, *stop, desist from, cease.*
- dēspectus, -ūs, mas., *a view (from above), a prospect.*
- dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *give up hope*; chapt. 24, *despair of.*
- dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *despoil, strip, deprive.*
- dēsum, -esse, -fuī, *be lacking, be wanting.*
- dēterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territum, *frighten off, prevent.*
- dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *take, snatch (away).*
- dētrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *remove, slip off.*

dēvēniō, see veniō, *come away, come* (from one place to another).

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right.*

diciō, -ōnis, fem., *control, sway.*

dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum, *say, mention, speak.*

diēs, -ēi, mas. and fem., *a day.*

difficilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *difficult.*

difficultās, -tātis, fem., *difficulty.*

diligenter, adv., *carefully, with care.*

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, depon., *measure, measure off.*

dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight, contend* (to a finish).

dīmittō, see mittō, *let go away, send out, dismiss.*

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripiū, -reptum, *plunder, pillage.*

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-
sum, *depart.*

discēssus, -ūs, mas., *a departure.*

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *scatter, disperse.*

distineō, -tinēre, -tinū, -tentum,
keep apart, separate, divide.

diū, adv., *for a long time; diū-
tius, longer.*

diversus, -a, -um, adj., *diverse;*
chapt. 22, *separated; 23, differ-
ent; 24, routed.*

dīvinus, -a, -um, adj., *divine.*

Dīvitiācus, -i, mas., *a leader of
the Aedui, brother of Dum-
norix.*

dō, dare, dedi, datum, *give;*
obsidēs inter sē dare, *exchange
hostages.*

doceō, -cēre, -cuī, doctum,

*teach; chapt. 5, explain; 29,
direct.*

domesticus, -a, -um, adj., (*of the
house*), *domestic, native.*

domicilium, -ī, neut., *an abode,
a dwelling-place.*

dominor, -nārī, -nātus sum,
depon., *rule.*

domus, -ūs. (-ī), fem., *a home, a
house; locative domī, at home.*
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *have
doubt; with the infin., hesitate;
with the subjunc., doubt.*

ducenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., *two
hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum,
lead, conduct.

dum, conj., *while.*

duo, -duae, -duo, num. adj., *two.*
duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj.,
twelfth.

duodēviginti, indecl. num. adj.,
eighteen.

duplex, gen. duplicis, adj. of
one termination, *double, two-
fold.*

dux, ducis, mas., *a leader, a
guide, a commander.*

ē, ex, prep. + abl., *from, out of;*
chapt. 6, *second sent., after.*

Eburōnēs, -um, mas., *a Belgic
tribe situated between the
Meuse and the Rhine.*

ēditus, -a, -um, adj., *raised,
elevated.*

ēdūcō, see dūcō, *lead out, lead
forth.*

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,
accomplish, bring (it) about.

- ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, depon., go forth, march out.
- ēgregiē, adv., remarkably, excellently.
- ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, select, choose.
- ēmittō, see mittō, let go, hurl.
- emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy.
- ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, depon., grow out, sprout forth.
- enim, conj., for.
- eō, adv., thither, there.
- eō, īre, īvī (ii), itum, go.
- eques, equitīs, mas., a horseman, plur., cavalry (consisting of Roman troops).
- equester, -tris, -tre, gen., equestrīs, adj. (of three terminations), of cavalry, cavalry.
- equitātūs -ūs, mas., cavalry.
- ergō, adv., therefore, then.
- ēruptiō, -ōnis, fem., a sally, a sortie.
- Esuvii, -ōrum, mas., a Gallic tribe in Normandy.
- et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and.
- etiam, conj., also, even.
- ēventus, -ūs, mas., result, issue.
- ex, see ē.
- exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, harass, persecute.
- exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make breathless, exhaust.
- exaudiō, see audiō, hear distinctly.
- excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, retire.
- excursiō, -ōnis, fem., a sally.
- excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. excuse.
- exeō, -īre, -īvī -īi, -itum, go out, go forth.
- exercitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, train, drill.
- exercitus, -ūs, mas., an army.
- exiguitās, -tātis, fem., scantiness; with temporis, want of time.
- eximius, -a, -um, adj., excellent, remarkable.
- existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think, suppose, believe.
- expeditus, -a, -um, adj., unincumbered, light-armed.
- expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out.
- experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, depon., try, risk.
- explōrātor, -tōris, mas., a scout.
- explorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, search, find out.
- expūgnō, see pūgnō, storm.
- exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, await, wait to see (sī, whether, etc.).
- exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, pile up, build up.
- extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., farthest.
- facile, adv., easily.
- facilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), easy.
- faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, make, do.
- facultās, -tātis, fem., opportunity; chapt. 1, means.
- fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, fail, deceive, disappoint.
- fastigātūs, -a, -um, adj., sloping, inclined.

- ferāx**, gen., *ferācis*, adj. (of one termination), *fertile*.
- ferē**, adv., *nearly*, *almost*.
- ferō**, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*, *carry*, *bear*, *endure*.
- fertilitās**, -tātis, fem., *fertility*, *productiveness*.
- ferus**, -a, -um, adj., *wild*, *fierce*.
- fidēs**, -eī, fem., *faith*, *confidence*, *protection*.
- filius**, -i, mas., *a son*.
- fīnis**, -is, mas., *an end*; (plur.) *boundaries*, *territory*.
- fīnitimus**, -a, -um, adj., *neighbouring*; mas. plur. as noun, *neighbours*.
- fiō**, *fieri*, *factus sum*, *be made*, *happen*, *become*.
- flūmen**, -minis, neut., *a river*.
- fors**, *fortis*, fem., *chance*, *fate*.
- forte**, old abl. as adv., *by chance*.
- fortis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *brave*, *courageous*.
- fortiter**, adv., *bravely*.
- fortūna**, -ae, fem., *fortune*, *fate*.
- fossa**, -ae, fem., *a ditch*, *a trench*.
- frāter**, *frātris*, mas., *a brother*.
- fremitus**, -ūs, mas., *a noise*, *an uproar*.
- frōns**, *frontis*, fem., *brow*, *front*; ā *fronte*, *in front*.
- frūmentārius**, -a, -um, adj., *of grain*; rēs *frūmentāria*, fem., *supply*.
- frūmentum**, -i, neut., *corn*, *grain*.
- fuga**, -ae, fem., *flight*.
- fugiō**, *fugere*, *fūgi*, *fugitum*, *flee*, *fly*, *escape*.
- fugō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *rout*, *put to flight*.
- fūmus**, -i, mas., *smoke*.
- funditor**, -tōris, mas., *a slinger*.
- furor**, -ōris, mas., *madness*, *frenzy*.
- Galba**, ae, mas., a legatus of Caesar; chapt. 4, 13, King of the Suessiones.
- galea**, -ae, fem., *a helmet* (of leather, worn by cavalry).
- Gallia**, -ae, fem., *Gaul* (country occupying all Northern Italy).
- Gallus**, -a, -um, adj., *of Gaul*; as noun, *a Gaul*, *the Gauls*.
- gēns**, *gentis*, fem., *a tribe*, *a class*.
- Germānus**, -a, -um, adj., *German*; plur. as noun, *the Germans*.
- gerō**, *gerere*, *gessī*, *gestum*, *carry on*, *wage (war)*.
- gladius**, -i, mas., *a sword*.
- grātia**, -ae, fem., *favor*, *influence*, *popularity*.
- gravis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *heavy*, *severe*, *serious*.
- habeō**, -bēre, -buī, -bitum, *have*, *hold*, *possess*.
- hibernācula**, -ōrum, neut., *winter-quarters*.
- hibernus**, -a, -um, adj., *of winter*; neut. plur. (with *castra*), *winter-quarters*.
- hic**, *haec*, *hōc*, demons. pron., *this*, *he*, etc.
- hiemō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *winter*, *pass the winter*.
- homō**, *hominis*, mas., *a man*.
- honor**, -ōris, mas., *honor*, *respect*.

hostis, -*is*, mas., *an enemy* (of the state), *the enemy*.

iaceō, *iacēre*, *iacuī*, *iacitum*, *lie, lie dead*; chapt. 27, *iacentibus*, (pres. participle), *the slain*.

iaciō, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactum, hurl*; chapt. 12, *throw up*.

iam, adv., *now, already*.

ibi, adv., *there*.

Iccius, -*ī*, mas., *a nobleman of the Remi*.

idem, *eadem*, *idem*, *demons. pron., the same*.

identidem, adv., *again and again*.

idōneus, -*a*, -*um*, adj., *suitable fit*.

ignis, -*is*, mas., *fire*; chapt. 7, *camp-fire*; 33, *signal-fire*.

ille, illa, illud, *demons. pron., he, that*.

Illyricum, -*ī*, neut., *Illyria* (country east of the Adriatic, belonging to Caesar's province).

impedimentum, -*ī*, neut., *a hindrance*; plur., *baggage, baggage-train, pack-animals*.

impediō, -*dire*, -*dīvī*, -*dītum*, *entangle, hinder*.

impellō, -*pellere*, -*pulī*, -*pulsum*, *drive on, incite, influence*.

imperātor, -*tōris*, mas., *a commander* (in chief), *a general*.

imperātūm, -*ī*, neut., *a command, an order*.

imperium, -*ī*, neut., *command, control, power*.

imperō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *command, require, direct*.

impetrō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *obtain*

(a request), *obtain (anything by a request)*.

impetus, -*ūs*, mas., *an attack, a charge*; chapt. 6, *fury*.

imprōvisus, -*a*, -*um*, adj., *unforeseen*; *dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly*.

in, prep. + acc and abl.; with acc., *into, against, upon* (with verbs of motion); with abl., *in, on, among*; chapt. 32, *in the case of*.

incendō, -*cendere*, -*cendi*, -*cēnsum*, *burn, set fire to*.

incidō, -*cidere*, -*cidi*, -*cāsum*, *fall in with, befall, happen*.

incidō, -*cidere*, -*cidi*, -*cīsum*, *notch, cut into*.

incipiō, -*cipere*, -*cēpī*, -*ceptum*, *begin*.

incitō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *urge on; incitatō cursū, at full speed*.

incolō, -*colere*, -*coluī*, (no supine), *inhabit, live*.

incrēdibilis, -*is*, -*e*, adj. (of two terminations), *incredible, marvellous*.

increpitō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *taunt, upbraid*.

incūsō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *blame, chide*.

inde, adv., *thence, after that, then*.

indignitās, -*tātis*, fem., *disgrace, outrage*.

indiligerter, adv., *carelessly, negligently*.

indūcō, see *dūcō*, *draw on, cover*.

induō, -*duere*, -*duī*, -*dūtum*, *put on*.

īneō, -ire, -īvī (-ii), -itum, enter upon, undertake, begin.

īnermis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), unarmed.

īnferior, -ior, -ius, adj. (comparative—two terminations), lower; chapt. 8, inferior.

īferō, -ferre, -tuli, illātum, bring in; chapt. 14, bring upon; 15, import; 25, (signa) **īferre**, carry forward; 25, (spē) illātā, inspire in; 29, wage; 32, inflict.

īfimus, -a, -um, adj., lowest; chapt. 18, at the bottom.

īflectō, -flectere, -flēxī, -flexum, bend down.

īgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., enter, march in.

īnimicus, -a, -um, adj., unfriendly; as noun, an enemy (personal).

īnīquitās, -tatis, fem., unevenness, inequality.

īnīquus, -a, -um, adj., unfavourable, unfair.

īnitium, -i, neut., a beginning.

īniūria, -ae, fem., injustice, wrong.

īnnītor, -nīti, -nīsus (-nīxus) sum, depon., lean upon.

īnsequor, see **sequor**, depon., pursue, follow up.

īnsidiae, -ārum, fem., an ambush, a trap.

īnsīgne, -is, neut., a badge, a decoration.

īnsistō, -sistere, -stīti, (no supine), stand upon.

īnstār, neut. indeclin. (an image);

like, in the manner of (with gen.).

īnstō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum, press forward, press on.

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctum, draw up (of troops); chapt. 30, build.

īntellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, know, learn.

īnter, prep. + acc., between, among.

īntercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go between, move between.

īntercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-tum, intercept (obstruct in motion).

īnterclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, cut off, shut off.

īntereā, adv., meanwhile, in the mean time.

īnterficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, kill, put to death.

īntericiō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, throw in (between); chapt. 17, place among; 22, intervene.

īnterim, adv., meanwhile.

īnterior, -ior, -ius, adj. (comparative—two terminations), interior, inner.

īntermittō, see **mittō**, cease, dis-continue.

īnterneciō, -ōnis, fem., extermi-nation, annihilation.

īnterscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum, cut down, demolish.

īntersum, see **sum**, be between; impers., it concerns (with gen.).

īntervallum, -i, neut., distance (between two things).

- intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, weave together.
- intrā, prep. + acc., within.
- intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter, penetrate.
- intrōdūcō, see dūcō, lead in, bring in.
- intrōmittō, see mittō, let go in, send in.
- intrōrsus, adv., within, inside.
- inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj., unusual, unwonted.
- inūtilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), useless; chapt. 16, incapable.
- inveniō, see veniō, come upon, find, learn.
- inveterāscō, -rāscere, -rāvī, (no supine), grow old in, gain a firm footing.
- invideō, see videō, envy (with dat), be jealous of.
- ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron., he, self.
- irrideō, -ridēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, laugh at, taunt.
- is, ea, id, demons. or personal pron., he, that.
- ita, adv., thus, so; chapt. 1, ita utī, as, just as.
- Italia, -ae, fem., Italy.
- itaque, adv., therefore.
- item, adv., likewise.
- iter, itineris, neut., a road, a march; iter facere, to march.
- iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, order, bid, command.
- iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, judge, think, decide.
- iugum, -ī, neut., a yoke; a ridge (of a row or chain of hills).
- iūs, iūris, neut., right, justice, law.
- iūstitia, -ae, fem., justice, fair dealing.
- iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, aid, help, assist.
- iūxtā, adv., near by, next.
- L**, initial letter of Lūcius.
- Labiēnus, -ī, mas., a legatus of Caesar in Gaul.
- lapis, lapidis, mas., a stone.
- lassitūdō, -dinis, fem., fatigue.
- lateō, -tēre, -tuī, (no supine), lie concealed, be concealed.
- lātitūdō, -dinis, fem., width, breadth.
- lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide.
- latus, -eris, neut., the side; ab latere, on the flank.
- laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, open out, widen, extend.
- lēgātiō, -ōnis, fem., an embassy, a legation.
- lēgātus, -ī, mas., an ambassador, an envoy, a lieutenant.
- legiō, -ōnis, fem., a legion.
- legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj., legionary, of a legion.
- lēniter, adv., gently.
- levis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), light.
- levitās, -tātis, fem., lightness, fickleness, inconstancy.
- lēx, lēgis, fem., a law, a statute.
- liberāliter, adv., kindly, generously.
- liberī, -ōrum, mas., children (of free parents).

littera, -ae, fem., *a letter* (of the alphabet); plur., *letters*, *letter* (an epistle).

locus, -i, mas., *a place*; neut. plur., *loca*, -ōrum; chapt. 26, *condition*.

longē, adv., *far, at a distance*.

longus, -a, -um, adj., *long*.

loquor, *loquī*, *locūtus sum*, *depon.*, *speak, talk*.

Lūcius, -i, mas., *a Roman praenomen* (the first name).

lūx, *lūcis*, fem., *light*; *prīmā lūce*, *at early dawn, at day-break*.

lūxuria, -ae, fem., *luxury*.

māchinātiō, -ōnis, fem., *a machine, an engine, a contrivance*.

magis, adv., *more, rather*; *magis . . . quam*, *rather . . . than*.

magistrātus, -ūs, mas., *a magistracy, a magistrate*.

māgnitūdō, -dinis, fem., *greatness, size*.

māgnopere, adv., *very much, very earnestly*; *māgnō opere* (see *opus*).

māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large*.

māior, *māior*, *māius*, adj., *greater*; *māiōrēs* (*nātū*), *elders*.

maleficium, -i, neut., *harm, mischief*.

mālō, *mālle*, *māluī*, (no supine), *prefer, wish rather*.

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *direct, instruct*; chapt. 24, *consign*.

manipulus, -i, mas., *a company* (a third of a cohort), *a maniple*.

mānsuētūdō, -dinis, fem., *kindness, gentleness*.

manus, -ūs, fem., *the hand*; *a band, a company*.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj., *marine, of the sea*.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *hasten, make haste*.

māximē, adv., *especially, very*.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle of*.

memoria, -ae, fem., *memory, recollection*.

Menapii, -ōrum, mas., *a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt*.

mercātor, -tōris, mas., *a trader* (who carries his own goods abroad).

meritum, -i, neut., *merit, desert*.

miles, -itis, mas., *a soldier*.

militāris, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *of the soldiers, military*; see *rēs*.

mille, indecl. num. adj., *a thousand*; plur. as noun, *milia, milium*.

minimē, adv., *least, very little*.

minus, neuter acc. of the comparative *minor*, used as an adv., *less*; chapt. 9, *not*.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, miserable*.

misericordia, -ae, fem., *pity, clemency, compassion*.

mittō, *mittere*, *misi*, *missum, send, despatch*.

mōbilitās, -tatis, fem., *inconstancy, mobility*.

modo, adv., *merely, only*; *nō modo*, *not only*.

- modus, -ī, mas., *manner*; ad
hunc modum, *after this
fashion*.
- moenia, -ium, neut., *fortifications,
walls* (of a city).
- molestē adv., *heavily*; molestē
ferre, *be vexed or annoyed*.
- moneō, monēre, monūi, moni-
tum, *direct, advise, warn*.
- mōns, montis, mas., *a mountain*.
- mora, -ae, fem., *delay*.
- Morini, -ōrum, mas., a Belgic
tribe on the seacoast opposite
Kent.
- moror, -rārī, -rātus sum, depon.,
delay, linger, stay.
- mōs, mōris, mas., *custom*; plur.,
habits, character.
- moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum,
*move; castra movēre, break
camp*.
- mulier, -eris, fem., *a woman*.
- multitūdō, -dinis, fem., *a multi-
tude, a great number*.
- multus, -a, -um, adj., *much,
many*.
- mūnīmentum, -ī, neut., *a defence,
a fortification*.
- mūniō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum, *fortify;
with castra, make*.
- mūnītiō, -ōnis, fem., *a fortifica-
tion, works*.
- mūrus, -ī, mas., *a wall* (a city
wall).
- nam, conj., *for*.
- nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, depon.,
be born, spring up.
- nātiō, -ōnis, fem., *a nation, a
tribe*.
- nātūra, -ae, fem., *nature, charac-
ter*.
- nātus, -ūs, mas., *birth*; māiōrēs
(nātū), *elders, old men*.
- nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *do with
zeal*; operam nāvāre, *do one's
best*.
- nē, conj., *that . . . not*; with
verbs of fearing, *that, lest*;
with imperative, *not* (neg. ne),
nec, conj., *nor*.
- necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *neces-
sary, urgent*.
- necessitās, -tatis, fem., *necessity*;
chapt. 11, *compulsion*; 22, *ur-
gency*.
- negōtium, -ī, neut., *business*;
chapt. 17, *trouble*; negōtium
dare, employ.
- nēmō, nēminis, mas. and fem.,
no one.
- neque (nec), adv., *and not*; neque
. . . neque, *neither . . . nor*.
- nēquīquam, adv., *in vain*.
- Nervius, -a, -um, adj., *Nervian*;
plur., *the Nerrii*, a powerful
tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. neu-
trius, adj., *neither*; plur. mas.,
as a noun, *neither party*.
- nēve (neu), conj., *and . . . not*
(continuing a negative); chapt.
21, *and that . . . not*.
- nihil, indecl. neut., *nothing*; acc.
as adv., *not at all*.
- nisi, conj., *unless, if not, except*.
- nōbilitās, -tatis, fem., *nobility*;
concretely, *the nobles*.
- noctū, abl. used abverbially, *by
night*.

- nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, (no supine), *be unwilling, not wish.*
- nōmen, -minis, neut., *a name.*
- nōminātim, adv., *by name (individually).*
- nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *name, mention, call by name.*
- nōn, adv., *not; nōn modo, not only.*
- nōndum, adv., *not yet.*
- nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some; plur., as a noun, some persons.*
- nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *ninth.*
- nōs, pers. pron. of the first pers. (plur. of *ego*), *we.*
- noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pron., *our; plur., nostrī, our men (as a noun).*
- novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*
- Noviodūnum**, -ī, neut., *a town of the Suessiones on the Aisne.*
- novus, -a, -um, adj., *new; chapt. 31, strange, novel.*
- novissimus, -a, -um (superl. of *novus*), *the last, latest; with agmen, the rear; plur. mas. as a noun, novissimī, men or soldiers in the rear.*
- nox, noctis, fem., *night.*
- nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *strip, lay bare; chapt. 23, expose, leave unguarded.*
- nūllus, -a, -um, gen. nūlliūs, adj., *not any, no; as a noun, no one.*
- numerus, -ī, mas., *a number.*
- Numida**, -ae, mas., *a Numidian (employed in the Roman army as cavalry).*
- nunc, adv., *now.*
- nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *announce, report, send news.*
- nūntius, -ī, mas., *message, messenger, news.*
- ob, prep. + acc., *on account of.*
- obdūcō, see dūcō, *lead against; with fossam, dig, construct.*
- obitus, -ūs, mas., *a going to (death), destruction, death.*
- obses, -idis, mas. and fem., *hostage (one under guard).*
- obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold, occupy, possess.*
- obveniō, see veniō (with dat.), *encounter, fall in with, meet.*
- occāsus, -ūs, mas., *a falling, a setting (of the sun).*
- occidō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *slay, kill.*
- occultus, -a, -um, adj., *concealed; in occultō, in secret.*
- occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *seize, occupy (in a military sense); chapt. 19, be engaged.*
- occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum (with dat.), *meet, come upon, fall in with.*
- Ōceanus**, -ī, mas., *the ocean.*
- octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eighth.*
- octō, indecl. num. adj., *eight.*
- offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *bring before, offer, carry, bring.*
- omittō, see mittō, *let go by, neglect (with cōnsilium).*
- omnis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *all, the whole of.*
- onus, -eris, neut., *a burden, a load.*

- opera**, -ae, fem., *pains, service* ;
operam nāvāre, *do one's best*.
- opiniō**, -ōnis, fem., *notion* ;
 chapt. 3, *expectation* ; 8, 24,
reputation; 35, *impression*.
- oportet**, *oportēre*, *oportuit*,
 impers., *it behooves, it ought*.
- oppidānus**, -a, -um, adj., *of the town*; plur. mas. as a noun, *the townsmen*.
- oppidum**, -i, neut., *a town* (usually fortified).
- opportūnus**, -a, -um, adj., *convenient, opportune, suitable*
- oppūgnātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a siege, an attack* (in a formal manner against a fortified place).
- oppūgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *attack* (a defended position).
- (**ops**), *opis*, fem., *help* ; chapt. 14, *resources*; 31, *aid*.
- optimus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *bonus*), *best*.
- opus**, -eris, neut., *work* ; **māgnō**
opere (*māgnopere*), *very much* ;
quantō opere (*quantopere*),
how greatly.
- opus**, indecl. neut., *need* ; **opus est**, *there is need*.
- ōrātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a speech, a talk, an address*.
- ōrdō**, *dinis*, mas., *a row, an order, a company, a rank* (of soldiers).
- orior**, *orīri*, *ortus sum*, *depon.*, *arise* ; chapt. 4, *be descended from*.
- Osismī**, -ōrum, mas., *a Gallic tribe in Brittany*.
- P.**, initial letter of *Pūblius*.
- pābulum**, -i, neut., *fodder* (for animals).
- pācō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *subdue, pacify*.
- Paemānī**, -ōrum, mas., *a tribe of the Belgians*.
- paene**, adv., *almost, nearly*.
- palūs**, -ūdis, fem., *a swamp, a marsh*.
- pandō**, *pandere*, *pandi*, *passum, spread out*; perf. particip., *passus, outstretched* (as an adj.).
- pār**, *paris*, adj. (of one termination), *equal*.
- parātus**, -a, -um, adj., *prepared, ready*.
- pars**, *partis*, fem., *part, side* ; less exactly, *direction*.
- partim**, acc. as adv., *partly, in part*.
- parvulus**, -a, -um, adj., *slight, small, unimportant*.
- passus**, -a, -um, see *pandō*.
- passus**, -ūs, mas., *a pace* (five Roman feet); *milia passuum, a mile*.
- patefaciō**, see *faciō*, *open, lay open*.
- pateō**, -tēre, -tuī, (no supine), *extend, be open, spread*.
- pater**, *patris*, mas., *a father* ; plur., *ancestors*.
- patior**, *patī*, *passus sum, depon, endure, permit* ; chapt. 15, *allow* ; 31, *suffer*.
- patrius**, -a, -um, adj., *ancestral, of one's fathers*.
- paucus**, -a, -um, adj. (mostly in the plur.), *few; a few*.

- paulātim, adv., *gradually, little by little.*
- paulisper, adv., *a short while.*
- paulō, abl. as adv., (by) *a little, just a little.*
- paululum, adv., *slightly, a very little.*
- paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*
- pāx, pācis, fem., *peace.*
- pedes, -itis, mas., *a footman; plur. collectively, the infantry.*
- pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. (of three terminations), *of infantry, infantry.*
- Pedius, -i, mas., *a nephew and legatus of Caesar.*
- pellis, -is, fem., *a skin, a hide (of an animal).*
- pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive, defeat, rout.*
- per, prep. + acc., *through, by means of;* chapt. 10, *over.*
- perfērō, see ferō, *carry through;* chapt. 14, *endure;* 35, *spread among.*
- perīclitor, -tārī, -tātus sum, *depon., test, try, make a trial.*
- perīculum, -i, neut., *a trial, an attempt; hence, danger, peril.*
- permittō, see mittō, *give up (over), entrust.*
- permoveō, see moveō, *alarm, (move thoroughly).*
- perspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectum, *see through, learn, find, see.*
- persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade (with dat.), induce.*
- perterreō, -terrēre, -terrūi, -territum, *terrify, frighten greatly.*
- pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, (no supine), *extend, reach (out), tend.*
- perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *throw into disorder, alarm.*
- perveniō, see veniō, *reach, arrive at.*
- pēs, pedis, mas., *a foot.*
- petō, petere, petivī or petiī, -petitum, *seek, ask for, beg.*
- pilum, -i, neut., *a javelin.*
- plānitiēs, -ēi, fem., *a plain.*
- plērumque, acc. sing. neut. as adv., *generally, usually.*
- plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj. (only in the plur.), *most of, very many.*
- plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of multus), *most; acc. sing. neut. as adv. (plūrimum), most, very much; plūrimum valēre, have very great influence; plūrimum posse, be very powerful.*
- pollicor, -licērī, -licitus sum, *depon., promise, offer.*
- pondus, -eris, neut., *weight.*
- pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place, put, pitch.*
- pōns, pontis, mas., *a bridge.*
- populor, -lārī, -lātus sum, *depon., lay waste, plunder.*
- populus, -i, mas., *a people.*
- porrēctus, -a, -um, adj., *stretched forth, extensive, long.*
- porta, -ae, fem., *a gate.*
- portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry, bring.*

- poscō, poscere, poposcī, (no supine), *demand, claim.*
- possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sesum, *possess, occupy* (in a military sense).
- possum, posse, potuī, *can, be able;* plūrimum posse, *be very powerful.*
- post, prep. + acc., *after, behind.*
- posteā, adv., *afterwards.*
- postquam, adverbial conj., *after, after that, when.*
- postrēmō, adv., *finally, lastly, at last.*
- postridiē, adv., *the next day.*
- postridiē, adv., *the next day;* postridiē ēius diēi, adv. phrase, *the next day after that.*
- postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *demand, claim, ask.*
- potēns, potentis, adj. (of one termination), *powerful, mighty.*
- potestās, -tātis, fem., *power, control;* chapt. 6, *ability.*
- potior, potirī, potitus sum, depon., *capture (with abl.), get control of.*
- potius, adv., *rather; potius . . . quam, rather . . . than.*
- prae, prep. + abl., *in comparison with.*
- praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., *sharpened (to a point), pointed.*
- praebeō, -bēre, -bui, -bitum, *furnish, offer.*
- praeeceps, -cipitis, adj. (of one termination), *headlong, in haste.*
- praedor, -dārī, -dātus sum, depon., *plunder, raid, take booty.*
- praefectus, -i, mas., *a general, an officer, a commander.*
- praeferō, see ferō, *place before; with sē, outdo (show one's self better than).*
- praeficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *place in command of.*
- praemittō, see mittō, *send forward, send ahead.*
- praescribō, see scribō, *give directions, order, direct.*
- praesertim, adv., *especially.*
- praesidium, -i, neut., *defence, guard, protection.*
- praestō, -stāre, -stītī, -stitum, *stand before;* chapt. 15, *excel; 27, display;* 31, *impers., it is better.*
- praesum, see sum, *be in command of (with the dat.).*
- praetereā, adv., *besides, furthermore.*
- premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *press hard, attack fiercely.*
- prīmipilus, -i, mas., *the chief or first centurion.*
- prīmō, adv., *at first.*
- prīmum, adv., *first, in the first place;* cum prīmum, *as soon as.*
- prīmus, -a, -um, adj., plur. mas., prīmī, *the foremost men, the chief or leading men.*
- prīnceps, -ipis, mas. (adj. of one termination used as a noun), *chief man, chief, leader.*
- prior, -iōr, -ius, adj. (comparative—two terminations), *former;* plur. mas. as a noun, prīorēs, *men (soldiers) in front.*

- priſtinus**, -a, -um, adj., *former, old, old time.*
- priuſquam**, conj., adv., *before;*
priuſ and quam are often separated by intervening words.
- prō**, prep. + abl., *in front of;* chapt. 14, *in behalf of;* 25, *in proportion to;* 31, *according to.*
- prōcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go forward, advance, proceed.*
- procuſ**, adv., *afar off, at a distance.*
- prōcumbō**, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *lean forward, fall, sink down (to the ground).*
- proelior**, -ārī, -ātus sum, depon., *figū (in war).*
- proelium**, -i, neut., *a battle, contest, engagement.*
- profectiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a departure, a setting out.*
- proficisci**, proficisci, profectus sum, depon., *set out, go.*
- prōfligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *rout, put to flight, defeat.*
- profugiō**, see **fugiō**, *flee, escape.*
- prōgnātus**, -a, -um, adj., *descended from, sprung from.*
- prōgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *advance, march forward, go forward.*
- prohibeō**, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, *prevent, cut off, keep from.*
- prōiciō**, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, *throw away, abandon, give up.*
- prōmoveō**, see **moveō**, *move forward, push forward.*
- prope**, adv., *almost, nearly.*
- properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten.*
- propinquātis**, -tātis, fem., *nearness, relation (by blood), kinship.*
- propinquus**, -a, -um, adj., *near, close, related (by blood).*
- prōpōnō**, see **pōnō**, *place before;* chapt. 2, *display, raise.*
- propter**, prep. + acc., *on account of.*
- proptereā**, adv., *on this account; with quod, because.*
- prōpūgnō**, see **pūgnō**, *fight (rush out fighting), fight in defence.*
- prōsequor**, see **sequor**, *pursue;* chapt. 5, *address.*
- prōspectus**, -ūs, mas., *view, outlook.*
- prōtinus**, adv., *immediately, instantly.*
- prōturbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *rout, drive off (in confusion).*
- prōvideō**, see **videō**, *foresee, provide, arrange beforehand.*
- prōvincia**, -ae, fem., *a province (governed by a Roman magistrate).*
- prōvolō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fly (rush) forth, hurry forward.*
- proximē**, adv., *recently, last, lately.*
- proximus**, -a, -um, adj., *next, nearest (last).*
- prūdentia**, -ae, fem., *discretion, wisdom, foresight.*
- pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj., *public;* rēs pūblica, fem., *the state.*
- Pūblīus**, -i, mas., *a Roman praenomen (the first name).*
- puer**, puerī, mas., *boy; plur., children.*

pūgna, -ae, fem., *a fight, a battle.*
 pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight,*
engage, contend.

Q, initial letter of Quīntus.
 quā, adv., *where* (chapt. 33).
 qua, indefinite pron., see quis.
 quadrīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj.,
four hundred.

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī,
quaesītum, ask, inquire.

quam, adv., *than, as* (after comparatives and comparative expressions); chapt. 32, 2d sent., and chapt. 33, indef. pron., *any.*

quamvis, indef. pron. from
 quīvis, quaevis, etc. (which
 see); chapt. 31, *any you please.*
 quantopere, adv., *how greatly,*
how very much; see opus.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how great?,*
how much (many)?

quartus, -a, -um, num. adj.,
fourth.

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four.*
 que, enclitic conj., *and* (always
 appended to the word or to
 some part of the phrase or
 sentence which it connects).

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who,*
which, what, that.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam,
 indef. pron., *a certain, certain.*
 quidem, adv., *indeed, certainly;*
 nē . . . quidem, *not . . . even*
 (emphasizing the word placed
 between them).

quīn, conj., *but that, that, from*
 (after negative verbs of *preventing, hindering, doubting, etc.*).

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam,
 interrog. pron., *who?, what?*
 quīndecim, indecl. num. adj.,
fifteen.

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five*
hundred.

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj.,
fifty.

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five.*

Quīntus, -ī, mas., a Roman
 praenomen (the first name).

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron.,
 who?, which?, what? ; indef.
 pron., *any, any one, anything*
 (after sī, nisi, nē, num).

quisquam, (no fem.), quidquam
 (quicquam), indef. pron., *any*
one, anything (in negative
 clauses).

quisque, quaeque, quidque,
 indef. pron., *each, each one.*

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid
 (quidquid), indef. pron., *who-*
ever, whatever.

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis, indef.
 pron., *who you please, any*
one.

quō, adv., *whither, where;* chapt.
 25, = ut eō, *so that thereby,*
(so that by it).

quod, conj., *because;* chapt. 17,
the fact that.

quoque, conj., *also* (emphasizing
 the word which it follows).

rāmus, -ī, mas., *a branch, a bough.*
 ratiō, -ōnis, fem., *a reckoning, a*
plan, a reason.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,
take back, receive; sē recipere,

- betake one's self; chapt. 12, sē recipere, recover.*
- reddō**, *reddere, reddidī, redditum, give back, render.*
- redeō**, -ire, -ivī (ii), -itum, *go back, return; less exactly, decline (slope).*
- redigō**, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *reduce; chapt. 27, render.*
- redintegrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *renew, restore.*
- Redonēs**, -um, mas., *a Gallic people in Brittany.*
- redūcō**, see **dūcō**, *lead back, bring back.*
- referō**, -ferre, *rettulī, relātum, bring back, report, announce.*
- refringō**, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *break in, break open.*
- regiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a region, a district, a part (of the country).*
- regō**, *regere, rēxī, rēctum, to rule, have control of.*
- rēgnūm**, -ī, neut., *kingdom, power; plur., sovereignty.*
- rēiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *drive back, hurl back, drive off.*
- relanguēscō**, -languēscere, -languī, (no supine), *be weakened, languish away.*
- relinquō**, -linquere, -līquī, -līctum, *leave behind, leave.*
- reliquus**, -a, -um, adj., *remaining, the rest of; as a noun (usually plur.), the rest.*
- Rēmī**, -ōrum, *a leading tribe of the Belgae.*
- remittō**, see **mittō**, *send or hurl back; chapt. 15, relax, give up.*
- Rēmus**, -ī, mas., *one of the Remi.*
- renūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bring back word, report, announce.*
- repellō**, -pellere, *reppuli, repulsum, drive back, repulse.*
- repentinus**, -a, -um, adj., *sudden; abl. repentinō (as adv.), suddenly.*
- reperiō**, -perīre, *repperī or reperi, repertum, find out, ascertain, find.*
- rēs**, **rei**, fem., *a thing, a fact;*
rēs frūmentāria, *a grain supply;*
rēs pūblica, *the state.*
- resistō**, *sistere, stiti, (nosupine), resist (with dat.), withstand.*
- respiciō**, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, *look back, look behind one.*
- respondeō**, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *answer, reply.*
- retineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold back, restrain; chapt. 21, with memoriam, preserve.*
- revertor**, -vertī, -versus sum, *depon., go back, return; active forms in the perfect system, revertī, reverteram, etc.*
- revocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call back, call away, recall.*
- rēx**, **rēgis**, mas., *a king.*
- Rhēnus**, -ī, mas., *the Rhine.*
- rīpa**, -ae, fem., *a bank, a river-bank.*
- rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask, ask for.*
- Rōmānus**, -a, -um, adj., *Roman; as a noun, a Roman.*
- rubus**, -ī, mas., *a bramble-bush, a bramble.*
- rūmor**, -ōris, mas., *a report, a rumour.*
- rūpēs**, -is, fem., *a cliff, a rock.*

rūrsus, adv., *again, in turn, back again.*

rūs, rūris, neut., *country; locative, rūrī, in the country.*

Sabinus, -ī, mas., a lieutenant of Caesar.

Sabis, -is, mas., (now) *the Sambre*, a river in Gaul flowing into the Meuse.

saepēs, -is, fem., *a hedge.*

sagittārius, -ī, mas., *a Bowman, an archer.*

salūs, -ūtis, fem., *safety, welfare.*

sarcina, -ae, fem., *a package, a pack; plur., baggage* (the load carried on the back of each soldier).

saxum, -ī, neut., *a rock.*

scientia, -ae, fem., *skill, knowledge.*

scribō, *scribere, scripsi, scriptum, write; chapt. 29, give an account (in writing).*

scūtūm, -ī, neut., *a shield* (of the Roman legion) made of wood, covered with leather, convex and oblong ($2\frac{1}{2}$ by 4 ft.).

sectiō, -ōnis, fem., *a cutting; hence, from dividing in lots, booty.*

secundum, prep. + acc., *along; chapt. 18, next to.*

secundus, -a, -um, num. adj., *second; chapt. 9, favourable.*

sed, conj., *but.*

senātor, -tōris, mas., *(an elder), a senator.*

senātus, -ūs, mas., *a senate*

(council of old men), especially the Roman senate.

Senonēs, -um, mas., a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Seine.

sententia, -ae, fem., *an opinion, a view.*

sentis, -is, mas., *a briar, a thorn-bush* (mostly plur.).

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *seventh.*

Sequanus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Sequani; mas. plur., the Sequani, a Gallic tribe on the Rhone.*

sequor, *sequi, secūtus sum, depon., follow; chapt. 22, with ēventus, ensue.*

servitūs, -tūtis, fem., *slavery, subjection.*

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *watch; chapt. 33, with praesidia, maintain.*

sēsē, see *sui.*

sex, indecl. num. adj., *six.*

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *sixty.*

sexcenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., *six hundred.*

sī, conj., *if; chapt. 9, whether.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus, as follows.*

signifer, -feri, mas., *a standard-bearer.*

significatiō, -ōnis, fem., *signal, warning.*

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *show, indicate, announce.*

signum, -ī, neut., *sign, standard;*

signa convertere, face about;

signa inferre, advance (to the attack).

- silva**, -ae, fem., *a forest, woods.*
silvester (-tris), -tris, -tre, adj.
 (of three terminations), *woody, wooded.*
- simul**, adv., *at the same time.*
- sine**, prep. + abl., *without.*
- singulāris**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *remarkable, unique.*
- singulī**, -ae, -a, adj., *single, several, each, one at a time.*
- sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., *left.*
- sōl, sōlis**, mas., *the sun.*
- sollicitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *in-cite, stir up, instigate.*
- sōlum**, acc. neut. as adv., *only; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.*
- sōlus**, -a, -um, adj., gen. sōlius, *only, alone.*
- spatiūm**, -ī, neut., *space, distance; less exactly, time.*
- speciēs**, -iēi, fem., *an appearance, a sight, a show.*
- speculātor**, -tōris, mas., *a spy, a scout.*
- spēs, spei**, fem., *hope, expectation.*
- spīritus**, -ūs, mas., *breath; plur., pride, arrogance.*
- statim**, adv., *at once, immediately.*
- statiō**, -ōnis, mas., *a post, a picket; in statiōne, on guard.*
- statuō**, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtum, *decide, determine.*
- statūra**, -ae, fem., *stature, height, size.*
- strepitus**, -ūs, mas., *noise, din.*
- studeō**, -dēre, -duī, (no supine), (with dat.), *desire; chapt. 17, pay attention to.*
- studium**, -ī, neut., *eagerness, desire, fondness (for a thing).*
- sub**, prep. + abl. and acc., *under; chapt. 13, 33, towards, near to.*
- subeō**, see eō, *undergo, approach, enter.*
- subitō**, adv., *suddenly, hastily.*
- submittō**, see mittō, *send up, send, despatch (with dat.).*
- subruō**, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *under-mine, dig under.*
- subsequor**, see sequor, *follow up, pursue, follow on.*
- subsidiūm**, -ī, neut., *relief, assistance, help.*
- succēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *come up, approach, draw near.*
- successus**, -ūs, mas., *a coming up, an advance, a close approach.*
- Suessiōnēs**, -um, mas., *a tribe of the Belgae between the Marpe and the Isère.*
- sūi**, sibi, sē (sēsē), reflex. pron., *himself, themselves, etc.*
- sum**, esse, fui, *be, am.*
- summa**, -ae, fem., *the sum, the total; chapt. 4, control; chapt. 23, with imperiī, chief command.*
- summus**, -a, -um, adj., *highest, top of.*
- sūmō**, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmp-tum, *take, assume, claim.*
- superior**, -iōr, -ius, adj. (comparative—two terminations), *higher, former, preceding.*
- superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *over-come, defeat, conquer.*

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -ses-
sum, *refrain from*.

supersum, see **sum**, *survive, re-*
main.

supplex, -plicis, adj. (of one
termination), *humble; used as*
a noun, mas. and fem., a sup-
pliant.

supplicātiō, -ōnis, fem., *a*
thanksgiving (a supplication).

suprā, adv., *above, before*.

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūm, *hold*
out.

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinūi, -ten-
tūm, *withstand; chapt. 6, with*
sēsē, hold out; chapt. 25, with
sē, stand up.

suus, -a, -um, possess. adj. pron.,
his (own), their (own), (reflex.).

T., initial letter of **Titus**.

tam, adv., *so*.

tamen, adv., *however, nevertheless,*
still.

tantulus, -a, -um, adj., *so small,*
so little.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so*
much.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūm, *check,*
retard.

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow, sluggish;* chapt. 25, *exhausted*.

tegimentum, -ī, neut., *a covering,*
a cover.

tēlum, -ī, neut., *a weapon, a mis-*
sile, a javelin.

tempus, -oris, neut., *time; chapt.*
22, occasion; ūnō tempore, at
one and the same time; eōdem
tempore, at the same time.

tendō, *tendere, tetendi, tēnsum*
and tentum, extend, stretch out.

teneō, *tenēre, tenuī, tentum,*
hold, keep.

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *tender,*
young, delicate.

terror, -ōris, mas., *fright, terror,*
alarm.

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., *third*.

testūdō, -dinis, fem., *testudo (a*
covering of shields).

Teutonī, -ōrum, (-ēs, -um), mas.,
a German people in Jutland,
defeated by Marius in B.C.
102.

timeō, *timēre, timuī, (no supine),*
fear, be afraid.

Titūrius, -ī, mas., *Quintus Titu-*
rius Sabinus; see Sabīnus.

Titus, -ī, mas., a Roman praeno-
men (the first name).

tormentum, -ī, neut., *an engine*
of war (for throwing missiles).

totidem, indecl. adj., *just as*
many, as many.

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. *tōtius*, adj.,
entire, the whole of.

trabs, *trabis*, fem., *a timber, a*
beam; (nom. sing. sometimes,
trabēs).

trādō, *trādere, trādidī, trāditūm,*
hand over, give ^p.

trādūcō, see **dūcō**, *lead across,*
bring over.

trāns, prep. with acc., *across,*
over, beyond.

trānseō, see **eō**, *cross over, go*
across, cross.

trānsgredior, -gredi, -gressus
sum, *depon., go across, cross.*

- trānsversus, -a, -um, adj., *across*; with fossa, *a cross-ditch*.
- trēs, trēs, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., *three*.
- Trēveri, -ōrum, mas., a powerful tribe of the Belgians on the Moselle.
- tribūnus, -ī, mas., *a tribune*; with militum, *a military tribune*.
- trīdūm, -ī, neut., *three days' time, three days*.
- triplex, gen. triplicis, adj. (of one termination), *triple, three-fold*.
- tuba, -ae, fem., *a trumpet* (a straight instrument for infantry).
- tum, adv., *then*; chapt. 4, cum . . . tum, *both . . . and*.
- tumultus, -ūs, mas., *an uproar, confusion, a commotion*.
- tumulus, -ī, mas., *a hill, a mound*.
- Turonēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), mas., a Gallic tribe on the Loire.
- turpitūdō, -dīnis, fem., *disgrace, baseness, dishonour*.
- turris, -is, fem., *a tower*.
- tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe, secure*.
- tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *your*.
- ubi, adv., *when, where*.
- ūllus, -a, -um, gen. ūlliūs, adj., *any one, any*.
- ūnā, adv. (*ūnā cum*). *together with, along with (them)*.
- ūndecimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eleventh*.
- undique, adv., *from (on) all parts, on all sides*.
- ūniversus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, all*.
- ūnus, -a, -um, gen. ūniūs, num. adj., *one, only, alone*.
- urgeō, urgēre, ursī, (no supine), *press hard*.
- ūsus, -ūs, mas., *use, practice, advantage*.
- ut (utī), conj., with indic. *as, when*; with subjunc., *so that, in order that*.
- uterque, -traque, -trumque, gen. utriusque, adj., *each of two, both*.
- ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, depon., *use, employ, enjoy (with abl.)*.
- vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty, free*; chapt. 12, with ab + abl., *destitute of*.
- vadum, -ī, neut., *a ford, shallows*.
- valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum, *be strong; plūrimum valēre, have very great influence*.
- vāllum, -ī, neut., *a rampart, a palisade*.
- varius, -a, -um, adj., *diverse, different, various*.
- vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste, ravage*.
- Veliocassēs, -ium, (-ī, -ōrum). mas., a Gallic tribe on the right bank of the Seine.
- vēndō, vēndere, vēndidi, vēnditum, *sell*.
- Venelli (Unelli), -ōrum, mas., a tribe along the west coast of Gaul.
- Veneti, -ōrum, mas., a Gallic tribe on the west coast.

- veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum,** come, approach, go.
- verbum, -i, neut., a word, a dis-** course.
- vereor, verērī, veritus sum,** depon., fear, be afraid.
- vergō, vergere, (no perfect, no supine), incline, slope, lie to-**wards.
- vērō, adv., in fact, in truth.**
- versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, turn,** deal with; frequently as a depon., be (remain); chapt. 24, be engaged.
- vesper, -erī, mas., the evening.**
- vetō, vetāre, vetūi, vetitum,** forbid.
- vēxillum, -i, neut., a flag.**
- vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, harass,** annoy.
- victor, -tōris, mas., a conqueror;** chapt. 24 (as adj.), victorious.
- vicus, -i, mas., a village.**
- videō, vidēre, vidi, visum, see;** as depon. in the present system of the passive, seem.
- vigilia, -ae, fem., a watch** (one of the four divisions of the night).
- vīmen, -minis, neut., a pliant** twig.
- vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum,** conquer, defeat.
- vīnea, -ae, fem., vinea** (a movable shed covering a besieging party).
- vinum, -i, neut., wine.**
- vir, virī, mas., a man.**
- Viromanduī, -ōrum, mas., a tribe** of the Belgians north of the Oise.
- virtūs, -tūtis, fem., courage,** valour (manliness).
- vīs, (vīs), (plur. virēs), vigour,** strength, force.
- vīlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid,** escape. .
- vix, adv., scarcely, with diffi-**culty.
- volō, velle, volui, (no supine),** wish, be willing.
- voluntās, -tātis, fem., desire, will** (good will), approval.
- vōx, vōcis, fem., voice;** plur., words, shouts
- vulgō, adv. (abl. of vulgus),** generally, everywhere.
- vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound,** injure, hurt.
- vulnus, -eris, neut., a wound.**

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

about, <i>circiter</i> , adv.; <i>dē</i> , prep. + <i>abl.</i>	army, <i>exercitus</i> , -ūs, mas.; <i>aciēs</i> , <i>aciēi</i> , fem.
about midnight, <i>dē mediā nocte</i> .	arrival, <i>adventus</i> , -ūs, mas.
above, <i>suprā</i> , adv.	arrive, <i>pervenīō</i> , (4).
abundance, <i>cōpiā</i> , -ae, fem.	arrogance, <i>spīritus</i> , -ūs, mas. (in the plur.).
access, <i>aditus</i> , -ūs, mas.	as, <i>ut</i> , conj. + indic.
across, <i>trāns</i> , prep. + <i>acc.</i>	as soon as, <i>cum prīnum</i> , conj.
address, <i>prōsequor</i> ; (3).	ask, <i>rogō</i> , (1); <i>quaerō</i> , (3).
advance, <i>prōgredior</i> , (3).	ask for, <i>petō</i> , (3).
after, <i>cum</i> , conj. + pluperf. sub- junc.; <i>post</i> , prep. + <i>acc.</i>	assemble, <i>convenīō</i> , (4); <i>cōgō</i> , (3).
afterwards, <i>postea</i> , adv.	attack, <i>impetus</i> , -ūs, mas.; <i>op- pūgnō</i> , (1); <i>aggredior</i> , (3).
again, <i>rūrsus</i> , adv.	attempt, <i>cōnor</i> , (1).
against, <i>contrā</i> , prep. + <i>acc.</i>	at early dawn, <i>prīmā lūce</i> .
aid, <i>auxilium</i> , -ī, neut.; <i>iuvō</i> , <i>adiuvō</i> , (1).	at first, <i>prīmō</i> , adv.
alarm, <i>commoveō</i> , (2).	at one and the same time, <i>ūnō tempore</i> .
all; <i>omnis</i> , -is, -e, adj.	at once, <i>statim</i> , adv.
almost, <i>paene</i> , adv.	at the foot of the mountain, <i>sub monte</i> .
alone, <i>sōlus</i> , -a, -um, adj.	at the same time, <i>eōdem tempore</i> .
ambassador, <i>lēgātus</i> , -ī, mas.	auxiliaries, <i>auxilia</i> , -ōrum, neut.
ambush, <i>īnsidiae</i> , -ārum, fem.	avoid, <i>vītō</i> , (1).
among, <i>inter</i> , prep. + <i>acc.</i>	await, <i>exspectō</i> , (1).
and, <i>et</i> , <i>que</i> , <i>ac</i> , <i>atque</i> , conj.	
announce, <i>nūntiō</i> , <i>renūntiō</i> , (1).	badge, <i>īnsigne</i> , -is, neut.
another (other), <i>alter</i> , -era, -erum, adj.	baggage, <i>impedimenta</i> , -ōrum, neut.
any, <i>ūllus</i> , -a, -um, adj.	band, <i>manus</i> , -ūs, fem.
approach, <i>adventus</i> , -ūs, mas.	bank, <i>ripa</i> , -ae, fem.
archer, <i>sagittārius</i> , -ī, mas.	
arms, <i>arma</i> , -ōrum, neut.	

- battle, *proelium*, -*i*, neut.
 be, *sum*; be able, *possum*.
 be in command of, *praesum*
 + *dat*.
 be very powerful, *plūrimum
 posse*; *plūrimum valēre*.
 be unwilling, *nōlō*.
 bear, *ferō*.
 beginning, *initium*, -*i*, neut.
 begin battle, *proelium commit-
 tere*.
 behind, *post*, prep. + *acc*.
 beloved, *amātus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.
 betake one's self, *sē recipere*; *sē
 conferre*.
 between, *inter*, prep. + *acc*.
 blame, *incēsō*, (1).
 body, *corpus*, -*oris*, neut.
 boldly, *audācter*, adv.
 borders, *fīnis*, -*is*, mas. (in the
 plur).
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*, conj.
 boundary, *fīnis*, -*is*, mas. (in the
 plur).
 bowman, *sagittārius*, -*i*, mas.
 boy, *puer*, *puerī*, mas.
 bravely, *fortiter*, adv.
 break camp, *castra movēre*
 bridge, *vōns*, *pontis*, mas.
 bring, *ferō*.
 bring to, *addūcō*, (3).
 bring up, *agō*, (3).
 broad, *lātus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.
 brother, *frāter*, -*tris*, mas.
 build, *aedificō*, (1).
 building, *aedificiūm*, -*i*, neut.
 burn, *incendō*, (3).
 business, *negōtiūm*, -*i*, neut.; with
 dare, to employ.
 but, *sed*, conj.
 but also, *sed etiām*, conj.
 by, *ā*, *ab*, prep. + *abl*, (with
 passive verb).
 by night, *noctū* (as adv.).
 calamity, *calamitās*, -*tatis*, fem.
 call, *appellō*, (1).
 camp, *castra*, -*ōrum*, neut.
 captive, *captīvus*, -*i*, mas.
 carry, *portō*, (1).
 cavalry, *equēs*, *equitīs*, mas.;
 equitātus, -*ūs*, mas.
 cause, *causa*, -*ae*, fem.
 centurion, *centuriō*, -*ōnis*, mas.
 certain, *certus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.
 chief, *prīnceps*, -*cipis*, mas.
 children, *līberī*, -*ōrum*, mas.
 choose, *dēligō*, (3).
 cohort, *cohōrs*, -*hortīs*, fem.
 collect, *cōgō*, (3).
 command, *imperīum*, -*i*, neut.;
 imperō, (1).
 commander, *imperātor*, -*tōris*,
 mas.
 come, *veniō*, (4).
 common, *commūnīs*, -*is*, -*e*, adj.
 conceal, *cēlō*, (1).
 concerning, *dē*, prep. + *abl*.
 confidence, *fidēs*, *fideī*, fem.
 conquer, *pellō*, *vincō*, (3); *superō*,
 (1).
 conspire, *coniūrō*, (1); *cōsentīō*,
 (4).
 contend, *dēcertō*, (1); *contendō*,
 (3).
 convenient, *opportūnus*, -*a*, -*um*,
 adj.
 corn, *frūmentūm*, -*i*, neut.
 council of war, *concilīum*, -*i*,
 neut.

- courage, *virtūs*, *-tūtis*, fem.
 covering, *tegimentum*, *-ī*, neut.
 covering (of shields), *testūdō*,
 -*dinis*, fem.
 cross, *trānseō*.
 custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, mas.; *cōn-*
 suētūdō, *-dinis*, fem.
 cut down, *interscindō*, (3).
 cut off, *interclūdō*, (3); *prohibeō*,
 (2).
- danger, *periculum*, *-ī*, neut.
 dare, *audeō*, (2).
 dart, *tēlum*, *-ī*, neut.
 day, *diēs*, *diēi*, mas. and fem.
 decide, *cōstituō*, (3).
 deep, *altus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.
 defeat, *pellō*, *vincō*, (3); *superō*, (1).
 defence, *praesidium*, *-ī*, neut.;
 mūnīmentum, *-ī*, neut.
 defend, *dēfendō*, (3).
 defender, *dēfensor*, *-sōris*, mas.
 delay, *mora*, *-ae*, fem.; *moror*, (1).
 demand, *poscō*, (3); *postulō*, (1).
 depart, *ēgredior*, *proficiscor*, (3);
 discēdō, (3).
 departure, *profectiō*, *-ōnis*, fem.
 deprive, *dēspoliō*, (1).
 descend (be descended) *orior*, (4).
 desire, *studeō*, (2); *studium*, *-ī*,
 neut. (fondness).
 deter, *dēterreō*, (2).
 different, *dīversus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.
 dig (extend), *obdūcō* (with *fos-*
 sam), (3).
 direct, *mandō*, (1).
 ditch, *fossa*, *-ae*, fem.
 divide, *distineō*, (2).
 do, *faciō*, (3).
 draw near to, *appropinquō*, (1);
- for construction with verb, see
 chapt. 10, next to last sent.;
 19, second sent.; 31, first sent.
 draw up, *instruō*, (3).
 drive, *compellō*, (3).
 drive back, *repellō*, (3).
 drive out, *expellō*, (3).
 each (of the two), *uterque*, adj.
 easily, *facile*, adv.
 easy, *facilis*, *-is*, *-e*, adj.
 eight, *octō*, indecl. num. adj.
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*, conj.
 employ, *negōtium dare*.
 empty, *vacuus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.
 encourage, *cohortor*, (1); with *ut*
 + subjunc.
 end, *finis*, *-is*, mas.
 ends of the ditches, *extrēmae*
 fossae.
 enemy, *hostis*, *-is*, mas. (usually
 plur.).
 engine of war, *tormentum*, *-ī*,
 neut.
 enroll, *cōscrībō*, (3).
 enter, *intrō*, (1).
 enter upon, *ineō*.
 entire, *tōtus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.
 entrust, *permittō*, (3).
 envoy, *lēgātus*, *-ī*, mas.
 equal, *adaequō*, (1); for construc-
 tion with verb, see chapt. 32,
 last sent.
 erect, *cōnstituō*, (3).
 especially, *māximē*, adv.
 establish, *cōfirmō*, (1).
 even, *etiam*, conj.
 evening, *vesper*, *-erī*, mas.
 exchange hostages, *obsidēs inter*
 sē dare.

- execute, *administrō*, (1).
 expect, *exspectō*, (1).
- face about, *sīgna convertō*, (3).
 fail, *fallō*, (3).
 farthest, *extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj.
 father, *pater*, -tris, mas.
 fear, *vcreor*, *timeō*, (2).
 fertility, *fertilitās*, -tatis, fem.
 few, *paucus*, -a, -um, adj.; plur. only.
 fickleness, *levitās*, -tatis, fem.
 field, *ager*, *agri*, mas.
 fierce, *ferus*, -a, -um, adj.
 fight, *pāgnā*, -ae, fem.; *pūgnō*, *dēcertō*, *dīmicō*, (1), *contendō*, *cōnflīgō*, (3).
 fill, *compleō*, (2).
 find, *reperiō*, *inveniō*, (4).
 find out, *cōgnōscō*, (3); *explōrō*, (1).
 fire, *īgnis*, -is, mas.
 first, *prīmus*, -a, -um, adj.
 five, *quīnque*, indecl. num. adj.
 flee, *fugiō*, (3).
 flight, *fuga*, -ae, fem.
 fodder, *pābulum*, -i, neut.
 follow after, *subsequor*, (3).
 foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, mas.
 for, *nam*, conj.
 for the sake of, *causā* (as a prep., following a gen.).
 force (vigor), *vīs*, *vīs*, fem.; (plur. *vīrēs*).
 forces, *cōpiae*, -ārum, fem.
 ford, *vadum*, -i, neut.
 foremost (men), *prīmī*, -ōrum, (mas. plur. of *primus*).
 forest, *silva*, -ae, fem.
 former, *prīstinus*, -a, -um, adj.
- fortification, *mūnītiō*, -ōnis, fem.
 fortify, *mūniō*, (4).
 free, *vacuus*, -a, -um, adj.
 frequent, *crēber*, -bra, -brum, adj.
 fresh, *īnteger*, -gra, -grum, adj.
 friend, *amicus*, -i, mas.
 friendly, *amicus*, -a, -um, adj.
 friendship, *amicitia*, -ae, fem.
 frighten, *perterreō*, (2).
 from, *ā*, *ab*, prep. + abl.
 from (on) all sides, *undique*, adv.
- gate, *porta*, -ae, fem.
 Gaul, (country), *Gallia*, -ae, fem.; (person), *Gallus*, -i, mas.
 general, *praefectus*, -i, mas.
 general (common), *commūnis*, -is, -e, adj.
 give, *dō*, (1).
 give hostages to one another, *obsidēs inter sē dare*.
 give up, *permittō*, *trādō*, (3).
 great, *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.
- halt, *cōnsis'ō*, (3).
 hand over, *trādō*, (3).
 hasten, *mātūrō*, (1); *contendō*, (3).
 have, *habeō*, (2).
 have very great power or influence, *plūrimū posse*, *plūrimū valēre*.
 he, self, *ipse*, -a, -um, intensive pron.
 he, she, it, *is*, *ea*, *id*, (used as pers. pron. third person).
 hedge, *saepēs*, -is, fem.
 height, *altitūdō*, -dinis, fem.
 helmet, *galca*, -ae, fem.
 help, *auxiliū*, -i, neut.; *iuvō*, (1).

- hesitate, *dubitō*, (1).
 high, *altus*, -a, -um, adj.
 hill, *collis*, -is, mas.
 hinder, *impediō*, (4).
 hire, *condūcō*, (3).
 his, *ēius* (not reflex.); *suus*, -a,
 -um (reflex.), possess. pronouns.
 hither, *citerior*, -ior, -ius, adj.
 hold, *obtineō*, (2).
 hold out, *sustentō*, (1).
 home, *domus*, -ūs (-i), fem.
 hope, *spēs*, *speī*, fem.
 horse, *equus*, -i, mas.
 hostage, *obses*, -idis, mas.
 how great, *quantus*, -a, -um, adj.
 hurl, *cōnicō*, (3).

 immediately, *prōtinus*, *statim*,
 adv.
 in, on, upon, *in*, prep. + abl.
 incite, *sollicitō*, (1).
 infantry, *pedes*, -itis, mas. (usu-
 ally plur.).
 influence, *addūcō*, (3).
 inform, *certiōrem* (-ēs) *facere*.
 in front of, *prō*, prep. + abl.
 inhabit, *incolō*, (3).
 injury, *iniūria*, -ae, fem.
 inquire, *quaerō*, (3).
 instruct, *mandō*, (1).
 into, *in*, prep. + acc.
 investigate, *cōgnoscō*, (3).

 javelin, *pīlum*, -i, neut.
 join, *coniungō*, (3).
 just as, as, *ita . . . ut*.

 keep, *contineō*, (2).
 keep apart, *distineō*, (2).
 keep back, *retineō*, (2).
 kill, *interficiō*, (3).

 kindly, *liberāliter*, adv.
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, mas.
 kingdom, *rēgnum*, -i, neut.;
 (plur. sovereignty).
 kinsmen, *cōsanguineī*, -ōrum,
 mas.

 large, *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.
 last, lately, *proximē*, adv.
 lay waste, *vāstō*, *populor*, (1).
 lead, *dūcō*, (3).
 lead across, *trādūcō*, (3).
 leader, *dux*, *ducis*, mas.
 lead out, *ēdūcō*, (3).
 leave, *relinquō*, (3).
 legion, *legiō*, -ōnis, fem.
 left, *sinister*, -tra, -trum, adj.
 less, *minus*, adv.
 less easily, *minus facile*, *minus*
 commodē, adv.
 letter, *littera*, -ae, fem.; (usually
 plur.).
 lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -i, mas.
 light, *lūx*, *lūcis*, fem.
 light-armed, *expeditus*, -a, -um,
 adj.
 likewise, *item*, adv.
 line of battle, (army), *aciēs*, *aciēī*,
 fem.
 line of march, *agmen*, -minis, neut.
 long, a long time, *diū*, adv.
 longer, *diūtius*, adv.
 love, *amō*, (1).

 make, *faciō*, (3).
 make (take) a stand, *cōsistō*, (3).
 make an attack upon, *facere im-*
 petum in + acc.
 make more certain (see 'inform'),
 certiōrem (-ēs) *facere*.

- man, *homō, hominis*, mas.; *vir, virī*, mas.
 march, *iter, itineris*, neut.; *iter facere*.
 marsh, *aestuārium*, -ī, neut.
 meanwhile, *interim*, adv.
 memory, *memoria*, -ae, fem.
 (men) in the front, *priōrēs*, -um, mas. (compar. adj. as noun).
 (men) in the rear, *novissimī, -ōrum*, mas. (superl. adj. as noun).
 merchant, *mercātor*, -tōris, mas.
 message, messenger, *nūntius*, -ī, mas.
 middle of, *medius*, -a, -um, adj.
 mind, *animus*, -ī, mas.
 most of, *plērusque, -aque, -umque*, adj. (in the plur. only).
 mountain, *mōns, montis*, mas.
 move, *moveō*, (2).
 movable shed, *vīnea*, -ae, fem.
 multitude, *multitūdō, -dīnis*, fem.
 much, many, *multus*, -a, -um, adj.
 name, *nōmen, -minis*, neut.
 nature, *nātūra*, -ae, fem.
 near by, *iūxtā*, adv.
 nearness, *propīnquitās, -tātis*, fem.
 neighbouring, *fīnitimus*, -a, -um, adj.; in the mas. plur., noun, neighbours.
 neither, *neuter, -tra, -trum*, adj.
 neither . . . nor, *neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)*.
 new, *novus*, -a, -um, adj.
 next, *proximus*, -a, -um, adj.
 night, *nox, noctis*, fem.
 no, none, *nūllus*, -a, -um, adj.
 not, *nōn*, adv.; *nē* (regular negative of the imperative).
 not only, *nōn modo*.
 not yet, *nōndum*.
 number, *numerus*, -ī, mas.
 obtain, *impetrō*, (1).
 of cavalry, *equester, -tris, -tre*, adj. (of three terminations).
 of corn, *frūmentārius*, -a, -um, adj.
 officer, *magistrātus*, -ūs, mas.
 on, *see in*, upon.
 one (alone), *ūnus*, -a, -um, num. adj.
 only, alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um, adj.; *ūnus*, -a, -um, adj.
 on all sides, *undique*, adv.
 on account of, *propter*, prep. + acc.
 on the flank, *ab latere* (from *latus*, the noun).
 on the left side, *ab sinistrā parte*.
 on the right wing, *ā dextrō cornū*.
 on the top of the hill, *in summō colle*.
 on this side of, *cis*, prep. + acc.
 opportunity, *facultās*, -tātis, fem.
 opposite, *adversus*, -a, -um, adj.
 order, *imperātum*, -ī, neut.; *imperō*, (1); *iubeō*, (2).
 other (another), *alter, -era, -erum*; *alius*, -a, -ud, adj.
 our, *nōster, -tra, -trum*, adj.; mas. plur. as noun, our men.
 out of, *ē, ex*, prep. + abl.
 outstretched, *passus*, -a, -um, adj.
 overcome, *superō*, (1).

- pace, *passus*, -ūs, mas.
 part, *pars*, *partis*, fem.
 peace, *pax*, *pacis*, fem.
 people, *populus*, -ī, mas.
 pitch (place), *pōnō*, (3).
 place, *locus*, -ī, mas.; neut. plur.,
 loca; *conlocō*, (1); *pōnō*, (3).
 place in command of, *praeficiō*,
 (3), (with dat.).
 plain, *plānitīēs*, *plānitīēi*, fem.
 power, *imperium*, *rēgnūm*, -ī,
 neut.; *potestās*, -tātis, fem.
 powerful, *potēns*, gen. *potentis*,
 adj. (of one termination).
 prepare, *parō*, (1); prepared,
 parātūs, -a, -um (particip. as
 adj.)
 prevent, *prohibeō*, *dēterreō*, (2);
 impediō, (4).
 promise, *pollicor*, (2).
 protection, *fidēs*, *fideī*, fem.
 province, *prōvinciā*, -ae, fem.
 pursue, *prōsequor*, (3).
 put on, *induō*, (3).
 quickly, *celeriter*, adv.
 rampart, *vallūm*, -ī, neut.
 ready, *parātūs*, -a, -um, adj.
 rear, *novissimum agmen*, *novis-*
 simī agminis, neut.
 receive, *accipiō*, (3).
 recently, *proximē*, adv.
 redoubt, *castellūm*, -ī, neut.
 reduce, *redigō*, (3).
 refrain from, *supersedeō*, (2).
 region, *regiō*, -ōnis, fem.
 relief, *subsidiūm*, -ī, neut.
 remaining, *reliquo*, -a, -um, adj.
 Remian (a), *Rēmus*, -ī, mas.;
 plur., the Remi.
- renew, *redintegrō*, (1).
 report, *rūmor*, -ōris, mas.; *nūntiō*,
 renūntiō, (1).
 rest, the rest, *cēterus*, -a, -um,
 adj.; usually mas. plur. as a
 noun.
 restrain, *retineō*, (2).
 resist, *resistō*, (3), (with dat.).
 return, *revertor*, (3).
 revolution, *rēs nova*, *reī novae*,
 fem.
 right, *dexter*, -tra, -trum, adj.
 river, *flūmen*, -minis, neut.
 Roman, *Rōmānus* (adj. or noun).
 rout, *fugō*, *prōflīgō*, (1); *pellō*, (3).
 rumor, *rūmor*, -ōris, mas.
 run down, *decurrō*, (3).
 rush forth, *prōvolō*, (1).
- safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, fem.
 sally, *excursiō*, -ōnis, fem.
 say, *dicō*, (3).
 scout, *explōrātor*, -tōris, mas.
 second, *secundus*, -a, -um, adj.
 see, *videō*, (2).
 seek, *petō*, (3).
 seem, *videor*, (2).
 seize, *occupō*, (1).
 senate, *senātūs*, -ūs, mas.
 send, *mittō*, (3).
 send forward, *praemittō*, (3).
 separate, *distineō*, (2).
 servant, *servus*, -ī, mas.
 settle, *cōnsidō*, (3).
 set out, *proficiscor*, (3).
 set up (arrange), *cōstituō*, (3).
 seventh, *septimus*, -a, -um, num.
 adj.
 shield, *scūtūm*, -ī, neut.
 side, *latus*, -eris, neut.

- sight, *cōspectus*, -ūs, mas.
 signal, *signum*, -ī, neut.
 since, *cum* + subjunc.
 shortness, *brevitās*, *exiguitās*,
 -tātis, fem.
 slave, *servus*, -ī, mas.
 slavery, *servitūs*, -tūtis, fem.
 slay, *occidō*, (3).
 slight, *parvulus*, -a, -um, adj.
 slinger, *funditor*, -tōris, mas.
 so (thus), *tam*, *ita*, adv.
 so great, *tantus*, -a, -um, adj.
 some, *nōnnūllus*, -a, -um, adj.
 so that, *ut* + subjunc.
 so that . . . not, *nē* + subjunc.
 sovereignty, *rēgnum*, -ī, neut.,
 (in the plur.).
 speech, *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, fem.
 speed, *cursus*, -ūs, mas.
 state, *civitās*, -tātis, fem.
 stone, *lapis*, -idis, mas.
 stop (cease), *dēsistō*, (3).
 storm, *expūgnō*, (1).
 strength, *vīs*, (vīs), fem.
 strip, *nūdō*, (1).
 strong (to be), *valeō*, (2); to have
 very great influence, *plūrimūm*
 valēre.
 subdue, *superō*, (1); *vincō*, *pellō*,
 (3).
 subjection, *servitūs*, -tūtis, fem.
 suddenly, *subitō*, adv.
 suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um, adj.
 summer, *aestās*, -tātis, fem.
 summon, *convocō*, (1).
 supply (plenty), *cōpia*, ae
 fem.; (in the plur.) forces.
 supply of corn, *rēs frūmentāria*,
 reī frūmentāiae, fem.
 supplies, *commeātus*, -ūs, mas.
 surrender, *dēditiō*, -ōnis, fem.;
 dēdō, *trādō*, (3).
 surround, *circumdō*, (1); *circum-*
 veniō, (4).
 swamp, *palūs*, -ūdis, fem.
 sword, *gladius*, -ī, mas.
 tall, *altus*, -a, -um, adj.
 tenth, *decimus*, -a, -um, num. adj.
 terms, *condiciō*, -ōnis, fem.
 territory, *fīnis*, -is, mas. (in the
 plur.).
 testudo, *testūdō*, -dīnis, fem.
 that, *is*, *ea*, *id*, demons. pron., or
 adj.
 their, *eōrum*, (not reflex.), possess.
 pron.; *suus*, -a, -um, (reflex.),
 possess. pron.
 there, *ibi*, adv.; *eō* (in sense of
).
 thing, *rēs*, *reī*, fem.
 this, *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*, demons. pron.
 this side of, *cis*, prep. + acc.
 thither, *eō*, adv.
 (those) in the front, *priōrēs*, -um,
 mas. (compar. adj. as noun).
 thousand, *mīlla*; declined only in
 plur., *mīlia*, -ium, neut.
 three, *trēs*, *trēs*, *trīa*, num. adj.
 through, *per*, prep. + acc.
 throw, *cōniciō*, (3).
 time, *tempus*, -ōris, neut.
 to (towards), *ad*, prep. + acc.
 tower, *turris*, -is, fem.
 town, *oppidum*, -ī, neut.
 townsmen, *oppidānī*, -ōrum, mas.
 top of, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.
 tribe, *gēns*, *gentis*, fem.
 triple, *triplex*, gen. *triplicis*, adj.
 (of one termination).

- trumpet, *tuba*, -ae, fem.
try, *cōnor*, (1); *experior*, (4).
two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, num. adj.
- undermine, *subruō*, (3).
unexpectedly, *dē imprōvīsō*.
unfavorable, *inīquus*, -a, -um,
 adj.
unfriendly, *inimīcus*, -a, -um,
 adj.
unite (conspire), *cōsentīō*, (4).
unless, *nisi*, conj.
upon, *in* + acc., with verbs of
 motion; *in* + abl., with verbs
 of rest.
uproar, *tumultus*, -ūs, mas.
urge, *cohortor*, (1).
use, *ūsus*, -ūs, mas.; *ūtor*, (3).
- very greatly, *mārimē*, adv.
very like, *cōsimilis*, -is, -e, adj.
 (of two terminations).
very many, *plūrimus*, -a, -um,
 adj. (in the plur.).
village, *vīcus*, -ī, mas.
vinea, *vīnea*, -ae, fem.
- wait for, *exspectō*, (1).
wall, *mārus*, -ī, mas.
war, *bellum*, -ī, neut.
watch, *vigilia*, -ae, fem.
weapon, *tēlum*, -ī, neut.
when, where, *ubi* (denoting time
 or place).
while, *cum* + imperf. subjunc.
who, *qui*, (rel. pron.); *quis*,
 (interrog. pron.).
width, *lātitūdō*, -dīnis, fem.
wing, *cornū*, -ūs, neut.
winter, *hiemō*, (1).
winter-quarters, *hīberna*, *hībernā-*
 cula, -ōrum, neut.
wish, *volō*, *velle*, *volū*.
with, *cum*, prep. + abl.; *post-*
 positive with the personal, rela-
 tive and reflexive pronouns.
within, *intrā*, prep. + acc.
without, *sine*, prep. + abl.
with respect to, *dē*, prep. + abl.
withstand, *sustineō*, (2).
work, *opus*, -eris, neut.
wound, *vulnus*, -eris, neut.; *vul-*
 nerō, (1).

INDEX.

References are to paragraphs.

Ā, ab: use of, 240

Ablative: separation, 221; quality, 376; time when or within which, 65; means or instrument, 43; attendance or accompaniment, 43; cause and manner, 210; place in which (place where), 47; place from which (whence), 386; with ā or ab and passive verb to denote personal agent, 237; causā with the *gen.*, 7; quō with the comparative, 384; with *opus* and *ūsus*, 379; with depon. verbs, 353; with comparative adj., 369; abl. absolute, 287; abl. absol. analyzed, 288; abl. absol. written in four ways, 364; abl. absol. distinguished from the p. p. p. modifying subj. or obj., 323

Accusative: direct object, 16, *c*; extent in space, 342; duration of time, 342; adverbial acc., 374; end or limit of motion (place towards which), 386; subj. of infinitive, 301, 302

Ad: with verbs of motion, 59; with *gerundive* in affirm. purpose, 355

Adapted and Simplified Caesar: 408–447

Adjectives: agreement of, 4, 115; stem, how found, 188, 298; used as substantives, 258; in the predicate, 95, 97; governing the *dat.*, 126; with *gen.* in *īus*, *dat.* in *i*, 286; of 1st and 2d declens. declined, 466; of 3d declens. declined, 467; numeral adjs. declined, 468; comparison of regular adjs., 298, 469; comparison of, ending in *er*, 308, 470; comparison of, ending in *ilis*, 314, 471, comparison of irregular, 472

Adverb: translated like adj., 216

Adverbial accusative: 374

Adverbial phrase: use of, 34

Adverbs compared: 473

Affirmative purpose: how expressed, 320; expressed in four ways, 355

Affirmative result: 321

Ager: declined, 454

Agmen: declined, 122

Altior: declined, 467

Altus: declined, 466

Amō: complete paradigms, 474, 475

Analysis of a complex sentence: 204

Apposition: 54

Capiō: complete paradigms, 480, 481

Cāsus: declined, 182

Causal clauses: 104, 276

Causal cum : 350, 359

Certior factus: 338

Certiōrem (-ēs) facere: 333

Civitās: declined, 122

Cohortor: use of, 347

Collis: declined, 130

Commands and exhortations: 389

Commands, etc., in O. O.: 390

Comparative adjective declined: 467

Comparison of adjectives: see 'Adjectives.'

Comparison of adverbs: 473

Complex sentence: 204 [337]

Compound verbs with dative:

Concessive cum. 350, 359

Conditions. more vivid future, 223, *a*, *b*; less vivid future, 335; conditions in O. O., 396

Conjugations:

1st conjugation: list of 92 verbs, 448; complete paradigms (*amō*), 474, 475; synopses, by stems (*portō*): (*a*) active—pres. syst., 75, perf. syst., 120, sup. syst. 133; (*b*) passive — pres. and perf. syst., 255

2d conjugation: list of 42 verbs, 449; complete paradigms (*mo-neō*), 476, 477; synopses, by stems (*dēleō*): (*a*) active—pres.

syst., 158, perf. syst., 163, sup. syst., 169; (*b*) passive—pres. and perf. syst., 270

3d conjugation: list of 157 verbs, 450; complete paradigms (*pōnō*), 478, 479; *capiō* (the 'iō' verb) complete, 480, 481; synopses, by stems (*pōnō*): (*a*) active—pres. syst., 192, perf. syst., 196, sup. syst., 197; (*b*) passive—pres. syst., 281, perf. syst., 284

4th conjugation: list of 19 verbs, 451; complete paradigms (*mūniō*), 482, 483; synopses, by stems (*mūniō*): (*a*) active—pres. syst., 225, perf. syst., 230, sup. syst., 231; (*b*) passive—pres. syst., 295, perf. syst., 296

Cornū: declined, 461

Corpus: declined, 458

Crēber: declined, 466

Cum clauses: historical *cum*, *when* (= while or after), 128, 203, 263, 359; temporal *cum*, *when*, 359; causal *cum*, *since*, 350, 359; concessive *cum*, *although*, 350, 359

Dative: indirect obj., 15; with adjs., 126; with *imperō* and *mandō*, 134, 145; with *negō*-*tium dare*, 330; with compound verbs, 337; with special verbs, 348; with *persuādeō* (in the active), 345; with *persuādeō* (in the passive), 380; double dat. (purpose, end, service), 352; possession, 357; personal agent, 362

Declension of adjectives: 1st and 2d declensions, 466; 3d declension, including pres. particip. and comparative, 467; numerals, 468

Declension of nouns:

 1st *declension*: stem, gender, paradigms, 453

 2d *declension*: stem, gender, paradigms, 454

 3d *declension*: stems, kinds of, 455; nom., how formed in consonant stems, 456, A, B, C; nom., how formed in *vowel* stems, 457; *nom. sing.* ending (all genders) of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *nom. plur.* (neut.) ending of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *gen. plur.* ending of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *acc. plur.* (mas. and fem.) endings in *is* or *ēs*, 457 *gen. plur.* endings *um* and *ium*, all 3d-declension nouns, 460; general rules of gender, 458; paradigms: *miles*, 112; *civitās*, *agmen*, *lapis*, *mīles ferus*, 122; *pater*, *rūmor*, *latus*, *corpus*, *legiō*, 124; *collis*, *rēx*, *flūmen lātum*, 130; *multitudō*, *vis*, *iter*, 138; *frāter*, *hostis*, *pēs*, *facultās*, *virtūs*, *lēx*, *flūmen*, *īnsigne*, 458; *mīlia* (plur. of *mille*), 459. Third - declension paradigms (nouns) may be found in 112, 122, 124, 130, 138, 458, 459

 4th *declension*: stem, gender, paradigms, 461

 5th *declension*: stem, gender, paradigms, 462

Declension of pronouns: personal pron., 1st person, 463; demonst. and intensive, 464; rel., interrog., and indef., 465

Dēleō: for synopses by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 2d.

Demonstrative pronouns, 464

Deponent verbs: use of, 325

 1st *conjuga.*: complete paradigms (*populor*), 494; for *active* forms and synopses, *by stems*, see 326, 327

 2d *conjuga.*: complete paradigms (*vereor*), 495

 3d *conjuga.*: complete paradigms (*ūtor*), 496

 4th *conjuga.*: complete paradigms (*potior*), 497

Diēs: declined, 462

Direct discourse (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*), 301

Direct object: 15, 16, c

Direct question: 313

Duo: declined, 468

Duplex: declined, 467

Duration of time: 342

Ego: declined, 463

Eō: complete paradigms, 486

Equester: declined, 467

Extent in space: 342

Faciō: active paradigms, 492

Facultās: declined, 458

Fearing: verbs of, with *ut* or *nē* + subjunctive, 343

Ferō: complete paradigms, 490, 491

Fiō: passive of *faciō*; passive paradigms, 493

- Flūmen:** declined, 458
Flūmen lātum: declined, 130
Fortis: declined, 188
Fossa: declined, 1, 6
Frāter: declined, 458
Future participle, Future infinitive: how formed, 170; fut. infin. in O. O., 318, examples 3 and 4 with note; fut. infin. of depon. verb, 328
- Galea:** declined, 453
Gender: 1st declension, 453; 2d declension, 454; 3d declension, 458, I, II, III; 4th declension, 461; 5th declension, 462
Genitive: use of and meaning, 7; with the abl. causā, 7; partitive and exceptions, 378; ending in *um* and *ium*, 460
Gerund: defined and declined, 73
Gerundive construction: in agreement with noun, 253; with *ad* to represent affirmative purpose, 355
Gladius: declined, 454
Hic: declined, 464
Hinder: verbs of, with *quīn* or *nē* + subjunctive, 370
Historical cum: 128, 203, 263
Hortatory subjunctive: 395
Hostis: declined, 458
How to express 'ought' or 'must': *pres.* and *past* action, 385, 1, 2, 3
How words are combined: order and dependence, 92, 161, 176
Idem: declined, 434
Ille: declined, 464
Imperō: with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 145, 228
Impersonal verbs: 365
Impetum facere: with *in* + acc., 216
In: uses of, 35
Indefinite pronoun, quis: declined, 465
Indirect Discourse (*Ōrātiō Ōe-liqua*): defined, 301; mood in 392; pres. infin. (statement clauses), 302; perf. infin. (statement clauses), 305; fut. infin. (statement clauses), 318; subord. clauses in, 306, 397; substitute for *fut. infin.* in, 382; conditions in, 396; commands and exhortations in, 390; *certiōrem (-ēs) facere*, used as a verb of *saying*, 333; specimens of, 400-407
Indirect object: 15, 16, *d*
Indirect question: mood of, 313
Insigne: declined, 458
Integer: declined, 56
Intensive pronoun (*ipse*): declined, 464
Intermediate clauses: 276
Intermediate (subordinate) clauses in O. O.: 306
Interrogative pronoun (*quis*): declined, 465
Ipse: declined, 464
Irregular verbs: list of 26 verbs, 452

<i>eō</i> ,	complete paradigms,	486
<i>faciō</i> ,	"	492
<i>ferō</i> ,	"	490, 491
<i>fiō</i> ,	"	493
<i>mālō</i> ,	"	489

Irregular verbs:

nōlō,	complete paradigms,	488
possum,	" "	485
sum,	" "	484
volō,	" "	487

Is, ea, id: declined, 464**Iter:** declined, 459**Iubeō:** use of, 155**-ius:** gen. ending of adjs., 286**Lapis:** declined, 458**Latus:** (noun) declined, 458**Legiō:** declined, 458**Less vivid future condition:** 335**Less vivid future condition in O.O.:** 396, 2 and examples.**Lēx:** declined, 458**-imus:** adj. superl. ending, 471**Mālō:** complete paradigms, 489**Mandō:** with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 145, 228**Manus:** declined, 461**Miles:** declined, 458**Miles ferus:** declined, 122**Milia:** declined, 459**Moleō:** complete paradigms, 476, 477**Mood in O. O.:** 392**More vivid future condition:**223, *a, b***More vivid future condition in O. O.:** 396, 1 and examples.**Motion, end or limit of:** 386**Multitūdō:** declined, 458**Mūniō:** complete paradigms, 482, 483; for synopses, by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 4th..**'Must' or 'ought':** how expressed, 385, 1, 2, 3**Nē:** with subjunctive, neg. purpose, 211, 320; with subjunctive after imperō and mandō, 228; with imperative, neg. commands and exhortations, 389; nē + imperative (neg. commands, etc.) changed to O. O., 390; after verbs of fearing, 343; after verbs of hindering, etc., 370**Negative purpose:** 211, 320**Negative result:** 321**Negōtium dare:** with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 330**Nisi:** in conditions, 223, 335**Nōlō:** complete paradigms, 488**Object:** direct, indirect, 15, 16**Oppidum:** declined, 37**Opus and ūsus:** with *abl.*, 379**Orātiō Obliqua:** see 'Indirect Discourse.'**Orātiō Rēcta:** see 'Direct Discourse.'**Order of words:** 16, 77, 92, 161, 176**'Ought' or 'must':** how expressed, 385, 1, 2, 3,**Participles:** pres. particip. declined, 467; substitutions for perf. act., 340, 372; formation of perf. pass., 257; use and agree. of perf. pass., 316; perf. pass. in abl. absol., 287, 364; perf. pass., when mod. the subj. or obj., distinguished from abl. absol., 323; perf. pass. of depon., its use instead of perf. act., 340; perf. pass.

- translated as finite or coordinate verb, 381; perf. pass. with *habeō* or *teneō*, 375
- Partitive genitive:** and exceptions, 378
- Pater:** declined, 124
- Periphrastic conjugation:** formation and meaning, 361; complete paradigms, 498, 499
- Personal agent:** with regular passive verb, 237; with gerundive (periphrast. pass.), 362
- Personal pronoun (*ego*):** declined, 463
- Persuādeō:** in the active, 345; passive, 380
- Pēs:** declined, 458
- Place from—towards—which:** 386
- Place in which:** 47
- Pōnō:** complete paradigms, 478, 479; for synopses, by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 3d
- Populor:** complete paradigms, 494
- Possession:** dat. of, 357
- Possum:** complete paradigms, 485
- Postquam:** in temporal clauses, 358
- Potior:** complete paradigms, 497
- Predicate nominative:** 95, 97
- Pronouns:** *ego*, 463; *hic, idem, ille, ipse, is*, 464; *qui, quis*, 465; *sē*, 214
- Puer:** declined, 41
- Pūgnāns:** declined, 467
- Purpose:** relative clause of, 311; affirm. and neg. purpose, 320; affirm. purpose expressed in four ways, 355
- Quantity:** general rules of, 500-504
- Que:** position, 215
- Questions:** direct, indirect, 313
- Quī:** declined, 465
- Quis:** declined, 465
- Quod clauses:** mood of; when *indic.*, 276; when *subjunc.*, 276, 306
- Reflexive pronoun:** *personal sūi*, etc., declined, 214; *possessive suus*, etc., 189
- Relative:** *qui*, declined, 465; agreement of, with antecedent, 83; with *castra*, etc., 84, 85; agreement of, with pred. word, 373; rel. clause of purpose, 311; of cause or concession, 368; of result, 387; rel. as a connective at the beginning of a sent. 367
- Rēs:** declined, 462
- Result clauses:** 321
- Rēx:** declined, 130
- rimus:** adj. superl. ending, 470
- Rūmor:** declined, 124
- Scūtum:** declined, 454
- Sē:** declined, 214
- Sequence of tenses:** rule of, 135; table of, 136; application of rule of, 137; use of, in O. O. 397
- Servus:** declined, 18, 25
- Silva:** declined, 453
- Special verbs with dative:** 348
- Subordinate clauses:** use and

- dependence of, 110, 161, 166, 276; use of, in O. O., 306, 397
- Substitution for future infinitive:** in supineless and passive verbs, 382
- Substitution for perfect active participle:** by using depon. particip., abl. absol., or subord. clause, 340, 372
- Sūi:** declined, 214
- Sum:** complete paradigms, 484; synopsis, pres. syst., 117; perf. syst., 127
- Suus:** use and meaning of, 189
- Temporal clauses:** postquam, ubi, etc. + indic., 358
- Tōtus:** declined, 286
- Trēs:** declined, 468
- Ubi:** use of, 203, 358
- Ut:** in purpose clauses, 53, 320, 355; with verbs of command, 145, 228; clauses of command in O. O., 389, 392, 2, *a*, *b*, *c*; in temporal clauses, 358
- Ut and ut non in result clauses,** 321
- Ūtor:** complete paradigms, 496
- Vir:** declined, 454
- Virtūs:** declined, 458
- Vis:** declined, 459
- Volō:** complete paradigms, 487
- Vowel stems in i:** (*a*) *nouns*: collis, declined, 130; hostis, declined, 458; gender, stem, and special endings of, 131, 457; (*b*) *adjectives*: fortis, declined, 467; stem and special endings of, 188



Date Due

ת. 35 ? נו

Demco 293-5

BOSTON UNIVERSITY



1 1719 02753 7531

